ञ्जा |सङ्ग्रा | mandel

୲ଽୖ୵ୣ୷ୢୠ୵୕୵ୠୖୄୠୢଌ୶୵ୣ୷୶୵୳୕ୡୄ୵୲

rirab lingshi nyinde gyenpa di,

sangye shingdu mikte ulwar gyi,

ाक्षे दे त्यु दु र इ अड़ य मै के हु ह प्य की ।

Idam guru ratna mandalakam niryatayami.

Offering the Mandala

Here is the great Earth, Filled with the smell of incense, Covered with a blanket of flowers,

The Great Mountain, The Four Continents, Wearing a jewel Of the Sun, and Moon.

In my mind I make them The Paradise of a Buddha, And offer it all to You.

By this deed May every living being Experience The Pure World.

Idam guru ratna mandalakam niryatayami.

ञ्जा । भुनवायम् श्वेष्ठा । kyabdro semkye

sangye chudang tsokyi choknam la,

|ธุร:สูธ:จราวราราชาสิ:สูธจะสู:มะติจา jangchub bardu dakni kyabsu chi,

| กรุกาทิสาฟิสาจักลากฏิสานนิ กลัราสุมสาฏิสา dakki jinsok gyipay sunam kyi,

प्रज्ञां ता प्रवास्त्र स्थित अद्यास्त्र स्था विष्या प्रवास्त्र स्था विषय स्या विषय स्था विषय स्था

Refuge and The Wish

I go for refuge To the Buddha, Dharma, and Sangha Until I achieve enlightenment.

By the power Of the goodness that I do In giving and the rest,

May I reach Buddhahood For the sake Of every living being.



| इस्मान प्रतिक्षा हिन्तु । इस्मान प्रतिक्षा हिन्तु । इस्मान हिन्तु । इस्मान

ารณ์รุ:สุมพาพิ:ผิพ:ชั้มพาษักพาผิรา sunam yeshe tsok-dzok shing,

รunam yeshe lejung way,

| द्रमः सः भुः महिषा वर्षेतः धरः विम । । । dampa kunyi topar shok.

Dedication of the Goodness of a Deed

By the goodness Of what I have just done May all beings

Complete the collection Of merit and wisdom,

And thus gain the two Ultimate bodies That merit and wisdom make.



| क्रेंब:य:ब्रु: ब्रेंड: ब्राट्य:क्रुब: देव: क्रेंड

tonpa lame sanggye rinpoche,

ब्रिंच यः त्वः येऽ : ५ यः कें यः रे दः यें के ।

kyoppa lame damchu rinpoche,

विदेशमास्यासेनान्यो वित्तर्भने संस्कृ

drenpa lame gendun rinpoche,

भिन्न नामक्र निर्माद सके वा नासुक्र ता सके निर्माद नुषा

kyabne konchok sumla chupa bul.

A Buddhist Grace

I offer this To the Teacher Higher than any other, The precious Buddha.

I offer this To the protection Higher than any other, The precious Dharma.

I offer this
To the guides
Higher than any other,
The precious Sangha.

I offer this To the places of refuge, To the Three Jewels, Rare and supreme.



The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Course Syllabus

Reading One

Subject: The Principal Teachings of Buddhism, Part One

This and the next class represent Level One of the tradition of the Steps to Enlightenment, or the *Lam-Rim*. The class will include a review of class policies, and an overview of the course.

Reading: Selections from The Three Principal Paths of Je Tsongkapa (1357-

1419), and from its commentary entitled *The Principal Teachings of*

Buddhism, by Pabongka Rinpoche (1878-1941).

Reading Two

Subject: The Principal Teachings of Buddhism, Part Two

Reading: Further selections from *The Three Principal Paths* and *The Principal*

Teachings of Buddhism.

Reading Three

Subject: Buddhist Refuge, Part One

This and the next class represent Level One of the tradition of the

Perfection of Wisdom, or Prajna Paramita.

Reading: Selections from monastic commentaries to the Ornament of

Realizations of Lord Maitreya, as communicated to Master Asanga (350 AD). These commentaries are the *Overview of the Perfection of Wisdom* and the *Analysis of the Perfection of Wisdom*, both by Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568), an illustrious master from

Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery.

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Course Syllabus

Reading Four

Subject: Buddhist Refuge, Part Two

Reading: Further selections from the two monastic commentaries to the

Ornament of Realizations.

Reading Five

Subject: Applied Meditation, Part One

This and the next class represent Level Two of the tradition of

the Steps to Enlightenment, or the Lam-Rim.

Reading: Selections from two of the greatest works of the *lam-rim* tradition:

the *Great Book on the Steps to Enlightenment (Lamrim Chenmo)* of Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419); and *A Gift of Liberation,* by Pabongka

Rinpoche (1878-1941)

Reading Six

Subject: Applied Meditation, Part Two

Reading: Selections from the Thousand Angels of the Heaven of Bliss (Ganden

Hlagyama) and from the Source of All My Good (Yunten

Shirgyurma), both written by Je Tsongkapa.

Reading Seven

Subject: The Proof of Future Lives, Part One

This and the next class represent Level One of the tradition of

Buddhist Logic and Perception, or Pramana.

Reading: Selections from the following works—

Light on the Path to Freedom, a commentary on the works of Master Dignaga (440 AD) and Master Dharmakirti (630 AD) by Gyaltsab Je (1364-1432), the famed disciple of Je Tsongkapa.

Jewel of the True Thought, a commentary on the same works by Geshe Yeshe Wangchuk (1928-1997) of Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery.

A chart on levels of reality compiled from the First Dalai Lama, Gyalwa Gendun Drup (1391-1474); Kedrup Je (1385-1438); and Purbuchok Jampa Gyatso (1825-1901).

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Course Syllabus

Reading Eight

Subject: The Proof of Future Lives, Part Two

Reading: Selections from the works just mentioned, including the text of

"The Four Reasonings," by Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang

Tharchin.

Reading Nine

Subject: How Karma Works, Part One

This and the next class represent Level One of the tradition of

Higher Knowledge, or Abhidharma.

Reading: Selections from the following works—

The Treasure House of Knowledge (Abhidharmakosha), by Master

Vasubandhu (350 AD).

The *Illumination of the Path to Freedom*, a commentary upon Master Vasubandhu's work by His Holiness Gendun Drup, the

First Dalai Lama (1391-1474).

The Schools of Philosophy, by Master Changkya Rolpay Dorje

(1717-1786).

The *Illumination of the True Thought*, by Je Tsongkapa.

Reading Ten

Subject: How Karma Works, Part Two

Reading: Selections from the works just mentioned, as well as from the

following—

Entering the Middle Way (Madhyamakavatara), by Master

Chandrakirti (650 AD).

Overview of the Middle Way, by Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568).

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Reading One: The Principal Teachings of Buddhism, Part One

The following selections are taken from The Three Principal Paths (Lam-gtzo rnam-gsum), written by the incomparable Tibetan master Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419). The commentary is by Pabongka Rinpoche (1878-1941), who was a teacher of our root Lama, Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin, and also a teacher of the teacher of His Holiness the Dalai Lama.

1 On the Life of Our Teacher's Teacher

It was at this time that the glorious Pabongka Rinpoche, the author of the commentary you are about to read, came into my life. Like me he had as a young man taken his course of studies at the Sera Mey College of Sera Monastery; in fact, he was from the same house, Gyalrong.

Pabongka Rinpoche was born in 1878, at a town called Tsawa Li in the Yeru Shang district of the state of Tsang, north of Lhasa. His family were of the nobility and owned a modest estate called Chappel Gershi. As a child he exhibited unusual qualities and in his seventh year was taken before Sharpa Chuje Lobsang Dargye, one of the leading religious figures of the day.

The lama felt sure that the boy must be a reincarnated saint, and even went so far as to examine him to see if he were the rebirth of his own late teacher. He was not, but the sage foretold that if the child were placed in the Gyalrong House of Sera Mey College, something wonderful would happen with him in the future.

Later on, the youngster was found to be a reincarnation of the Changkya line, which included the illustrious scholar Changkya Rolpay Dorje (1717-1786).¹ The lamas of this line had done much teaching in the regions of Mongolia and China—even in the court of the Chinese emperor himself—and the name "Changkya" had very strong Chinese connotations. Already in those days the Tibetan government and people were sensitive to the pressures put on us by

our powerful neighbor to the east, so the name "Changkya" was ruled out, and the boy declared to be "Pabongka" instead.

Pabongka, also known as Parongka, is a large and famous rock-formation about three miles' walk from our Sera Monastery. The very word "pabong" means in our language a large boulder, or mass of rock. The place is historically very important for Tibetans, for perched on top of the rock is the palace of Songtsen Gampo, the 7th-Century king who made Tibet one of the leading nations of Asia at the time, and who helped bring the first Buddhist teachings from India.

Until Songtsen Gampo's time, the Tibetans had no written language. The king, who desired that the great texts of Buddhism be translated into our language, sent a number of delegations to India with the charge of bringing back a written alphabet. Many of the young men who went died in the terrible rainy heat of the Indian plains and jungles, so different from our high Tibetan plateau, but the minister Tonmi Sambhota finally returned. He proceeded to create an alphabet and grammatical system that last to this day. And it is said that he performed this great labor in the palace of Songtsen Gampo, atop the cliffs of Pabongka.

Pabongka Rinpoche was actually the second Pabongka, for it was finally agreed to announce that he had been recognized as the reincarnation of the Kenpo (or abbot) of the small monastery atop the rock. For this reason he was sometimes referred to as "Pabongka Kentrul," or the "reincarnation of the abbot of Pabongka." Pabongka Rinpoche's full name, by the way, was Kyabje Pabongkapa Jetsun Jampa Tenzin Trinley Gyatso Pel Sangpo, which translates as the "lord protector, the one from Pabongka, the venerable and glorious master whose name is the Loving One, Keeper of the Buddha's Teachings, Ocean of the Mighty Deeds of the Buddha." He is also popularly known as "Dechen Nyingpo," which means "Essence of Great Bliss" and refers to his mastery of the secret teachings of Buddhism. We Tibetans feel that it is disrespectful to refer to a great religious leader with what we call his "bare" name—such as "Tsongkapa" or "Pabongka"—but we have tried here to simplify the Tibetan names to help our Western readers.

Pabongka Rinpoche's career at Sera Mey College was not outstanding; he did finish his geshe degree, but reached only the "lingse" rank, which means that he was examined just at his own monastery and did not go on for one of the higher ranks such as "hlarampa." The *hlarampa* level requires an exhausting series of public examinations and debates at different monasteries, culminating in a session before the Dalai Lama and his teachers at the Norbulingka summer palace. It was only after his graduation from Sera Mey, and the success of his teaching tours through the countryside outside the capital, that Pabongka Rinpoche's fame started to spread. Gradually he began to build up a huge following and displayed tremendous abilities as a public teacher. He was not

tall (as I remember about my height, and I am only 5'6"), but he was broadchested and seemed to fill the entire teaching throne when he climbed up on it to begin his discourse.

His voice was incredibly powerful. On many occasions he would address gatherings of many thousands of people, yet everyone could hear him clearly (in those days in Tibet we had never heard of microphones or loudspeakers). Part of the trick of course was to pack the audience in Tibetan-style, crosslegged on the floor, with the lama on an elevated platform. Still the audience would flow out onto the porch of the hall, and sit perched above on the roof, watching through the steeple windows.

Pabongka Rinpoche had an uncanny ability to relate to his audience, and for this reason he became a teacher for the common man as well as for us monks. Generally speaking, the majority of the Buddha's teachings as we learn them in the monastery are extremely detailed, deep and sometimes technical. Moreover, we use rigorous tests of formal logic to analyze them as we move up through our classes. These methods are important for gaining the highest goals of Buddhist practice in a systematic way, and for passing these teachings on to others. But they were beyond the abilities and time of many of our Tibetan laymen. The Rinpoche's great accomplishment was that he found a way to attract and lead listeners of every level.

His most famous weapon was his humor. Public discourses in Tibet could sometimes go on for ten hours or more without a break, and only a great saint could keep his attention up so long. Inevitably part of the audience would start to nod, or fall into some reverie. Then Pabongka Rinpoche would suddenly relate an amusing story or joke with a useful moral, and send his listeners into peals of laughter. This would startle the day-dreamers, who were always looking around and asking their neighbors to repeat the joke to them.

The effects on his audience were striking and immediate. I remember particularly the case of Dapon Tsago, a member of the nobility who held a powerful position equivalent to Minister of Defense. Public teachings in Tibet were as much social as religious affairs, and aristocrats would show up in their best finery, often it seemed not to hear the dharma but rather to put in an appearance. So one day this great general marches in to the hall, decked out in silk, his long hair flowing in carefully tailored locks (this was considered manly and high fashion in old Tibet). A great ceremonial sword hung from his belt, clanging importantly as he swaggered in.

By the end of the first section of the teaching he was seen leaving the hall quietly, deep in thought—he had wrapped his weapon of war in a cloth to hide it, and was taking it home. Later on we could see he had actually trimmed off his warrior's locks, and finally one day he threw himself before the Rinpoche and asked to be granted the special lifetime religious vows for

laymen. Thereafter he always followed Pabongka Rinpoche around, to every public teaching he gave.

The Rinpoche had never spent much time at the small monastery atop the Pabongka rock, and his fame soon reached such proportions that the Ngakpa College of Sera Monastery offered him a large retreat complex on the hillside above Pabongka. The name of this hermitage was Tashi Chuling, or "Auspicious Spiritual Isle." There were some sixty Buddhist monks in residence there, and as I remember about sixteen personal attendants who helped the Lama with his pressing schedule: two monk-secretaries, a manager for finances, and so on. The Rinpoche would divide his time between his quarters here and a small meditation cell built around the mouth of a cave, further up the side of the mountain.

The cave was known as Takden, and it was here that Pabongka Rinpoche would escape for long periods to do his private practice and meditations. The central chamber had a high vaulted ceiling, so high that the light of a regular fire-torch could not even reach it, and the darkness seemed to go up forever. In the center of the ceiling there was an odd natural triangle in the rock, which looked exactly like the outer shape of one of the mystic worlds described in our secret teachings.

In the corner of this wonderful cave, an underground spring flowed from a rock—and above it was another natural drawing, this one just like the third eye that we see painted on the forehead of one of our female Buddhas. By the way, this "third eye" you hear about is largely metaphorical, and stands for the spiritual understanding in one's heart. We believed the cave was home for a *dakini*—sort of a Buddhist angel—because people often said they saw a wondrous lady come from the cave, but no one had ever seen her enter.

On the Importance of the Three Principal Paths: Renunciation, the Wish for Enlightenment, and the View of Emptiness

त्यमःसूयाःमृत्यःत्रेःत्यमःसुर्यःस्यान्यम्। याम्युमःसुर्यःमुत्यःस्यःस्यान्यमःस्यःस्यान्यमःस्यःत्यमःस्यःस्यान्यमःस्यःत्यमःस्यःस्यःस्यान्यस्यःस्यःस्यःस्यःस्य

Now there is a great highway along which each and every Buddha of the three times travels. It is the single guiding lamp for living beings in all three lands.² It is none other than the teaching known as the "Steps to Buddhahood." And the heart, the very life of this teaching, is the instruction on the three principal paths.

We would all like to become Buddhas so we could help others; but to do so, we have to work to achieve this state. To do this though we have to know how. And to know how, we must study the dharma. The study that we do, moreover, must center on a path that never errs.

Why We Need the Three Principal Paths

प्रविश्वास्त्रीक्षः स्त्रीत्रः स्त्रीत्रः स्त्राचाद्येक्षा स्त्रितः व्यव्याद्यः स्वर्धः स्त्राच्याः स्त्राचः स्त्राच

We find it in the question that Geshe Puchungwa asked of Chen-ngawa:³ "Let's say on the one hand that you could be one of those people who has mastered all five sciences,⁴ who has gained the firmest of single-pointed concentration, someone with each of the five types of clairvoyance,⁵ who's experienced all eight of the great attainments.⁶ And let's say on the other hand that you could be a person who had yet to gain any full realization of Lord Atisha's teachings,⁷ but who nonetheless had developed such a firm recognition of their truth that no one else could ever change your mind. Which of the two would you choose to be?"

श्रुवःश्रःचवेः लयःवया श्रूवः दर्यवा दयःययः ग्रीः रेयःयः श्रुवः यः श्रुवः यः श्रुवः

विष्याम् में काराय के द्वाप्येय क्ष्र्य द्वायां के वार्षा के स्वाप्त के स्वाप्त के स्वाप्त के स्वाप्त के स्वाप

And Chen-ngawa spoke in reply, "My master, leave alone any hope of realizing all the steps to Buddhahood—I would rather even to be a person who had just begun to get some glint of understanding, who could say to himself that he had started off on the first of these steps to Buddhahood.

पर्चित्रः स्रक्षः क्षेत्रः स्रक्षः स्र्रेत्रः स्रक्षः स्रक्

"Why would this be my choice? In all my lives to now I've been a master of the five sciences, countless times. And countless times I've gained single-pointed concentration, even to where I could sit in meditation for an eon. The same with the five types of clairvoyance—and the eight great attainments. But never have I been able to go beyond the circle of life—never have I risen above it. If I were able to gain a realization of the steps to Buddhahood that Atisha taught, I would surely be able to turn from this round of births."

4 Real Spiritual Practice

The Seers of the Word in olden days were making the same point when they used to say, "Everybody's got some mystic being they're meditating about and everybody's got some mystic words that they're talking about and all because nobody's got any real practice they're thinking about."⁸

र्टा दर्गमश्रिमात्मभ्योः श्र्याप्तिमात्मभ्या व्यम्भित्तम। व्यम्भित्तम। स्थान्या व्यम्भित्तम् । हे.व्यम्भान्यन्या व्यन्तम् । व्यन्तम्तम् । व्यन्तम् । व्यन्तम् । व्यन्तम् । व्यन्तम् । व्यन्तम्यम् । व

Therefore those of us who are thinking about doing some really pure practice of the spirit should try to find one that will take us on to freedom and all-knowingness. And for a practice to be this way, it should make us masters in the three principal paths. These three are like the heart, the very life within the teachings on the steps to Buddhahood. As the all-knowing Lord, Tsongkapa, once said: "I used the *Lamp on the Path* as my basic text, and made these three the very life of the path."

5 How to Take a Lama

र्रेट्-पर्यः श्र-पर्योः प्रत्यः श्र-श्र-श्र-श्रा क्ष्यः व्याप्तः स्थाः स्थाः

Now a lama is extremely important at the outset of any attempts at a spiritual life. As Geshe Potowa said,

To reach liberation, there is nothing more important than a lama. Even in simple things of this present life, with things that you can learn just by sitting down and watching someone, you can't get anywhere without a person to show you. So how on earth are you going to get anywhere without a lama, when you want to go somewhere you've never gone before, and you've only just arrived from a journey through the lower births?¹⁰

देश.य. देश.क. प्राप्त. विश्वापार्य अचीश्वाचीश्वाची व्यापार्श्व प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त विश्वापार्थ अचीश्वाचीश्वाची व्यापार्श्व प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त विश्वापार्थ अचीश विष्त प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्र

Therefore you're absolutely going to have to go and learn from a lama; just reading dharma books is not going to work. There has never been a single person in history who gained his spiritual goals without a lama, just by reading books on dharma. And it will never happen in the future either.

यश्चार्थां अर्थन्त्र विष्णा के।

यश्चार्थां अर्थन्त्र विष्णा के।

यश्चार्थां अर्थन्त्र विष्णा विष्णा विष्णा के।

यश्चार्थां अर्थन्त्र विष्णा विष्णा

Now what kind of lama should he or she be? It takes a guide who knows every turn of the path just to get you somewhere you can reach in a single day. For a lama who's supposed to lead you on to freedom and the state of knowing all things, you're going to need one who has all the requisite qualities. It's important to find a really qualified lama; it's not something you shouldn't care much about, because you're going to end up like him—for better or for worse. The student comes out according to the mold, like those little clay tablets with holy images pressed into them.

What are the characteristics that make a lama qualified? According to the teachings on vowed morality he or she should be, as they say, a "source of all

good qualities" and so on.¹¹ This means that the lama should possess the two good qualities of being steady and wise.¹² According to the secret teachings, he should fit the description that starts with the words "all three gateways well restrained." According to general tradition—that of both the open and the secret teachings—the lama should have ten fine qualities, as mentioned in the verse that begins with "You who have all ten..."

प्रस्तित्वा स्त्रा स्त्र स्त्

বিষ্ণান্যুৎমা

At the very least, your lama must absolutely be a person who has controlled his mind by practicing the three trainings,¹³ who possesses a knowledge of the scriptures, and who possesses actual realizations. As the *Jewel of the Sutras* states,

Take yourself to a spiritual guide controlled, at peace,
High peace, with exceeding qualities and effort,
who's rich
In scripture, with a deep realization of suchness,
a master instructor
Who's the very image of love, and beyond becoming discouraged.¹⁴

द्वरः ल्यून्यः विवान्त्रं त्रेत्रः विवान्त्रं त्रः व्यान्यः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्यः व्यान्तः व्यान्यः व्यान

The prospective disciple on his part should familiarize himself with these descriptions of a proper lama's qualifications, and then seek out a lama who possesses them. Whether the disciple himself turns out to be more or less blessed with virtues depends on the degree to which his lama possesses high personal qualities. If the disciple enjoys a relationship with a lama who is capable of guiding him through the entire range of the open and secret paths, then the disciple will come to be one blessed, in the sense of having heard about and gained some understanding of the paths in their entirety. Even just gaining this general idea of the overall paths represents greater merit that any other good qualities that the student might possess.

देशयाकाः चक्किद्राव्यं प्रविधः प्रविध

Once the disciple does manage to locate a lama with the qualities described above, he must rely on him in the proper way. Here there are eight great benefits a person can gain through proper behavior towards his teacher, beginning with being "close to Buddhahood." There are also eight different dangers of improper behavior towards one's lama—these are the opposites of the benefits just mentioned.

6
The Dangers of Not Seeing your Lama Well

यश्रेष र्युता र्योग । प्रति ।

|कैंग|रू:नउर्-ग्रेग्।र्डस:सकुर्-य:या

।शुःतःवर्रःशुःचरःवशुर। ।शुःशःश्चेःचर्ययःचश्चरःश्चेयःवश् ।चारःग्रेयःश्चःयरःशःवह्यःय।

१९४४:५८:१

We should speak here too of the dangers in improper behavior towards one's lama. A reference in *Difficult Points to the Black Enemy* puts it this way:

A person who doesn't treat as a lama Someone who's taught him so much as a line Will take a hundred births as a dog And then be born in the lowest of castes.¹⁶

्रियाः पश्चरः अत्राच्याः स्त्रीतः । भ्रम्भयः यस्यासः प्रध्याः स्त्रीतः स्त्रीः वर्षे स्त्राः । भ्रम्भयः यस्यासः प्रध्याः स्त्राः वर्षे स्त्राः स्त्राः । भ्रम्भयः यस्यासः प्रध्याः स्त्राः स्त्राः

The root text of the secret teaching on the Wheel of Time states as well:

Seconds of anger toward your lama Destroy equal eons of virtue collected, Then bring equal eons in which you endure The terrible pain of hells and the rest.¹⁷

म् अभ्याश्चीयायः स्थायः द्वाद्धः स्वेदः त्येयः यात्र्यायः व्यव्यायः व्याद्धः स्वेदः स्वायः यो व्याः व्याद्धः स्वेदः स्वायः यो व्याः स्वेदः स्वायः यो स्वयः स्वायः यो स्वयः यो स

Now the length of time in the snap of a finger is itself made up of no less than sixty-five of what we call "instants of minimum action." If an emotion of anger towards your lama comes up in your mind for this period, for sixty-five of these split-seconds, then you will have to stay in hell for a period equal to sixty-five *eons*. This by the way is how the tradition of the lesser way describes it; according to the teachings of the greater way, the period is even longer.¹⁸

दक्षः मार्श्वाकान्ता विकासान्त्रेत् प्रक्षेत्रः स्वाकान्त्रेत् प्रक्षेत्रः स्वाकान्त्रेत् प्रक्षेत्रः स्वाकान्त्रेत् प्रक्षेत्रः स्वाकान्त्रेत् प्रक्षेत् प

And there are even more dangers; a person who behaves improperly towards his lama will, as the *Fifty Verses on Lamas* describes, suffer even more in this present life: spirits, various sicknesses, and other such problems will harass him constantly. In the hour of death, he is tormented by excruciating pain at the vital points and overwhelmed by terror. Moreover, he dies through one of the thirteen causes of a premature death—and so on.¹⁹

7 How the Three Paths are Every Teaching

বিষ্ট্রিম থেষা মীষা এবি এক বাস্তব্য ক্রম বাস্তিবা ব্রহ্ম থা মার্ম এবং এই প্রার্থিম এই বাষ্ট্রিম এই বাষ্ট্র ব

Thus we can say that, within just a single teaching session devoted to this work on the Steps to the path to Buddhahood, the teacher has taught and the disciples have heard the essence drawn from every single volume of Buddhist teaching that exists on this entire planet.

8 A Master of the Teachings

A person who develops a good understanding of these Steps to the path reaches a point where he can go to any one of those *tsatsa* sheds around town where we dispose of old scriptures and images, pick up any scrap of writing that he finds there, and know just where it fits into his lifetime practice. When you go from here to there, meaning from this single teaching on the Steps out to the mass of the Buddhas' other teachings, the Steps are like a magic key that opens a hundred different doors. Going from there to here, the total contents of that mass of teachings has been packed into these Steps.

र् भुः क्री-तार्टा विश्वावशिष्टश्रात्रश्ची त्रात्राचिष्टात्रश्ची विश्वावश्चिष्ट्रश्चिष्ठात्राच्यात्र विश्वावश्चिष्ठात्राच्यात्र विश्वावश्चिष्ठात्र विश्वावश्चिष्ठात्य विश्वावश्चिष्ठात्र विश्वावश्चिष्ठ विश्वावश्चिष्ठ विश्वावश्चिष्ठ विश्वावश्च विश्वावश्चिष्ठ विश्वावश्चिष्ठ विश्वावश्चिष्ठ विश्वावश्चिष्ठ विश्वावश्चय विश्वावश्यय विश्वावश्चय विश्वावश्चय विश्वावश्चय विश्वावश्यय विश्

Having the ability we've just described is, by the way, what we mean when we say someone has "gained an understanding of the teachings in their entirety." Therefore too the expression "master of all the Buddhas' teachings" is not at all meant to refer to somebody who has put together some neither-here-and-neither-there concoction of all the earlier and later systems, and who is trying to practice that. This point we get as well from something that Tuken Dharma Vajra spoke: "Try to mix up all the systems, the earlier and the later, and you end up outside of both."

When we say here that the entire teachings of the Buddha are packed into the Steps of the path, what we mean is that every vital point of the teachings has been expressed through an abbreviated presentation of the topics contained in the three collections of scripture.

9 Be Careful What You Learn

People who have hopes of doing some kind of spiritual practice should study an unerring path such as this one. It's not right just to practice anything you can get ahold of, like some stray dog that gobbles down anything he can find. As the gentle protector, the Sakya Pandita, has said:

বিষ্ণান্যুহ্যা

Even in some insignificant business
Over a horse, a gem, or the like,
You check: ask everyone, consider it well.
We see people taking pains like this over
Even the smallest matters of this life.
Gaining the ultimate goal of all our
Countless lives depends on dharma,
Yet we prize any dharma we might come across,
Not checking if it's good or bad,
And act like dogs with a scrap of food.²¹

दश्ची प्राचित्र के के त्या प्रस्ति व के त्या प्रस्ति व के त्या के त्य के त्या के त्या

That's just how it is—even in every little matter of this present life, like when you're buying or selling something, you take a lot of care: you do everything you can think of, you run around and ask other people, you spend a lot of time thinking over what to do yourself. But no matter how big a mistake you make with something like this, it's not going to help or hurt you in your future life at all. If you meet up with a spiritual teaching that's wrong though, you make a mistake that affects the ultimate goal of all your lives.

10 The Mark of a True Spiritual Teaching

श्रम्भः स्वीत्रात्तः वियाः द्वीत्वाः द्वीत्वाः वियाः स्वात्वः स्वात्वः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्व इस्रमः सुः त्वेतः स्वतः स

Now the master translators of old undertook a great many hardships, journeying afar to the land of India to bear authentic dharma teachings back here to Tibet. But those in Tibet who followed a mistaken path couldn't live up to them at all. Really good water should at the end of ends trace back to some pure snow. Just so, whatever dharma we choose to practice should have its ultimate origin in something infallible: in the very Lord of the Word, in the Teacher, in the Buddha.

You can spend a thousand years struggling to practice some dharma teaching that has no authentic origin, and you still won't get a single sliver of true realization. It's like thrashing water to make butter.

Therefore we can say that the teaching we decide to practice should have three distinguishing features:

- 1) It should have been taught by the Buddha.
- 2) It should have been cleaned of any errors: sages must have brought the teaching to its authentic final form, having examined it to determine whether any wrong ideas crept into it after the Buddha taught it.
- 3) It should have brought true realizations to the hearts of master practitioners, once they have heard, considered, and

meditated upon it. And then it must have passed to us through the various generations of an unbroken lineage.

If the dharma we seek to practice has these three characteristics, it is authentic. We from our side still might fail it, through lapses in our effort and daily practice, but we need never fear that the teaching from its side will fail us.

11 Those Who Seek a Spiritual Life

विष्यायः वि

बिश्यःयश्वर

We have now reached the third and final of the preliminaries that lead into the composition of the text. This one consists of a strong encouragement for the reader to study the work well, and is contained in the next verse of the root text:

Listen with a pure mind, fortunate ones Who have no craving for the pleasures of life, And who to make leisure and fortune meaningful strive To turn their minds to the path which pleases the Victors.

रे.लर.चेर.रेच.शूरे.तरु.चरे.च.ल.लूर.शूर.कुच.जीर.श.कचेश.तर.बर.त.बूच.

दर्रायदेश्चित्रात्रात्वेराष्ट्रात्वेराय्वेराय्वे प्राप्ता वर्ष्ट्रायदेश्चित्रात्वे प्राप्ता वर्ष्ट्रायदेश्चित्रात्वे प्राप्ता वर्ष्ट्रायदेश्चित्रात्वे प्राप्ता वर्ष्ट्रायदेश्चित्रात्वे प्राप्ता वर्ष्ट्रायदेश्चित्रात्वे प्राप्ता वर्ष्ट्रायदेश्चित्रात्वे प्राप्ता वर्ष्ट्रायदेश्चित्रयदेश्चित्रयदेश्चित्रयदेश्चित्रयदेश्चित्रयदेश्चित्रयदेश्चित्रयदेश्चित्रयदेश्चित्रयदेश्चित्रयदेश्चित्रयदेश्चित्रयदेश्चित्रयदेश्चित्रयदेश्चित्रयदेश्चित्रयदेश्चित्रयदेश्चित्रयदेश्यवित्रयदेश्यवित्रयदेश्यवित्

Here the great Tsongkapa is urging his readers to study the work: "You, you people *who* are seeking freedom and *have no* single moment's *craving for the pleasures of life*; you, who want to get the absolute most from the body you've found, *to make your leisure and fortune meaningful*; you now are going to have to train yourself in a path that never errs, a path that never strays, a path that is whole and complete, *the path which pleases* even *the Buddhas*—the one in the end they advise, a path that is no erring path, a path that is no path that strays, a path that is more than just some piece or part of a path. And if you want to train yourself in a path like that, you're going to have to be a student who has all the requirements of a student; you're going to have to fit the description from the *400 Verses*:

|मुब्रःम्बर्यः क्र्यःच्यः देवःमुक्रःच।

We call someone a proper vessel for study Who's unbiased, intelligent, and willing to strive.²²

And *fortunate ones* like you, disciples who have *turned their minds* to the dharma, are going to have to *listen with a pure mind;* avoid in your study those things which are opposed to its success—the three problems of the pot; rely in your study on those things which are conducive to its success—the six images for the instruction."²³

12 Why You Need Renunciation

बिरायसानस्याने । विरायसान्याने । विरायसान्याने । विरायसान्याने । विरायसान्याने स्वीत् । विरायसान्याने स्वीत् । विरायसान्याने स्वीत् । विरायसान्याने स्वीतः स्वीतः

There's no way to end, without pure renunciation, This striving for pleasant results in the ocean of life. It's because of their hankering life as well that beings Are fettered, so seek renunciation first.

रर रुवा विद्राचित्र केंब्र स्वाया काया काया विद्राचा विद्राची केंद्र का विद्राची केंद्र का विद्राची का विद्राची केंद्र का विद्र का विद्राची के विद्राची केंद्र का विद्राची का विद्राची केंद्र का विद्राची केंद्र का विद्राची केंद्र का विद्र का विद्राची का विद्राची केंद्र का विद्र का विद्राची केंद्र का विद्राची का विद्राची का विद्राची केंद्र का विद्राची केंद्र का विद्र का विद्राची केंद्र का विद्र का विद्र का विद्र का विद्राची केंद्र का विद्र का विद्र

Now for all of us to escape from the cycle of life, we have to want to escape. If we never develop the wish to get out, and we get attached to the good things of this circle of life, then there will never be any way to escape it.

द्रियम्बर्धित्यात्र्वेत्। द्रियम्बर्धित्यः व्यक्षः विवक्षः व्यक्षः विवक्षः व्यक्षः विवक्षः वि

A prisoner can sit in a jail, but if he never really wants to escape, and never really attempts an escape, he never will escape. It's the same for us—if we never try to find some way to escape this cycle of life, the day of our escape will never arrive. If we work to develop the wish to escape, then surely there will come a time when we do.

13 Renunciation and Compassion

The point here is that, to develop the wish to achieve enlightenment for all living beings, you must first develop a kind of compassion where you can no longer bear to see these beings tormented by the sufferings of life. To develop this, you must develop renunciation over your own situation; there is no way otherwise you could gain compassion, for it contemplates the situation that others must face. This too, concluded our Lama, is what Lord Atisha meant in his gentle rebuke to us Tibetans: "Only in Tibet have they found people with the wish for enlightenment who haven't yet found love and compassion."

14 On Stopping Desire

१८०१वर्त्ते रःह्ने ८१८गावः कें त्यः वेंदः हो ८१४। १८०१वर्ते सहार १८०१वर्षे व्यास्त्रेत

বিশ্বামানস্থ্র

Leisure and fortune are hard to find, life's not long; Think it constantly, stop desire for this life.

रटः कें त्वरे त्या खुः त्यका खूया यदे रहें यो का क्षूत्र या या का क्ष्या का खूत खुका कें या का या किया कें का कें त्यरे ते कें त्यरे ते खूट : त्यका कें या का व्या का ते कें त्यरे ते खूट : त्यका कें या का व्या का ते कें त्यरे ते खूट : त्यका कें या का ते व्या का ते

What we mean by "desire for this life" is this desire for happiness and fame in this life—where you say to yourself, "If only I could get more of the good things of life than anyone in the world—the best food, finest clothes, biggest name, and all the rest." Anyone who hopes to do some spiritual practice must stop his desire for this life.

How to stop it? You must contemplate the two Steps known as (1) the "great importance of this life of leisure and fortune, and the difficulty of finding it," as well as (2) our "impermanence, the fact that we must die." These thoughts then will turn back your desire for this life—in your mind, you will give up on it. The fact that you and I right now never do any spiritual practice—no, worse, the fact that we try and what we do is anything but spiritual practice—is all because of our desire for this life. *Free of Four Loves*, the mental-training text, puts it this way:

बिश्यम्बर्धस्यः सः स्ट्री विद्यस्यः सः स्ट्रीयः स्ट्रीयः स्ट्रीयः स्ट्रीयः विद्यस्यः सः स्ट्रीयः स्ट्रीयः

No practitioner, a person who loves this life. No renunciation, a mind that loves the cycle.²⁵

15 Giving Up on this Life

र्रेश्वार्यर क्रिंश्वार्थित त्रिक्षा स्वर्थ स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्थ स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य

The border that separates spiritual practice from what is not, and the border that separates real spiritual practice from what is not, is this attitude of having given up on this life. Practice, in the form of reciting some lines, and the world may somewhere meet; but there is no way that practice in the form of giving up on this life will ever meet the world, in the form of happily participating in this life. There is no way you can keep the world, and still keep your practice.

देशायम्यासुमान्त्रीयम्यम्याद्वस्य देशस्य स्थाप्तः स्थापत्तः स्यापत्तः स्थापत्तः स्यापत्तः स्थापत्तः स्यापत्तः स्थापत्तः स्थापत्त

This is what the precious preceptor, Drom Tonpa, had in mind when he said to a certain monk, "It makes my heart glad, uncle, to see you walking round this holy place to pay your respects; how much gladder would I be, if you did something spiritual!" And he went on to say the same thing about making prostrations, and reciting prayers, and meditating, and everything else. So finally the monk couldn't decide at all what was supposed to be spiritual practice and he asked Drom Tonpa, "Well then, how am I supposed to practice?" And the only answer he got was "Give up on this life!"—repeated three times, and loud.²⁶

16 The Three Concerns

दे.ता.क्रीश्वाचारेश.चार्शेश.देंश.चक्रीट.टेट.। टे.ट्या.क्रीश.चर्टे.चर्शेश. तपु.क्री.च्रीश.चारेश.चर्शेश.टें.वर्टे.चश.वट्ट.चर्शेश.च्रीश.चरेट.टेच्र्से।

In a broad sense we can start with what are known as the "eight worldly thoughts." These then can be shortened into three concerns of this life: food, clothes, and a big name. These three are what you have to give up on.

The worst of the three by the way is Big Name. Sages, holy men, great meditators of the past—even we can say a majority of them—have been able to live without great food, keeping themselves alive on one of those mystical practices where all you eat is some tiny pills or the essence of a flower. And they've been able to live without great clothes too: they sit in deep retreat, wearing tattered robes covered with dirt—they glue their backs to the wall of a cave and seal the only entrance. But in the bottom of their hearts they still crave fame—the Big Name—and they dream that all the local people outside are talking about what a holy master meditator they are.

इ. तर्ग्. यदुः श्रम्थे. १ राज्ये। श्रायका तात्र है. १ . २ १ . यो . श्रुं १ . व्हें या विश्व अपन्य स्था २ यो ग्री १ . ये विषय स्था अपन्य स्था

|মর্ক্রমঝ'বড়ব্'অ'রীয়'ঊ'য়৾'বৢ৾ঝ|

There have been many, many sages and scholars and monks who were pure in their moral lives but misled in this same way. As the great Droway Gonpo has said,

They go into seclusion, post a sign on the door, See not a soul, these master contemplators who still Hope in this life they call me the "Great Meditator."²⁷

।उद्याप्त

<u>|</u>ଜିଷ:55:|

As well as,

And so they fill their minds with hopes and plans, Thoughts that come in everything they do, And so their spiritual practice goes to waste, Spirited away by bandit locals.

Take a spear then, strike it into every Thought that comes for this life, and remember Should a single spear not hit the mark Being a sage, saint, scholar, meditator Cannot close the door to the three lower realms.

17 The Eight Worldly Thoughts

रयायः या स्ट्रें प्रस्ता स्ट्रें प्रस्ति स्ट्रें स्ट्

वहैया हे ब केंश चक्क द वहै । अर्थे हें अश्वार द येंश

Therefore if we want to do any spiritual practice we must quell the eight worldly thoughts—we must stand neutral, free of both members of each of its four pairs. "Eight worldly thoughts" is a name we give to the following eight emotions:

- 1) Being happy when we acquire some thing,
- 2) And unhappy when we don't.
- 3) Being happy when we feel good,
- 4) And unhappy when we don't.
- 5) Being happy when we become well known,
- 6) And unhappy when we don't.
- 7) Being happy when someone speaks well of us,
- 8) And unhappy when someone speaks ill of us.

As the Letter to a Friend states,

Oh worldly wise! To gain or not, feel good Or not, be well-known or not, be spoken of Well or ill, these are the eight worldly thoughts. Quell them; let them not come to your mind.²⁸

The great saint Lingrepa has said as well,

In the city of daily concerns in our circle of life
Scurry the waked cadavers of eight worldly thoughts.
This is where you can find the most frightening
cemetery of all;
This is where you lamas should keep your midnight

This is where you lamas should keep your midnight vigil among the dead.²⁹

18 The Ten Ultimate Riches

र्रेशका म्र. म्र्रिंश चार्ट्र रावद्व अयः रचा चावाव चार्यक्ष स्वाक म्रेंश चित्र म्रेंश चित्र स्वाचित्र स्व

Therefore if a person fails to stand free of the eight worldly thoughts for this life he will find it hard even to shut the doors to a birth in the realms of misery, much less do something that's a spiritual practice. To do such a practice, you must take up the instruction called the "Ten Ultimate Riches"—a teaching of the masters called the Seers of the Word for quelling the eight worldly thoughts, and giving up on life. These ten "ultimate riches" are the following:³⁰

The Four Aims.
The Three Diamonds.
The Three of Being Thrown Out,
and Reaching, and Attaining.

यान्द्रायात्वे के। र्स्याया केंया या यान्द्रा केंया यान्द्रायायान्द्रा सूर्याया विष्याया केंया या विष्याया केंया या विष्याया केंया या विष्याया विष्याया केंया या विष्याया विषया विष

The "four aims" are,

Aiming your mind ultimately to practice. Aiming your practice ultimately to the beggar. Aiming the beggar ultimately to death. Aiming death ultimately to some dusty ravine.

र्से हे न सुरुष्य है। विवस्य से दे हे हे हें स्थाय प्रत्य । विव्य से दे हे हे स्थाय प्रविवा । यो प्रेस हें हे रूट रूट र वर्षे न स्थाय प्रदान प्रमुख

And the "three diamonds" are,

Sending the uncatchable diamond ahead of you. Laying the unabashable diamond behind you. Keeping the wisdom diamond at your side.

युर्-श्रुवाशः र्रा। युर-श्रुवाशः र्रा। श्रु-वाशुक्रः र्रा।

The three of "being thrown out, and reaching, and attaining," are, lastly,

Being thrown out from the ranks of men.

Reaching the ranks of dogs.

Attaining the ranks of the gods.

"Aiming your mind ultimately to practice" means to practice religion with the following thoughts: This time I've been able to obtain a good human body and circumstances; they are extremely hard to find, they are incredibly valuable, and they include all the necessary leisure and fortune. This is the one and only time I will have such a life. And it will not be here long; it is absolutely sure that I will die, I have no way of knowing when my death will come. And when I die, only this holy spiritual practice will be of any use to me. All the things and honors I have gathered in this life, every bit of fame I've gained, everything else of the money and possessions I may have with me, will not be the slightest help to me.

क्र्याचिताताक्षाचीशावक्र्याचीशावक्र्याचीशावक्र्याचीशावक्षात्राचिशावक्ष

"Aiming your practice ultimately to the beggar" is like this: Suppose you think to yourself "But well now, if I stop trying to do what it takes to live well in this life so I can do my spiritual practice, I'm afraid that I won't even find the bare necessities for doing the practice: I'll become a beggar." Think then to yourself this way: "I will undertake any hardship for my practice; and if it means I have to become a mere beggar, then let me become a beggar. I will find a way to do my practice, even if I have to live on lousy scraps of food that I beg off others, and wear any old clothes they give me."

"Aiming the beggar ultimately to death" means never giving up on your practice. Suppose you think to yourself, "So I try to do some practice, and I turn into a beggar, because I haven't taken the time to collect even the single smallest material thing. But then I won't even have what it takes to sustain this human life. I'm afraid some day I'll die, without enough food, without enough clothes." But instead you should think this way: "In all my many previous lives, I've never given up my life for the sake of my practice. If I can die this one time trying to practice, I might make up for it. And anyway we are all the same: rich or poor, we all are going to die. Rich people, to get rich, have collected a lot of bad deeds and will die with them. I, on the other hand, will accomplish something of very great meaning if I die from the hardships of trying to practice. So if for my practice I freeze to death, let me freeze. If for this I starve, let me starve."

चर्ष्मेयश्चर्याम् अस्ति स्वाप्ति स्वाप्ति स्वाप्ति स्वाप्ति स्वाप्ति स्वाप्ति स्वाप्ति स्वाप्ति स्वाप्ति स्वापति स्वा

यः प्रमा विक्रा क्षेत्र प्रमा निष्य प्रमा क्षेत्र । विक्रम् विक्रम्

"Aiming your death ultimately to some dusty ravine" comes like this: Suppose you think to yourself, "But there are certain things that I need from now up to the time I die. If I don't have any money at all, how am I going to get someone to help me when I'm sick? Who will attend me in my old age? Who will be there at my deathbed? And who will take care of things after I die—who will take the body away, and all the rest?" All these kinds of thoughts come under the category of attachment to the good things of this life. There's no way at all you can be sure that you'll even live long enough to reach any old age. Better to go to some lonely mountain retreat, and give up attachment to anything at all, and think to yourself "Now I'm going to practice, and I don't care if I die like some stray dog in a dusty ravine, with no one to look after me, and maggots crawling all over the corpse."

व्यक्षा अर्द्ध हैं क्रिक्ष व्यवक्ष अर्द्ध हैं क्रिक्ष विष्ट हैं क्रिक्ष क्षेत्र क्षेत

"Sending the uncatchable diamond ahead of you" has this meaning: You may be able to give up on life as described above, and start to try your practice. But then your parents and other family, your friends and all the rest will try to catch you and bring you back. Make yourself uncatchable; keep your mind as firm and unchanging as a diamond, even if you have to leave behind your most beloved family and friends, those close to you as the heart in your breast, standing with tears in their eyes from the pain. Leave, go to some lonely mountain hermitage, without any regrets, without any attachments. Stay there and devote yourself to the purest of practice.

वियासेन हें हे हे साया प्रविया पाने। कें र्ह्मेस प्रमूट स्था वर्षे पाने हो कें र्ह्मेस प्रमूट

यावका क्र्याश्चीयः ततुः ययः क्रयाकाः क्षेत्रः श्वेतः त्युक्षः यावका क्र्याश्चीयः यवदः विवादिक्षः विवादिक्यः विवादिक्षः विवादिक्यः विवादिक्यः विवादिक्षः विवादिक्यः विवादिक्यः विवादिक्यः विवादिक्यः विवादिक्यः व

"Laying the unabashable diamond behind you" looks like this: Suppose you do give up on this life, and leave. People will despise you, and condemn you, and say things like "Now he's nothing but a useless wandering beggar." But whatever they say you must give up on all of it, and think to yourself, "If they say I'm as pure as a god, that's fine. If they say I'm as evil as a devil, that's fine too. It doesn't make any difference to me. Trying to keep up a good image with friends who are all devoted to this life can lead to a great many problems, and acts as a great obstacle to spiritual practice."

"Keeping the wisdom diamond at your side" means never transgressing the pledge you have made to yourself. Abandon, and abandon forever, all the absolutely meaningless actions you do out of desire for this life. Keep your mind in the spiritual, firmly, and make your life and your practice one and the same.

"Being thrown out from the ranks of men" comes like this: Now you will start to see that desiring the good things of this present life is your real enemy. Your whole outlook then will start to clash with the outlook that other men have, men high or low, who all nonetheless strive for this life's happiness. To them you are acting like a madman, and so you will be thrown out from the ranks of men—men who live for this life.

ष्ट्रिः व्ययः क्षेत्रावायः दे। देश्येवायानुवायात्रुवायः वीदः प्रक्षम्। वेवाग्रीः धुरः द्वायोवा क्रॅ्रियाद्याद्वाद्देश्यात्तुदाधाद्यात्र्यम् वर्षेत्राच्यात्राचेत्रायः वर्षेत्राच्यात्रायः वर्षेत्राच्यात्रायः

"Reaching the ranks of dogs" means that you live your life without any great food, or clothes, or reputation. For the sake of your practice, you endure whatever comes to you in the way of hunger, or thirst, or tiredness.

यहर हैं ह्यूय य अधर पहुँ व्याप क दुः यो यार दुः यर या कु या गुः वे विषय हैं विदे व्या र्चिय'य'धीता

"Attaining the ranks of the gods" starts with going to some secluded place, and giving up on all the normal activities of the world. You bring your practice to its desired end, and within this very life attain the state of a Buddha—the very god of gods.

Never Fear for Money

देःसूरःर्त्वेशःवहदःदशःर्वेशःसूवःदःसूदःर्यरःशेदःसूःसुःग्रीशःवैःथेदःववैःर्देगशःयः नुः भे दर्शेषा वहेगा हे ब पा वें वा भाव भाव विषय से दिया में वा भाव विषय से भाव से भाव विषय से भाव से भ यान्द्र-द्रष्ठाःश्री-द्री क्रेंद्र-पःश्र्याषाद्देः उदःसर्द्रदः परःह्याषाः परः वर्षः क्रुषः पदेः कु.त्रांत्र.भ्रीर.रीयो.मुदुःभ्री.य.यध्याभीदुःयश्र्रतःयश्रात्रेयो.त्र्रात्तःयश्रात्रेयो. यदे.ह्रा.पहेंचा.प्रांत्रा.गी.पक्र्.यदु.शंबेंच.भीष.रं.पर्जूश.ता.रंटा श्रेंट.हे.तर.रंगर.

51

By the way, you need never fear that if you give up on things to practice the way we've described it above you'll become some poor beggar and starve to death. It is possible for a worldly person to die of hunger, but absolutely impossible for a religious practitioner to do so. This is because our compassionate Teacher, when he reached the state of total enlightenment, still had merit enough from his past deeds to go and take some 60,000 births as a

"Wheel Emperor"—one of those incredibly powerful beings who rule the entire world. Instead he took the fantastic power of these deeds and dedicated it to the food and other necessities that all his future followers might require. In the White Lotus, the Sutra on Compassion, we hear the following oath from the Buddha as he first commits himself to reaching enlightenment for the sake of living kind:

श्रद्धाः स्थितः वर्ष्णे श्राम्यः श्रद्धाः स्थितः स्याः स्थितः स्याः स्थितः स्य

And in the days when my teachings spread in the world, any man who wears so much as four inches of the saffron robe shall find food and drink to his heart's desire. If he does not, then I shall have cheated the state of Buddhahood. And then may I lose my Buddhahood.³¹

20 How Should We Think about Money?

Now when we say to "give up on this life," the main thing that you have to give up is those eight worldly thoughts or attachments, towards the pleasures of this life. Giving up these thoughts doesn't necessarily mean that you have to throw away all your material possessions and become a beggar. Holy teachers of the past have pointed out for us examples of people who succeeded in giving up on life, and these have included personages of fantastic material wealth such as Gyalchok Kelsang Gyatso and the Panchen Lobsang Yeshe.³²

21 Lord Maitreya about Giving up on Life

इयावर्त्तेराम्चीर्वराधुवाः भेरायवे वया दशामुरा वि.श्रुट.येश.कें.क्र्य.वि.चर्यायायाया । ५५ : यः विवा या है दः दशः श्री अः यः दा *विं पर्ने पासुँ भैगाभै सू न्*। ।यरेक्'यर'र'र्सेर'वव्दर'य'क्। |मानेब'दर्ब'यर्र्'ग्री'यर्वेव्य'दरेयब्य'धेब्। । परेक कें साक्षुस प्रशिप केंद्र। J=रार्देर'य<u>५५'ग</u>्री'र्स'योद्या <u>বিবুষ বিদ্দেষ র্ব বেইর ক্রবাম শ্রুদেম।</u> १वर्रेर : धेंब : चर्र : ग्री: लग्र : यः धेव। <u>| प्रकेट प्रमार्थ शासी होता प्रमाणित ।</u> ।गर्लेब मेंग्राय पर्ट्य ग्री सुर्धे प्येषा |सु'नर'देश'शें विंद'वेंद'गुर्वा १४'ॶ्य'न५५'ग्री'नर्रेंद'र'धेदा ।बर:चर:५गाद:धेश:धुर:५:वेंश। |(यर व्रस्थ उर प्रविद्या दश दर्वे र् |र्शरः सुः प्रविषाः सः रेवः उदः व्ययास।

विरादरा

The great master of all master meditators, Milarepa, has said as well:

If in your heart you wish to keep the holy practice, son,

Within the very depths of it then find this thing first—faith,

Never turn and look back once again upon—this life.

If in truth you'll follow after me,

Your loved ones turn to demons, hold you back;

Do not think them true—cut all the ties.

Food and money are the demons' advance guard;

The closer the worse, give up all want for them.

The objects of the senses are the demons' snare;

"They will entrap me!" stop your craving them.

Your young love is the daughter of the demons;

"She will mislead me!" so be on your guard.

The place you grew up is the demons' prison;

Hard to free yourself from, flee it quick.

You will have to leave it all behind and

go on—later,

Why not make it meaningful and leave it all—right now?

It will fall down one day anyway, this mannequin apparition;

Better to use this body now, get off to a good quick start.

This skittish bird of mind will anyway fly from the corpse one day;

Better now to soar across some wide expanse of sky.

If you listen and act upon this one man's words—of mine,

Then the grace to keep the holy practice, my boy—is yours.³³

Death in the Wild of a Mountain Cave

|सूर्या:य:त्या:श्रेष:योश:सर्द्धर:बिट:।

|२.भैथ.उर्ये.लुज.३:२.२| |५.२४.झॅ८.शश.उह्य.त.२८.| ঀৼ৻য়৻৻ঀঀৣ৾ৼ৻য়য়য়৻য়৻ৼৄয়৻য়৻য়৻ড়ৢঀ। ঀৼ৻য়৻৻ঀঀৣ৾ৼ৻য়য়য়৻য়৻ৼৄয়৻য়৻য়৻ড়ৢঀ।

|द्यायर्च्चित्रः यश्रश्रायः स्याश्रायः ध्येत्र।
|द्यायर्च्चित्रः यश्रित्रः यश्रित्रः यः यश्रित्रः यश्रित्रः यः यश्रित्रः यः यश्रित्रः यश्चित्रः यश्चः यश्चित्रः यश्चयः यश्चित्रः यश्चयः यश्चित्रः यश्चित्रः यश्चित्रः यश्चित्रः यश्चयः यश्चयः यश्चयः यश्चयः यश

|र्रायायर्विराधीश्री स्पान्ता। |भीत्राद्वीरायकीत्रायाद्व| |भीत्राद्वीरायकीत्रायाद्व| |स्यायर्वीरायस्यायार्थित्व|

|८:यार:शॅट:यडी:श्रे:श्रेन्य:८८:। |यडीर:शॅट:याहट:शॅ:श्रेट:य:दु। |दीदंद:यडी:दु:यक्रे:तुश्रःव। |इय:युर्वेर:यश्रशःय:ऍयाश्रःय:धेत्र।

|श्चरःर्यःवै:पदे:श्च्याःस्याःह।

यर्ट्स्य व्यवस्थात् स्वास्त्र । विस्त्र वास्त्र स्वास्त्र विस्त्र वास्त्र स्वास्त्र विस्त्र वास्त्र वास्त्

Lord Milarepa said too,

No way my loved ones know I'm glad, No way my enemies know I'm sad; If I can die here in this cave My hermit's wishes have come true.

No way my friends know I've got old, No way my sister knows I'm sick; If I can die here in this cave My hermit's wishes have come true.

No way that people know I've died, No rotting corpse that vultures spy; If I can die here in this cave My hermit's wishes have come true.

Flies will suck my meat and bones, Maggots eat tendons, ligament; If I can die here in this cave My hermit's wishes have come true.

No footprints leading from my door, No bloodstains left here on the floor; If I can die here in this cave My hermit's wishes have come true.

No one to hold a deathbed vigil, No one to weep when I am gone; If I can die here in this cave My hermit's wishes have come true.

No one to wonder where I went No one who knows where I am found; If I can die here in this cave My hermit's wishes have come true.

May this death prayer of a beggar In the wild of a mountain cave Come to help all living beings; Then my wishes have come true.³⁴

दशःश्रेशःग्रीशःश्रेन्द्रश्रेन्द्रश्रितःग्रेन्द्रश्रेतःग्रेन्द्रश्रेन्द्रश्रेन्द्रश्रेन्द्रश्रेन्द्रश्रेन्द्रश् यःत्रश्लेश्रायःश्रेन्द्रप्रेत्रश्रेन्द्रश्रेन्द्रश्रेन्द्रश्रेन्द्रश्रेन्द्रश्ले

Now there is one instruction which we can call the very essence of all the teachings on how to get rid of the eight worldly thoughts of this life. This is the meditation on one's own impermanence and death. People like us though must prepare our minds for this meditation by first contemplating how valuable, and how hard to find, our present life of leisure and fortune is. Then gradually we will be ripe for the realization of death.

23 On the Preciousness of Life

वितायत्रीत्रायत्र वितायवित्र प्राप्त वितायत्र वितायत्य वितायत्र वितायत्र वितायत्र वितायत्र वितायत्र वितायत्य वितायत्य वितायत्य वितायत्य वितायत्य वितायत्य वितायत्य वितायत्य वितायत्य व

The all-knowing Lord Tsongkapa has said himself,

This body of leisure's more valuable than a jewel that gives any wish, And now is the only time you will ever find a one like this. It's hard to find, and easily dies, like lightning in the sky. Think this over carefully, and come to realize That every action of the world is like the chaff of grain, And so you must strive night and day to make the most of life. I, the master meditator, put this into practice; You, who seek for freedom, must conduct yourselves this way.³⁵

24 The Freedom of Renunciation

द्वीराचरात्रेश्वराच्यात्रेराद्दाचात्रेश्वर्षा चलकावीदार्र्यकात्रीश्चेश्वराच्यात्रेश्वर्षाः व्यक्ष्यात्रेराचेश्वर्षाः व्यक्ष्यात्रेराचेश्वर्षाः व्यक्ष्यात्रेराचेश्वर्षाः व्यक्ष्यात्रेराचेश्वरः व्यक्ष्यात्रेराचेश्वरः व्यक्ष्यात्रेराचेश्वरः व्यक्ष्यात्रेराचेश्वरः व्यक्ष्यात्रेराचेश्वरः व्यक्ष्यात्रेराचेश्वरः व्यक्ष्यात्रेराचेश्वरः व्यक्ष्यः व्यव्यक्षः व्यक्ष्यः व्यक्षयः व्यव्यक्षयः विष्यः विष्यः विषयः विष

The point here is that, to rid yourself of the eight worldly thoughts and undertake a spiritual practice which is truly pure, you must gain two different realizations: first, of how valuable and hard to find one's life of leisure and fortune is; secondly, of one's own impermanence and the fact that he must die.

Once you gain these realizations, it doesn't matter—the hills can turn to gold, the rivers into milk, and every man your slave—but to you it's all repulsive, useless, like a feast set before a sick man vomiting. And it's not enough for these realizations to come to you just from the outside—from sitting and listening to someone describe them. They must come from the inside, from thinking about them yourself. Then they will be firm in your mind, and never change again.

25 How Rare a Life Like This Is

द्र-पद्-भर्मेश-तामिश्व-प्रेट-मी-मि-प्र-प्र-प्रम्प-प्रम्य-स्था-मि-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्रम्य-प्र-प्रम्य-प्

Finally a life like ours is hard to find from the viewpoint of the "classical example." Suppose there were a single yoke-like ring of pure gold that could float upon the surface of the great ocean. The swells of the sea push it back and forth, in every direction you can imagine. Far down in the very depths of the ocean lives a great sea-turtle. He is sightless. Once, and only once, in the span of an entire century he swims to the surface, to poke his head up momentarily. And suppose the golden ring happens to catch him around the neck. The odds against it are nearly infinite.

श्रवतःश्राः क्षेत्राः क्षेत्रः त्याः व्याः व्यः व्याः व्याः

Our case is the same. The teachings of the Buddha pass now and again among the various planets of the universe. Here are we, blinded by our ignorance. We are permanent inhabitants of the deepest reaches within the ocean of cyclic life. A human body, complete with leisure and fortune, will be fantastically hard to find; the odds against it are almost infinite. But this time we have found one.

र्शः त्रेन्द्रः प्रत्यात् वर्षेत्रः हिन्द्रेन्द्रः के लिट्ट होन्द्रः प्रत्यात् प्रत्यात् प्रत्यात् वर्षेत्रः व होत्यात् प्रत्यात् वर्षेत्रः के लिव्यात् वर्षात् प्रत्यात् प्रत्यात् प्रत्यात् के वर्षेत्रः के व्यव्यात् वर्षेत्रः के व्यव्यात् वर्षेत्रः के व्यव्यात् वर्षेत्रः के व्यव्यात् वर्षेत्रः के वर्षेत्रः के वर्षेत्रः वर्षेत्रः के वर्षेत्रः वर्षः वर्षेत्रः वर्षेत

So our life of leisure and fortune is incredibly valuable, and difficult to find; this is the first and last time we will ever have such a chance. We must now make the greatest use we can of it. The single highest thing we can do with this life is to practice the Greater Way.

26 Being Mindful of Our Death

द्रभाग्नीश्वायक्षात्रम्भवतः अद्भान्त्रम्भवतः अद्भान्त्रम्भवतः अद्भान्त्रम्भवतः अद्भान्त्रम्भवतः अद्भान्त्रम्भ द्रभाग्नीश्वायक्षेत्रम्भवतः अद्भान्त्रम्भवतः अद्भान्त्रम्भवतः अद्भान्तः विष्णायः विष्णायः विष्णायः विष्णायः विषण

And we must begin this practice now, right now. Little time remains before the inevitable death comes to us. We must constantly bring our death to mind; just some vague awareness that someday death will come, or thinking some about death, is not enough to really keep your coming death in mind. You must train yourself, meticulously, in what it is to die.

त्त्रव्यात्त्रक्ष्यत्योः श्रुंत्र्योः त्रिः त्राक्षः विष्यायः त्रे त्याः विष्यायः विष्याः विष्यः विष्य

In our root text, the instruction on how to keep your mind on death is presented in the words "life's not long." This instruction includes a number of categories: the benefits that come from keeping your mind on death, the problems that come from not keeping your mind on death, and how then actually to keep your mind on death. This last category itself includes the three basic principles, the nine reasons for them, and the three resolves to be made because of them—all ending with the meditation on what it's like to die. A person who trains himself in these categories over a long period of time is able to develop the true attitude of keeping his mind on death, and then gains the ability to turn back his desire for the pleasures of the present life. When a person through the process of careful contemplation has developed this attitude of keeping his mind on his own death and impermanence, then we can say the virtuous way has taken its root within him.

27 Future Lives Will Be No Better

।लट.लट.यश्रश्चात्रम्ब.त्रु.शयु.श्रॅट.चेश.र्जूय ।जश.उर्येश.ध्रु.पर्थ्ने.वर्षूर.ययु.श्रेयो.यर्ज्ञेता.र्थेशश्चा

विषाययायसूर्

Think over and over how deeds and their fruits never fail,
And the cycle's suffering: stop desire for the future.

स्याक्षराष्ट्री अद्र श्रूर विश्वाणी निवाद र विश्वाणी निवाद र श्रूष्ट्र श्रूष्ट्र ।

बिर तु श्रुष्ट विश्वाणी निवाद र विश्वाणी निवाद र श्रूष्ट विश्वाणी निवाद र विश्वाणी निवाद र

Now what we mean by "desire for the future" is the kind of attitude where you think to yourself, "I hope in my future births I can live like some god-like being, such as the creatures they call Pure-One and Hundred-Gift, or like one of those Wheel Emperors who rule the entire world. May I live in some wonderful state of happiness, in the best of places, with the best of things, with a beautiful body and everything I wish for at my fingertips." Incidentally, we also see people who pray to be born in one of the truly pure realms of a Buddha, where they will never have to suffer and can enjoy everlasting happiness—but they pray so without any intention of reaching this high state in order to help other beings. If we really follow this line of thinking to its end, it would appear that people like this have for the most part simply slipped into the base desire for future lives.

28 The Four Principals of Karma

र्ट्र-त्ययाः स्वेद्यः स्ट्र-त्याकाः ग्रीकाः स्ट्र-त्यः स्वेद्यः स्वाद्यः स्वादः स्वदः स्वादः स्वादः स्वादः स्वादः स्वादः स्वादः स्वादः स्वादः स्वादः

This contemplation is done by considering, very carefully, the four principles of action which the Buddha enunciated:

- 1) Actions are certain to produce similar consequences.
- 2) The consequences are greater than the actions.
- 3) One cannot meet a consequence if he has not committed an action.
- 4) Once an action is committed, the consequence cannot be lost.

Once a person has gained a well-founded belief in these principles, he will automatically in his daily life avoid doing wrong things and begin doing right things.

29 Where Death Takes You

दक्षीः नविः देवा हु दक्ष्या विश्वास्तर स्थे । देवा हुन्य स्था निष्य स्था निष

After you die, your consciousness doesn't just go out like a lamp—you must take another birth. And there are only two kinds of birth you can take: one of the births of misery, or one of the happier births. As for which of the two you do take, you are totally helpless: you must follow the direction of your past actions. Virtuous actions throw you into one of the happier types of birth, and non-virtuous actions throw you into one of the three of misery.

Great non-virtuous acts lead you to the hells; medium ones lead you to a birth as an insatiable spirit; and lesser non-virtues make you take birth as an animal. Great virtuous acts, on the other hand, bring you a birth as a pleasure-being in one of the two higher realms; medium virtues make you a pleasure being of the desire realm; and lesser virtues bring birth as a human in the same realm.³⁷ As our glorious protector, Nagarjuna, has stated,

|भी:नवी:न:यशःश्रुवा:नश्रूयःगुर्म।
|भी:नवीर्यःयशःन्देर्गःवश्रूयःनश्रूयःवश्यूयःवश्रूय

१ञ्चे न्याप्त क्षुत्र निष्

বিষামাধ্যমো

Non-virtue brings all sufferings And all the births of misery. Virtue brings all happier births, And happiness in all one's births.³⁸

ने त्यूर त्र र र र रे त्या न्यो य ते क्षें यथा कुर लिर की न्यो य ते वित हु क्षें यथा के यथा व ने यादी र र र त्या प्रकी य ते क्षें यथा कुर लिर की न्यो य ते वित हु क्षें यथा के यथा व ने

Since this is the case, and since all the virtues you and I have are feeble—while all our non-virtues are ever so mighty—then if we were to die in our present condition it's a foregone conclusion that we would take birth in one of the realms of misery.

दर्श चर्म्यार्श्चेर्यायाः स्वायायाः स्वायाय्याः स्वायायाः स्वायायाः स्वायायाः स्वायायाः स्वायायाः स्वायायाः स् याच्योत्राः स्वायाः विद्यायाः याः स्वायायाः स्वायायायः स्वायायः स्वायः स्वायायः स्वायः स्वयः स्वायः स्वायः स्वयः स्वय

Taking our birth in one of these realms, we would meet unbearable sufferings. As a hellbeing there would be unspeakable heat or cold, our bodies boiled or scorched, and more. As insatiable spirits we would always be hungry, or thirsty, in a constant state of exhaustion and fear. As animals we would be mindless brutes incapable of saying a thing, exploited by humans for their work or food.

30 How to Take Real Refuge

न्यत्रा त्रमायन्त्रात्त्रीः स्ट्रिंग्यः स्ट्रिंग्यः स्ट्रिंग्यः स्ट्रिंग्यः स्ट्रिंग्यः स्ट्रिंग्यः स्ट्रिंग्य न्यत्रा त्रमायन्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्र

There is a way to avoid these births of misery, and this is to turn ourselves over to the three rare jewels³⁹ for their protection, and do so from the bottom of our hearts, and strive our best in choosing correctly which actions we should undertake, and which we should abandon.

श्चित्रश्य वर्षे विश्व वर्षे वर् वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर्षे वर

This correct decision in choosing our actions is actually the single most important instruction in the entire teaching on how to go for refuge. Once we disregard the principles of action and consequence, it's already decided that we will take our birth in the realms of misery. People like you and I here in this assembly, mostly monks, are not likely to take one of these lower births simply because we know nothing of the spiritual teachings. But remember: there have been absolute multitudes of people like us, who had a knowledge of the teachings, but who passed to the realms of misery because they could not put these teachings into actual practice, or because they chose to disregard the laws of action and consequence.

And we must heed these laws. A man who does not must take a lower birth, and it doesn't matter how knowledgeable he was, or how saintly. You can be a sage who has mastered the entire contents of the canon, you can be an advanced meditator with fantastic spiritual accomplishments, you can have great extrasensory powers, and ability to perform miracles; but if you cannot behave with care around action and consequence, you will suffer.

31 Only Good Can Come From Good

यर्कतात्र्यं तथायर् प्राप्त्र प्रम्यात्र प्रम्यात्र प्रम्यात्र प्रम्यात्र प्रम्यात्र प्रम्यात्र प्रम्यात्र प्रम्य प्रम्य

So this brings us to the four most general principles in our contemplation of actions and their consequences:

1) If the cause involved is a virtuous act, then the consequence it produces can only be pleasure, and never pain. If the cause involved is a non-virtuous act, then the consequence it produces can only be pain, and never pleasure. Thus the first principle is that actions are certain to produce similar consequences.

32 The Consequences are Always Greater

हुः द्वो श्रेवा विष्ठ स्टुट द्वारायशायश्या विष्या । व्यया पुराविष्या विष्या । व्यया पुराविष्या । व्यया पुराविष

2) The causes involved may be virtuous or non-virtuous acts which are relatively minor, but the consequences they each produce—the pleasure or the pain—will be of tremendous power. The second principle then is that *the consequences are greater than the actions*.

33 No Action, No Result

3) If one never performs the virtuous or non-virtuous action to act as a cause, he will never experience a consequence of either pleasure or pain. Thus the third principle: *One cannot meet a consequence if he has not committed an action.*

34 Karma Never Just Goes Away

यः याने वे स्वाः याने वि स्वाः याने व

4) The fourth principle states that once a person has collected a virtuous or non-virtuous action to act as a cause, *once an action is committed*, *the consequence cannot be lost*—so long as the power of a good deed, for example, is not destroyed by an emotion like anger, or a bad deed by applying an appropriate antidote.

35 What it Means to be "Worldly"

यः विष्याः हेत्रः प्राच्येत्रः प्राच्याः विष्याः विष्याः विष्यः प्राच्येत्रः विष्यः विष्यः प्राच्येत्रः विष्यः प्राच्येत्रः विष्यः प्राच्येत्रः विष्यः प्राच्येत्रः विष्यः प्राच्येत्रः विष्यः प्राच्येत्रः विष्यः विष्यः

You've heard of the correct view that we call the "worldly" one—well this understanding of actions and consequences is what it refers to. This view by the way is something that everyone should adhere to, regardless of whether they're a monk or nun or layman. You should realize that the word "worldly" in this case is not just meant to refer to people who are still living the secular life. There is an expression we use, "ordinary people," to refer to any person who has yet to reach the path of a realized being [or someone who has seen emptiness directly.] Whatever else we may be, we are "worldly" people so long as we are ordinary people in this sense.

36 How Humans Suffer

श्चान्नार्टा र्टास्ट्रान्तुः र्रेचान्यर्जा यहेरान्युः रह्मान्न्य्याम्यर्जाम् र्रेचान्यर्जा यक्षः यदुः र्रेचान्यर्जा यहेर्यान्यर्जा यत्र्यः र्रेचान्यर्जा र्याः भ्रेचान्य भ्रात्यः भ्रेचान्यर्जा यहेर्यान्यर्जा स्वान्यर्थः र्रेचान्यर्जा रायदुः र्रेचान्यर्

Let's say you are born as a human; still you must suffer as you come from the womb. Still you must suffer as your body gets older, day by day. Still you must suffer when you are ill. Still you must suffer as you die. You must suffer the pain of missing your beloved family. You must suffer the pain of encountering your hated enemies. You must suffer the pain of working for the things you want, and not being able to get them—and on and on.

37 The Six Sufferings

द्वीः भाषाश्वेभः भट्टियाः पर्श्वे त्याः पर्शे द्वाः पर्श्वे याः पर्शे याः प

Lord Tsongkapa, in his great exposition on the Steps of the path to Buddhahood, divides the contemplation of life's general sufferings into three sections. These are contemplating the eight sufferings, the six sufferings, and the three sufferings. The group of eight though applies more to life as a human, and the group of three is given as sort of a summary. Here then we'll speak some of how to do the contemplation on the six sufferings.

लट.लट.शर्ज्ञ.र्थ.द्यीर.यदु.धेश.त। लट.लट.धेट.शश्चशः श्रीर.यदु.धेश.त। लट.लट.धेट.शश्चशः श्रीर.यदु.धेश.त। लट.लट.धेट.शश्चशः श्रीर.यदु.धेश.त। लेश.

These six are as follows:

- 1) The problem that life has no certainty.
- 2) The problem that we always want more than we have.
- 3) The problem that we have to keep shucking off bodies, over and over again.
- 4) The problem that we have to keep going into a new life, over and over again.
- 5) The problem that we go up and down in our fortunes in life, over and over again.
- 6) The problem that no one can come along with us; ultimately we are alone.

38 On Wanting Things

These six problems are described at length in the standard works on the Steps to Buddhahood. We should remember though King Mefeed, whose last words were "There is no greater evil in the world than the fact that we always want more than we have." You and I are monks, and there are only two things we should be doing:

Read the holy books, get teaching on them, contemplate their meaning.

Live a life of rejection, and stay in meditation.

स्वित्रास्य निक्रास्त्य विक्रास्त्र विक्रास्य विक्रास्य

विश्वास्त्राच्छेत्राचरित्राक्षेत्राच्याः क्षेत्राच्याः स्वाप्ताच्याः विश्वासाच्येत्राच्याः विश्वासाच्येत्राच्याः विश्वासाच्याः विश्वासाच्येत्राच्याः विश्वासाच्याः विश्वासाच्येत्राच्याः विश्वासाच्याः विश्वासाचयः विश्वसाचयः विश्वसाचय

Here a "life of rejection" means a life where we keep our morality, and reject bad deeds. If we can keep from going beyond these two activities, then one day we can become both wise and realized. If though we neglect these two, we will lose ourselves to what they call "lots of things to think about and lots of things to do." And then we won't do any spiritual practice at all. People make this mistake, by the way, because they are unable to stick to the precept of "Keep your wants few; be easy to satisfy."⁴¹

39 The Three Kinds of Pain

दर्भः र्रेया पर्रेजा प्रश्नेया पर्रेजा पर्रेया पर्येया पर्येय

Since the three types of suffering are mentioned later on in our root text, we'll describe them briefly. All impure feelings of pain constitute the first type of suffering: the "suffering of suffering."

श्चारायक्षामीः स्ट्रीयायदे प्राप्त व्याप्त प्राप्त व्याप्त व्यापत व्याप्त व्याप्त व्यापत व्यापत

All impure feelings of pleasure constitute the second type of suffering: the "suffering of change." We can explain this suffering as follows. When you're in a place that's very hot, then something cool seems like pleasure. When you're in a place that's very cold, then something warm seems like pleasure. The same is true when you've had to walk a long way (sitting would seem a pleasure), or had to sit for a long time (walking would seem a pleasure).

दे'यदे'य'रद'अळॅब्र'य'ङ्गे'दें'र्वे'क्रेद्'ग्री'यदे'य'अ'थेब'हे'दे'थेब'ब्र'द'दुद'हे'र्उअ'

तश्चेत्रग्राट्ये प्रकेष्ट्र प्रक

None of these things that seem to be pleasure though is pleasure by nature, or pleasure in its very essence. If they were, then you would feel more pleasant the more you had of them. But this is not the case, for as you get more and more of them they too start to give you pain. When this happens we can understand that they are not pleasure by nature. They are, in fact, suffering—they are what we call the "suffering of change."

The third type of suffering is known as the "pervasive suffering, which brings in more." The point here is that, regardless which one of the six kinds of birth we take, we take on a body which, by its very existence, comes complete with its own particular sufferings built in. From the first moment we take the various impure parts of our being on, from the first moment of their existence, they provide a basis for all the sufferings we have to look forward to in life: birth, aging, sickness, death, and all the rest. The impure parts of ourselves are like a big pot, sucking in the suffering of suffering, sucking in the suffering of change, in both this and our future lives. We must find a way to stop taking births, to stop taking on all the impure parts we're made of. Until we do, our existence will be like lying on a bed of upright needles—never a thing but pain.

40 What it Means to "Escape"

यहिरानायश्वराहिरायश्वराधिरायश्वराहिरायश्वरायश्वराहिरायश्वरायश्वराहिरायश्वरायश्वराहिरायश्वरायश्वरादिरायश्वरायश्वराहिरायश्वराहिरायश्वराहिरायश्वराहिरायश्वराहि

When we talk about "escaping cyclic life," it's not like running away from one country and managing to reach another. "Cyclic life" is precisely the continued existence of, the very fact of, the impure parts that make us up, the impure parts of our being that we've taken on. And when the continued existence of these parts is stopped at its root by the wisdom that realizes that nothing has a self-nature, this then is our "escape from cyclic life."

41 How to Know When You've Found Renunciation

याशुस्रायादेशावतुराने भ्रीसायदे स्ट्री

The third and final section of our explanation of renunciation describes the point at which we can say a person has succeeded in developing it; as the next verse of the root text reads,

विशासमानम्बा विश्वासम्बद्धाः विश्वासम्बद्धाः विश्वासम्बद्धाः विश्वासम्बद्धाः विश्वासम्बद्धाः विश्वासम्बद्धाः विश्वासम्बद्धाः विश्वासमानम्बद्धाः विश्वासमानम्बद्धासम

When you've meditated thus and feel not even A moment's wish for the goods things of cyclic life, And when you begin to think both night and day Of achieving freedom, you've found renunciation.

42 Your Pain, and Others'

As the famous verses of The Bodhisattva's Life say,

निवरमी देवर्गाया है। निवरमी देवर्गाया है। निवरमी देवर्गाया है। निवरमी देवर्गाया है।

বিষ্ণান্যুহ্মা

If people like these have never before Even in the dreams they dream Felt such a wish just for themselves, Then how can it come to them for others?⁴²

ने.लट.रट.कुंट.री.वबु्श्राय.हरा.दविट.रटा यावर कुंट.री.वबु्श्राय.कुंट.ही.लुरी

Thus we can say that renunciation and compassion are the same state of mind, just that one is developed by meditating on your own situation, and the other by meditating on others' situation.

NOTES TO READING ONE

- 1. *illustrious scholar Changkya Rolpay Dorje:* An excellent introduction to the history of the Changkya line has been written by E. Gene Smith and is included in his foreword to the collected works of the Tibetan sage Tuken Dharma Vajra.
- 2. *three lands*: That is, below the earth (where the serpent- beings and similar creatures live), upon the earth (where men are found), and in the sky above the earth (where deities make their home).
- 3. Geshe Puchungwa (1031-1106) and Chen-ngawa (1038-1103): Source of quotation not found. Geshe Puchungwa, full name Shunnu Gyeltsen, was one of the "three great brothers," direct disciples of Lord Drom Tonpa who helped him found and spread the Seer tradition of the early Tibetan Buddhist masters. Chen-ngawa, also known as Tsultrim Bar, was another of the three, as was the great Potowa.
- 4. five sciences: Classical grammar, logic, Buddhist theory, the fine arts, and medicine.
- 5. *five types of clairvoyance:* Supernormal powers of emanation, sight, hearing, perception of the past, and knowledge of others' thoughts.
- 6. *eight great attainments*: These are to gain "the sword," which allows one to travel anywhere; "the pill," which enables you to become invisible or assume any outer form; "the eye ointment," which helps you see minute or very distant objects; "swift feet," the ability to travel at high speeds; "taking essence," an ability to live off nothing but tiny bits of sustenance; "sky walk," the ability to fly; and "underground," the power to pass through solid ground like a fish through water.
- 7. Lord Atisha (982-1054): Full name Dipamkara Shri Jnyana, illustrious Indian sage who brought the teachings of the Steps of the path to Tibet. Author of Lamp on the Path, a prototype text of this genre.
- 8. Everybody's got some mystic being... Original source of quotation not found; it appears also in Pabongka Rinpoche's Liberation in Our Hands. The Seers of the Word were an eminent group of early Buddhist masters in Tibet whose lineage descended from Lord Atisha and his principal disciple, Lord Drom Tonpa. The school's name in Tibetan, "Kadampa," is explained as meaning that they were able to see the Word of the Buddha (ka) as personal instruction (dam) that applied immediately to their own practice.

9. I used the "Lamp on the Path": The full context of this quotation appears in Pabongka Rinpoche's Liberation in Our Hands; it reveals much of the sources of our text and restates its comprehensive nature. Lord Tsongkapa has just related the contents of a major section of his massive Greater Steps on the Path to Buddhahood to his divine mentor, Gentle Voice. And then,

Gentle Voice asked the Lord in a playful way,"Well now, is there anything in your work that isn't covered in those three principal paths I taught you?"

Lord Tsongkapa replied, "This is how I composed my work. I took the three principal paths which you, oh Holy One, taught me, and made them the very life of the path. I used the *Lamp on the Path* as my basic text, and supplemented it with many other advices of the Seers of the Word."

10. To reach liberation... Geshe Potowa (1031-1105), full name Rinchen Sel, was a master of the Seer tradition and one of the three great disciples of Lord Drom Tonpa. His *Metaphors* are an important predecessor to later works on the Steps. The quotation here is found on p. 14 of Hladri Gangpa's commentary to the *Blue Book*, a compilation of the great Potowa's teachings written out by his student Geshe Dolpa.

11. *source of good qualities:* Opening words of a supplication from a famed devotional text, the *Offering to Lamas*, by the venered Lobsang Chukyi Gyeltsen, first of the illustrious Panchen Lamas of Tibet. The three verses mentioned here read as follows:

Source of all good qualities, great sea of morality;

Brimming with a mass of jewels, teachings you have learned;

My lord, second Lord of the Able, wearing a saffron robe;

I seek you blessing, master who keeps the knowledge of the vows.

You who have all ten qualities that one must possess to be

Worthy to teach the path of all those who have gone to bliss;

Lord of the dharma, regent standing in for every Victor;

I seek your blessing, spiritual guide for the greater way.

All three gateways well restrained, wise, and patient, and straight;

Free of guile, deception; learned in the secrets and their texts;

Master at writing and edifying two tens of secret lore;

I seek your blessing, first among all of those who hold the diamond.

"Lord of the Able" refers to the present Buddha; the "ten qualities" are listed in the verse directly following.

- 12. *steady and wise*: A Buddhist monk is "steady" when he has kept his vows pure for at least ten years following his ordination. "Wise" refers to knowledge of a whole list of subjects in the study of ethics, such as understanding what is a moral downfall and what is not, or which misdeeds are more serious than others.
- 13. *the three trainings:* These are exceptional morality, exceptional concentration, and exceptional wisdom.
- 14. *Jewel of the Sutras:* A "sutra" is an open teaching of the Buddha. The verse is from a famed commentary taught to Master Asanga (c. 350 A.D.) by Loving One, the Future Buddha.
- 15. *eight great benefits*: The eight are described as coming close to Buddhahood, pleasing the Buddhas, overcoming evil influences, avoiding improper activities and thoughts, reaching high realizations, always meeting teachers, never falling to the lower realms, and attaining temporary and ultimate goals with ease.
- 16. A person who doesn't treat as a lama... The quotation is found on f. 161b of a commentary on the secret teaching of the Lord of Death composed by Ratnakara Shanti, also known as Shantipa. He was a famed master of the great Vikramashila Monastery in northeast India during the 10th Century, and taught Lord Atisha before his journey to Tibet.
- 17. Wheel of Time: Original source for the quotation not found; it appears in

Pabongka Rinpoche's great work on the Steps of the path, attributed only to the "Wheel of Time" with no mention of "root text." The root text for the secret teaching on the Wheel of Time was huge, twelve thousand verses long, and only abridgements have been included in the Tibetan canon.

- 18. *the greater way:* The Buddha gave various levels of teachings for disciples of different capacities; these are known as the "greater" and "lesser" ways.
- 19. Fifty Verses on Lamas: Traditional manual on how to behave towards one's spiritual guide, by the great Buddhist poet Ashvaghosha (c. 100 A.D.). The thirteen causes of a premature death are listed on f. 10a and explained by Lord Tsongkapa in his commentary as follows: an unbearable pain in the skull, injury by various powerful animals, different illnesses, demonic forces, plague, poison, authorities of the land, fire, snakes, water, spirits, thieves, and fierce demigods. After dying in one of these ways, the person descends directly to the hells.
- 20. Try to mix up all the systems... Source of quotation not found. Tuken Dharma Vajra, also known as Lobsang Chukyi Nyima (1737-1802), was the third of the Tuken line of spiritual masters and is famed for his work on comparative Buddhist school systems, as well as for biographies of saints such as Changkya Rolpay Dorje, said to be the former life of Pabongka Rinpoche himself (see the Foreword, and also his collected works.)
- 21. Even in some insignificant business... Quotation from f. 95a of his famed work on the three types of vows.
- 22. We call someone... From a classic text on the teachings of emptiness by Master Aryadeva (c. 200 A.D.).
- 23. six images for the instruction: For these and the three "problems of the pot."
- 24. Only in Tibet... Original source not found. The quotation also appears in the greater work on the Steps by Lord Tsongkapa.
- 25. No practitioner, a person who loves this life... Quotation from p. 436 of this classic "mental training" text of the venerable Drakpa Gyeltsen. The "four loves" are listed this way:

Love for this life, which makes one no practitioner.

Love for this world, which is no renunciation.

Love for one's selfish interests, which makes one no bodhisattva.

Grasping to a real "me," which is no correct view.

- 26. repeated three times, and loud: A full account of the incident is found in the Collected Sayings of the Seers, compiled by Tsunpa Chegom.
- 27. They go into seclusion... Source of this and the following quotation not found. Both appear in Pabongka Rinpoche's *Liberation in Our Hands*. "Droway Gonpo" is a name applied to a number of Tibetan sages; Pabongka Rinpoche adds the word "Gyer" before the name in one instance, but it is still not clear to whom the quotations are to be attributed.
- 28. *Oh worldly wise!* From the famed epistle of spiritual instruction sent by the great Buddhist philosopher Master Nagarjuna (c. 200 A.D.) to the Indian king Udayibhadra.
- 29. In the city of daily concerns... Original source of quotation not found; the lines appear as well in Pabongka Rinpoche's work on the Steps. It is a practice for Buddhist meditators to go to some frightening place, like a cemetery or a high cliff, to observe their heightened sense of a "self" and better understand it. Graveyards in Tibet and India were especially fear-inspiring because bodies were simply laid out rather than buried, and this would attract dangerous wild animals. The great Lingrepa, full name Padma Dorje (1128-1188), was a student of Droway Gonpo Pakmo Drupa and founded one of the orders of the Kagyu tradition of Tibetan Buddhism.
- 30. ten "ultimate riches": We see the roots of these ten riches in the instructions of Geshe Shawopa among the Collected Sayings of the Seers.
- 31. *And in the days when my teaching...* The Buddha's eloquent oath appears on f. 414. The "saffron robe" is that of a Buddhist monk.
- 32. Gyalchok Kelsang Gyatso (1708-1757) and Panchen Lobsang Yeshe (1663-1737): The former was the seventh of the Dalai Lamas, spiritual and temporal rulers of Tibet. He built the Norbulingka, magnificent summer palace of the Dalai Lamas, and sponsored a carving of the wooden printing-blocks for the entire collection of over 4,000 titles in the Tibetan Buddhist canon. The latter figure was the second of the Panchen Lamas, another exalted lineage of spiritual and temporal leaders centered at the great Tashi Lhunpo Monastery in south-central Tibet. He was an eminent practitioner and scholar of Buddhism while still one of the most powerful political figures of his time.
- 33. *If in your heart...* The quoted lines appear on p. 163 of the famous biography of Lord Milarepa by his disciple Rechung Dorje Drakpa (1083-1161).

34. No way my loved ones know... The lines are found in the section about Lord Milarepa (ff. 72-100) from the *Ocean of Songs of the Kagyu* by Karmapa Mikyu Dorje (1507-1554).

35. *This body of leisure...* Another quotation from the very brief version of Lord Tsongkapa's *Steps on the Path to Buddhahood*.

36. benefits that come from keeping your mind on death, etc.: In his masterwork Liberation in Our Hands, Pabongka Rinpoche lists six benefits of keeping your mind on death: your practice becomes really pure; it gains power; the thoughts help you start practice; they help you strive hard during your practice; they help bring your practice to a successful conclusion; and in the hour of death you go with satisfaction, for you know you have spent your life meaningfully.

The Rinpoche also lists six problems that come from not keeping your mind on death: you neglect your religious life, and spend all your days in thoughts of what to eat or wear-- this life's distractions; you consider death occasionally but always think it will come later, and delay your practice; or you do practice, but for the wrong reason--with hopes of reputation; you practice but with no enthusiasm, and drop it after a while; you get deeper into this life, your attitude gets worse, and life begins to hurt you; and at death you naturally feel intense regret, for you have wasted all your efforts on this present life.

The three principles, for how actually to keep your mind on death, have three reasons each, making a total of nine. First of all, death is certain: no power in the universe can stop death when it arrives; there is no way to add time to your life, you come closer to death every minute; even while you are alive, the free time available for your practice is extremely limited before you have to die.

The second principle is that there is absolutely no certainty when you will die. We are in a time and realm where the length of life is uncertain; we can be sure we will never have enough time to defeat all our enemies, raise up all our friends, and still complete our religious practice before we die. The things that can kill us are many; the things that keep us alive are few. And in general the body we have is fragile, weak: a small splinter in the hand can give us an infection that kills us--we are like bubbles, like candles in a windstorm.

The third principle is that, at the moment of death, nothing at all can help us but our spiritual practice. None of your money or things can help you. None of your friends or family can help you--they can be holding you tightly by the arms and legs, but still you will slip away alone. And not even your own body can help you--you have to give up your most cherished possession, your beloved body, along with everything else.

The three principles call for three resolves on our part. Knowing that we shall have to die, we must resolve to begin our practice. Knowing that we could die any time, we must quit our worldly work immediately and start our practice today. And finally, since nothing else can help us, we must devote ourselves to our practice only. A man who is hiking many miles doesn't fill up his pack with a lot of crap that he won't be needing.

The above points are paraphrased from the works on the Steps of the path by Lord Tsongkapa and Pabongka Rinpoche. For the last point mentioned in the text, the meditation on what it's like to die, we quote the Rinpoche directly (ff. 182b-183a):

They try all different kinds of treatments and holy rituals but your condition gets worse and worse. The doctors start lying to you. Your friends and relatives say all sorts of cheery things to your face, but behind your back they start wrapping up your affairs, because everyone can see you're going to die.

Your body starts to lose its familiar warmth. It's hard to breathe. The nostrils collapse. The lips curl back. The color starts to drain from your face. All sorts of repulsive signs begin to show, inside and outside of you.

You think of all the wrong things you did in your life, and wish so badly you had never done them. You can't quite be sure if you ever really got rid of them all when you confessed; or that you really did any true good deed.

Then comes the final pain, the unspeakable searing pain that comes with death. The basic building blocks of your body begin their domino collapse, you are blinded by catastrophic images, hallucinations of pure terror crowd into your mind, and carry you away, and the whole world you have been living blinks out.

People take your corpse and wrap it up in a sheet and lay it in some corner. They hang up a curtain to hide it. Somebody lights up a smudgy little candle and leaves it there. If you're one of those reincarnated lamas, they dress you up in you fancy ritual robes and try to make you look good.

Right now we are all running around trying to arrange ourselves a nice house, soft clothes, cozy chairs. But you know the custom here in Tibet--when you die they'll tie your arms and legs up against your chest with a leather strap, carry the body far from town, and throw it naked out on the rocks.

Right now we all go home and try to cook ourselves up some delectable dish--but there will come a day when you stand there praying for a little taste of those cakes they offer the spirits of the dead. Right now we have the big name--they call us Doctor Professor, or Respected Sir, or Your Reverence. But there will come a day when they look at your body and call you nothing but "that stinking corpse." There will come a day when the title they put in front of your name is "the late," or "that guy they used to call..."

So now when you respected lamas out there in the audience look at your ritual robes, let it come into your thoughts that these are the robes they will dress your remains in after you have expired. And all the rest of us, when we look at our bedsheets before we go to sleep, should try to remember that these are what they will wrap our stinking corpse in when we die. As Milarepa said,

That frightful corpse they talk about Is the very body you wear, meditator.

He means look at your own body now, and always see the future corpse.

37. *the realms:* Buddhism teaches that there are three realms of existence. We live in the "desire" realm, so called because our principal interests are food and sex. Higher up is the "form" realm, where beings live in a state of meditation and have beautiful forms. Even higher is the "formless" realm, where beings are free of gross suffering and have only mental bodies.

38. *Non-virtue brings all sufferings...* Quotation from f. 116b of the Master's *Jewel Rosary*.

39. the three rare jewels: So named because they are supremely valuable and infrequently found--the Buddha, defined as the ultimate shelter, a being who has completed the highest possible good for himself and others; the Dharma, realizations or the end of undesirable qualities within a person's mind; and the Sangha, or any being who has perceived the true nature of reality directly.

40. *King Mefeed:* A legendary king of yore who was said to have been born spontaneously; he was named from the fact that the concubines of his father competed to breast-feed the miraculous child and thereby become the Queen Mother. His story is mentioned in many works; see Pabongka Rinpoche's *Liberation* (f. 252a), as well as the list in Prof. Edgerton's *Dictionary* under the king's Sanskrit name, Mandhata.

- 41. *Keep your wants few...* The dictum is expounded upon by the great Buddhist philosopher Vasubandhu (c. 300 A.D.) in the sixth chapter of his classic *Treasure of Wisdom*.
- 42. *If people like these...* From the eloquent manual for bodhisattvas by the Buddhist poet-philosopher Shantideva (695- 743 A.D.).

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Reading Two: The Principal Teachings of Buddhism, Part Two

The following selections are taken from The Three Principal Paths (Lam-gtzo rnam-gsum), written by the incomparable Tibetan master Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419). The commentary is by Pabongka Rinpoche (1878-1941), who was a teacher of our root Lama, Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin, and also a teacher of the teacher of His Holiness the Dalai Lama.

43 Why You Need the Wish for Enlightenment

We have now reached the second of the four parts in the actual body of the text. This is an explanation of the wish to achieve enlightenment for the sake of every living being. This explanation itself will include three sections: why you need the wish for enlightenment, how to go about developing this wish, and how to know when you've finally developed it. The next verse of the root text tells us why we need this great wish:

१देशत्वतुरादेश्यराद्वयाक्षेत्रश्रीत्यीश १वेदार्यक्षित्रः विद्वत्यः स्थान्याः स्थान्यः स्थान्याः स्थान्यः स्थानः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्

বিষ্ণান্যমানস্থ্রাদী

Renunciation though can never bring
The total bliss of matchless Buddhahood
Unless it's bound by the purest wish; and so,
The wise seek the high wish for enlightenment.

त्रश्रा । मैं.जम.बमम.२२.मिवेश.तयु.मैं.भु.पम्.से। ट्रम.ववैट.वु.सेभ.२८.जटर.ल्ट. रे.से.पेयु.ट्रम.ववैट.म्.चमम.तय्राम.रेपमा.र्या.लूर.ग्रीटा। रेग्ना.याट.विम.बर.तयु.

You may be able to gain some fierce feelings of renunciation as we described it above; any good deeds you do under their influence though can only bring you an ordinary nirvana—they alone can never serve to bring you to omniscient enlightenment. We can see this from the fact that even practicioners of lower paths—people we call "listeners" and "self-made victors"—can possess true renunciation.⁴³

For full enlightenment then a person needs to develop within his mind all three of the principal paths—and more specifically, he must have gained the second path: the wish to achieve enlightenment for every living being. You may possess extra-sensory powers, you may be able to perform miracles, you may have any number of fantastic qualities—but unless you have this precious jewel in your heart, you will never enter that select group of people who practice the greater way. Without this highest wish, none of your qualities will ever bring you total bliss—none of them, none of them at all, will bring you Buddhahood: the ability to free each and every living being from all the troubles of cyclic life, and from those of a lower escape from cyclic life.⁴⁴

44 Benefits of the Wish for Enlightenment

दर्म्।

दर्म्।

दर्म्।

दर्म्।

दर्माः

दर्मा

If you do gain this great wish, you become a person who truly deserves to have the entire world—with all its different kinds of beings up to humans and gods—bow down at your feet, just as holy books like *The Bodhisattva's Life*, and *Entering the Middle Way*, and *The Rare Stack* describe it.⁴⁵ You find yourself in a different class of being, and then you completely outshine listeners and self-made victors—practitioners of the lower paths. Every virtuous act you do, even down to throwing a scrap of food to some wild bird, becomes a practice of the greater way; becomes a cause for your future Buddhahood; becomes the way of life of a bodhisattva.

If a person possesses this holy wish to achieve enlightenment for the sake of every living being, then all the countless Buddhas in all the ten directions of space look upon him as their son. And all the great bodhisattvas look upon him as their brother.

But that's not all; the whole question of whether you have reached the greater way, and the whole question of whether you will be able to achieve Buddhahood in this one short life, depend on whether you have truly gained this wish. So if you want enlightenment, our Lama concluded, you must train your thoughts in the wish.

45 How to Develop the Wish for Enlightenment

|भःरेग्।शुक्:पंदे:श्रूग्।केक्:गुक्:वश्वःश्वः |पर्त्वाःदश्वःश्व्याशःग्रीःदक्षेटःपःदशःभ्वःशःश्वःश्वः |पर्वाःदश्वःश्व्याशःग्रीःदक्षेटःपःदशःश्वःश्वःश्वः। |भःरेग्।शुक्:पदेःश्वाशःग्रीःदक्षेत्रःग्रीशःवश्वःशः।

रिट्र क्रिंग्राचन्नम् अस्त्रम् स्त्रम् स्त्रम्त्रम् स्त्रम्

বিশ্বাম্বর

They're swept along on four fierce river currents, Chained up tight in past deeds, hard to undo, Stuffed in a steel cage of grasping "self," Smothered in the pitch-black ignorance.

In a limitless round they're born, and in their births

Are tortured by three sufferings without a break;

Think how your mothers feel, think of what's happening

To them: try to develop this highest wish.

46 The Virtue of the Wish

१२.४.५.यश्रःक्षेया.तर.वर्धेर।
१४श्रःयाता.ध्रेयात्रःश्र्रःयश्रःयारःहो।
१२.ता.याता.ध्रेःयाच्याश्रःश्रङ्गःयारःहो।
१२.४.च्यःश्रश्रशःयाच्याश्रःश्रह्णःयारः।
१२.४.५.यश्रःव्यात्रःश्रह्णःयारः

The Sutra that Viradatta Requested says as well,

Were the merit of the wish for enlightenment To take on some kind of physical form It would fill the reaches of space itself And then spill over farther still.⁴⁶

47 The Actual Steps

Here in the teachings of the Buddha there are two methods given for training one's mind in this precious jewel, the wish for enlightenment. The first is known as the "seven-part, cause-and-effect instruction." The second we call "exchanging self and others." No matter which of the two you use to train your mind, you can definitely gain the wish for enlightenment. The way to train oneself in the wish, the way which is complete and which never errs, the way unmatched by any other here upon this earth, is the instruction of the Steps of the path to Buddhahood, the very essence of all the teachings of our gentle protector, the great Tsongkapa. Thus you should train your mind in the wish for enlightenment by using this very instruction.

याश्रमान्ने प्यत्याम् स्थान्य स्थान्य

वर्षश्चिर्दा श्रुटाहे के दावे की लोग

Here we'll give just a brief summary of how one trains himself in the wish to achieve enlightenment for every living being. The start-off is to practice feelings of neutrality towards all beings; after that, one begins meditation on each of the steps from "mother recognition" on up. The first three steps are to recognize all beings as one's mothers, to feel gratitude for their kindness, and to wish to repay that kindness. These three act as a cause for what we call "beautiful" loving-kindness. This type of loving-kindness is itself the fourth step; it is both an effect brought about by the first three, and a cause for the fifth: great compassion.

The relative intensity of one's wish for enlightenment depends on the intensity of one's feeling of great compassion. If you find it difficult to develop compassion, you can practice the meditation known as "Lama Loving-Gaze" to help you gain it. If you make good efforts to perform this meditation and the proper supplications, as well as the practice where you visualize that your mind and that of Loving-Gaze are mixed inseparably, then you can gain a blessing for it.⁴⁷ This is a very special personal instruction for developing great compassion. There were, our Lama explained, a number of other profound points in this regard—but he would not detail them in a public gathering.

क्रीट. मु. क्रुम् र. मु. मा. क्रिम् प्रत्या विष्यः देवा विष्यः प्रति विषयः प्रति विष्यः प्रति विषयः प्रति विषयः

Once you develop great compassion, then you can develop the extraordinary form of personal responsibility, where you take upon yourself the load of working for others' benefit. And the wish to achieve enlightenment for every living being comes from this.

श्रिश्चा श्रुंश्चा वित्रात्त्र स्त्रीत्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्रीत्त स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्र स्त्रीत्त्र स्त्र स्

The meditation on neutrality goes like this. First you put your thoughts in an even state, free of feelings of like and dislike, by thinking about someone who is for you a neutral figure: neither your enemy nor your friend. Then you imagine that two people are sitting before you: one of your best-loved friends, and one of your ugliest enemies. Next you think very carefully about how the friend has, in many of your previous lives, taken birth as your enemy and hurt you. You think too about how the enemy has, in so many of your past lives, taken birth as your friend and helped you. This puts your mind in the even state, free of feelings of like and dislike.

प्रकार्यक्षा इति का श्री का त्या के स्वर्धा के स्वर्ध के स्वर्य के स्वर्ध के स्वर्ध के स्वर्ध के स्वर्य के स्वर्य के स्वर

You go on then to think about how all living beings are equal in that, from his own point of view, each one of them wants to be happy. They are equal too in not wanting pain. And they are equal in that every one has acted as both my enemy and my friend, many many times. So who am I supposed to like? And who am I supposed to dislike? You have to keep on practicing this way until, one day, you gain neutral feelings towards all sentient beings, as vast in extent as space itself.

The next step is the meditation where you recognize that every living being is your mother. Gaining this recognition is much easier if you apply the line of reasoning mentioned in the *Commentary on Valid Perception* for demonstrating the infinite regression of one's awareness. We'll present this reasoning here, in brief.⁴⁸

Your awareness of today is a mental continuation of the awareness you had yesterday. This year's awareness is a mental continuation of the awareness you had the year before. Just so, your awareness over this entire life is a mental continuation of the awareness you had in your former life. The awareness you had in your former life was, in turn, a mental continuation of the awareness you had in the life before that. You can continue back in a regression like this and absolutely never reach some point where you can say, "Prior to this, I had no awareness." This then proves the infinite regression of one's awareness.

व्यवश्चर्या विक्रियिक्यायिक्या विक्रिया विक्रिय विक्रिया विक्रिय विक्रिया विक्रिय विक्रिय विक्रिय विक्रिय विक्रिय विक्रिय विक्रिय विक्रिय

My own circle of life then must also be beginningless, and the births I have taken as well can have no starting point. There exists no place where I have never taken birth. I have taken birth in every single place, countless times. There exists no creature whose body I have not worn. I have worn every kind of body, countless times. Just the lives I have taken as a dog are themselves beyond any number to count. And the same is true for every living being.

देश'व'श्रेश्रश'ठव'वद्देश'रट'वी'श'श'वुश'वु'व'विवा'गुट'शेद। श्रेश्रश'ठव'रे' रेश'गुट'रट'वी'श'व्यटश'शेद'य'रे'वुश'य'व'श्वा'प्येद। शे'विवा'युवे'हेव'व्य' रट'वी'श'वुश'यवट'व्यटश'ग्रीश'शे'र्केद'यश

Therefore there exists no being who has never been my mother. Absolutely every single one of them has been my mother a countless number of times. Even the number of times that each has been my mother in just my births as a human is past all counting too.

देख्र-श्रेम्याः विद्याः त्वाराः श्रेष्ट्रियः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्व

Do this meditation over and over until you gain a deepfelt certainty that each and every living being has been your mother, over and over, countless times.

Developing a sense of gratitude is the next step, and you can start by taking your mother in this present life. She began her hardships for me while I was still in her womb, gladly taking it upon herself to avoid anything she felt might hurt me—even down to the food she ate—treating herself with care, as though she were sick. For nine months and ten days she carried me in her womb, looking at her own body as though it belonged to someone else, someone very ill, and hesitating even to take big steps.

क्षेत्रः भ्रेश्वाचित्रः स्वतः स्वतः

As she gave me birth, my mother was torn with violent suffering, excruciating pain, and yet still felt an overwhelming joy, as though she had discovered some precious gem that would grant her any wish.

Right then I knew absolutely nothing more than to cry and wave my arms around somehow. I was totally helpless. Totally stupid. Incapacitated. Nothing more than some baby chick with a red-rubber beak still yet to harden. But she swayed me on her fingertips, and pressed me to her body's warmth, and greeted me with a smile of love.

पर्येत। भदुःश्रीशःश्यान्नापन्नःधि। योर्ट्रायारःवेन्नाःभान्यस्ति। स्वात्यारःवेनः रयायःयदुःश्रयान्यायान्यस्त्रा नैयन्नापन्नःदीना श्रायाद्रःयःपयाःतन्नःदीना द्रः

With joyful eyes she gazed on me, and wiped the snot from my face with her lips, and cleaned my filthy shit with her hands. Sometimes she chewed my food for me, and fed me things like milky porridge straight from her mouth to mine. She did her best to protect me from any hurt. She did her best to get me any good.

स्त्र म्या स्त्री स्वर्ग स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्ग स्वर्ग स्वर्ग स्वर्ग स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर

In those days I had to look to her for everything; good or bad, happy or sad, all the hope I could have lay in one person: mother. But for her kindness, I wouldn't have lasted an hour; they could have set me out in the open right then and some birds or a dog would have come and made a meal of me—I'd have no hope of coming out alive. Every single day she protected me from harms that could have taken my life, no less than a hundred times. Such was her kindness.

And while I was growing up she gathered together whatever I needed, avoiding no bad deed, and no suffering, and caring nothing for what other people might say of her. All the money and things she had she handed over to me, hesitating to use anything for herself.

यश्चर्यात्रं क्षात्ते द्वात् भ्रायायाः प्रदेश्यात्रः यात्र्यायाः यात्रः यात्यः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः

For those of us who are fortunate enough to be practicing the monastic life, it was mother who put forth all the necessary expenses, giving without reservation, to arrange our admission into the monastery. And from that time on she supported us here, from whatever resources she had. Thus the kindness she has shown us is truly without measure.

र्यश्रस्थायाः स्ट्रिंग् द्वेत्रः स्ट्रित् क्षेत्रः याः स्टर्मः स्ट्रित् स्वर्धः स्ट्रित् स्वर्धः स्ट्रित् स्वर् स्वर्थः स्ट्रित् स्वर्थः द्वेत्रः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्टर्भः स्टर्मः स्टर्भः स्टर्मः स्ट

क्र्यात्मेन हो।

यदेवः श्रांत्राचे व्यास्त्राचे व्यास्त्

And this is not the only life in which my present mother has given this kindness to me. She has showered me with this kindness, great kindness, over and over, countless times, in my many lives before. And she is not the only one; every single living being has been my mother in my past lives, and during those lives cared for me no less than my present mother does—it is only my transitions from death to birth that prevent me from recognizing all these mothers now.

यशिरमा यश्चर्यायाम्बर्धः द्वार्यो स्त्रियः स्त्रीमान्यः प्रमुद्धः स्वर्षः स्वर्षः स्वर्षः स्वर्षः स्वर्षः स्वर्षः स्वर विश्वर्षः स्वर्षः स्वर

Look now, concluded our Lama, at the way any common animal—a dog or bird, even the tiny sparrow—shows affection for its young, and cares for it well. From watching this we can imagine what kindness we were given too.

द्रिम्यार्चे प्राप्ते प्राप्त

The next step in gaining the wish for enlightenment is to develop a wish to repay this great kindness. So every living being is my mother, and has given me her loving care over and over endlessly, for time with no beginning. And we know from what was described above that they are being swept along by four great currents, out to sea—to the vast expanse of the ocean of cyclic life. They are tormented, without a break, by the three types of suffering, and all the other pains. Their situation is desperate.

And here am I, their child. Right now I have a chance to rescue them from this ocean of cyclic life. Suppose I simply sit and bide my time, and give no thought to them. This is the lowest a person could stoop—base and absolutely shameless.

प्रथा

प

Right now I could give them things that they would be happy to get—food, or clothes, or beds to sleep on, whatever. But these are only some temporary happiness within the circle of life. The very highest way of repaying their kindness would be to put them into the state of ultimate happiness. So let me decide within myself that every living being must come to have every happiness. And every one should be freed as well from every form of pain.

श्रास्त्र श्रेश्रश्चा वर्षाः वर्षाः

Right now it's absurd to say that these beings have any kind of pure happiness—they don't even have any of the impure kinds. Every single thing they think is happiness is, in its essence, nothing more than pain. They want wantables but don't want to know about doing the good deeds that bring happiness. They want no unwantables but don't want to know about giving up the bad deeds that bring pain. They act ass backwards: they do what they shouldn't and don't what they should. And so my dear aged mothers, these living beings, are made to suffer.

वियान्त वियान्त क्ष्मान्त न्याने न्य

"How good it would be if they could all find every happiness, and every cause of happiness. I wish they could. I'll see that they do."

"How good it would be if they could all be free of every pain, and every cause of pain. I wish they could. I'll see that they do."

Let these two trains of thought run through your mind; meditate on them over and over again. Then you will come to feel the very strongest loving-kindness and compassion.

वयकारीः यविषः ग्रीकारीकार्थः लाटः। स्टःजारुषः ग्रीकार्यभीटकाराषुः रुषः ज्यकारीः यविषः ग्रीकार्थः व्यक्षः ग्रीकार्यः ग्रीकारं ग्रीक

यवः विरादे रूरा केरायाययायाय विदार्।

Some people might come up with the idea that "Why should I take upon myself this great load, of every living being? There are plenty of Buddhas and bodhisattvas around to guide them on their way." This kind of thought though is absolutely improper. It's base. It's shameless. It's as if your mother in this life was hungry, and parched, and you expected someone else's child to go and give her food and drink. But it's you for whom she has cared, and the responsibility of paying her back has fallen only to you.

It's the same with all these living beings, who for beginningless time have served as my mother so many times, and who in each of these times cared for me in every way with the kindness of this present mother. Returning their kindness is no business of anyone else at all, not for some Buddha or bodhisattva—it is my responsibility, and only mine.

यश्रश्रायः विष्याः त्र्वाः त्रित्रः त्रावः त्रावः त्रावः त्रावः विष्यः त्रावः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विष्यः विषयः वि

So someone is going to do it—to make sure every sentient being has every happiness, and never a single pain. It is going to be myself; I'll rely on no one else. I by myself will see to it that every single being comes to have every single happiness. And I by myself will see to it that every single being gets free of every single pain. I will by myself put them into the state of the Lama, the state of Buddhahood. Meditate strongly on these thoughts; they are the step we call the "extraordinary form of personal responsibility."

हो-तिदु-ह्य-दी-प-रर्थनात्रा। ह्य-पश्चित्र-श्

I may be able to develop this noble intention, but the fact is that I'm completely incapable of leading a single being to Buddhahood—much less every one of them. Who then has the capacity? This power is had by a fully enlightened Buddha—only by him, and by no one else at all. If I can reach the same state, I will by definition have brought both mine and others' benefit to its perfection. And then every single ray of light that emanates from me, whether it be an action of my body, or my speech, or my thoughts, will have the power to accomplish the ends of countless sentient beings.

देशक् श्रेश्वराध्यक्षत्र व्यवस्त स्त्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्

And so, for the sake of every living being, I will do anything I can to achieve this one great goal—the state of a Buddha—with every speed. Think this way to yourself, and do anything you can to develop the genuine wish to reach enlightenment for every living being.

48 Authentic Practice

त्रमा यहरक्तामुःस्रम्भायोःस्रम्भायादःयःयहर्षेत्र । यहरस्रम्भावदेःयहर्षेत्र । यहरस्रम्भावदेः । यहर्षेत्रः

नमामी सम्मान सम्मान

Nowadays when you go up to someone and ask him what his very most important practice is, he'll tell you he's meditating on one of those powerful tutelary deities. You don't meet people who say their chief practice is meditating on the wish to achieve enlightenment for every living being. Much less, for in fact it's quite difficult to find anyone who even realizes that he should make this wish his centermost practice.

च्र-त्र-दे-लट-र्याद-र्याद-र्याद्वी । व्राप्त-विकामी स्वान-त्र्याची । व्यान-विकामी स्वान-त्र्याची । व्यान-विकामी स्वान-त्र्याची । व्यान-विकामी स्वान-त्र्याची । व्यान-विकामी स्वान-त्र्याची । व्यान-त्र्याची । व्यान-त्याची । व्यान-त्र्याची । व्यान-त्

We see people making all different sorts of things their central practice: the Elimination Ritual for getting rid of bad spirits, the Golden Tea offering, the Spell for Ending Evil Litigation, the ritual they call Stopping All Harms, the Sheep Spell, the Horse Spell, the Money Spell, the ritual for No More Problems, the ritual for Stopping Bad Luck at the End of the Twelve-Year Cycle, the ritual for Preventing the Praise that Others Give You from Turning to a Curse, and on and on. These are all so bad that they make it look pretty good when a person can say he's making a central practice out of anything at all associated with some authentic tutelary deity.⁴⁹

We also see a number of works gaining some popularity in different localities that seem to be just anything somebody could think up: the String of Jewels for those Bound by Blood, the Blade of Gold for Confessing Sins, the so-called "Dog Sutra," the so-called "Wolf Sutra," the so-called

"Bear Sutra," the so-called "Snake Sutra," and all the rest. We find though absolutely no legitimate origin for any of these works.

याता. हे. क्ष्रेया. यात्रीय क्षर्यं यात्रीय क्षर्यं क्षर्यं क्षर्यं विष्यं यात्रीय विषयं विषयं

If you really do need a text to use for confessing your bad deeds, you should stop wasting your time with fake scriptures and meaningless efforts like these. The Victors have, in all their open and secret teachings, given us more than enough appropriate works: the *Three Heaps Sutra*, the *Sublime Medicine Sutra*, the *Sutra of the Great Freedom*, the *Sutra of the Eon of Fortune*, and others of the like.⁵⁰ It is texts like these, our Lama told us, authoritative texts with a legitimate origin, that we must use for our study and recitations.

49 The Real Wish

Now there are also some people around who think to themselves, "But I do have the wish for enlightenment. After all, at the beginning of all my devotions I recite the 'Buddha-Dharma-Sangha' prayer⁵¹ and think about achieving Buddhahood so I could help every living being." This though is just expressing a hope that you gain the wish for enlightenment—it's just making a prayer about the wish. It's not the actual wish itself. If it were, then developing the wish to achieve Buddhahood would have to be the very easiest of all the many practices of virtue we are supposedly trying to do. And so, concluded our Lama, we must rather gain this true wish by putting our minds through the training described above—one by one through each of the steps, in order.

50

How to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिल्स to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlightenment

मिलस to Know When You've Found the Wish for Enlighten t

This brings us to the third and final section in our explanation of the wish for enlightenment: how to know when you've finally developed it. This point is covered with great detail in various works, including both the more extensive and the briefer presentations on the Steps of the path to enlightenment, which at this point employ material from the first of the *Stages of Meditation*.⁵² To put it briefly, suppose a mother has watched her beloved child slip down into a pit of red-hot coals. The fire is searing his body. She cannot stand to see it go on for a single second. She throws herself forward to pull the child out.

त्तं भ्रम्भेश्वर्त्त्वर्त्त्रम् भ्रम्भः भ्रमः भ्रम्भः भ्रम्

All the living creatures of the universe, all our dear mothers, are burning in the same way, in the unbearable pain of the three lower realms, and the circle of life in general. When we cannot stand to see it go on for a single second more, when we finally feel the true wish to reach total enlightenment, immediately, for the sake of every living being, well then—our Lama concluded—you can say you have gained the wish for enlightenment.

51 Why You Need Correct View

म् अक्ष्यः प्राप्तः प्राप्तिः याय्यः स्राप्तः याय्यः यात्रः यात्यः यात्रः यात्

We have now reached the third of the four parts of the body of the text: the explanation of correct view. Here there are five sections; the first, which explains why you need to meditate on correct view, is expressed in the next verse of the root text:

विषयः त्या श्राहित्य । विषयः प्रत्या श्री प्रत्या श्री प्रत्य विषयः प्रत्य । विषयः विषयः । विषयः । विषयः प्रत्य । विषयः प्रत्य । विषयः प्रत्य । विषयः । विषयः प्रत्य । विषयः । विष

You may master renunciation and the wish, But unless you have the wisdom perceiving reality You cannot cut the root of cyclic life. Make efforts in ways then to perceive interdependence.

देश्यदः विद्यान्ति । देशः विद्युदः विदः श्रेष्यः श्रेष्यः विद्याः विद

यार्डेर'यर'शे'तुरा

What the verse is saying is this: "Unless you have that very profound correct view about suchness—unless you have the wisdom that perceives reality, or ultimate truth—you can strive to perfect renunciation and the wish for enlightenment (along with all the other 'method' practices) as much as you please; but you cannot cut the root of cyclic life, grasping to a 'self,' since these practices alone do not act as a direct antidote for your grasping."

52 Meditation Must Include Emptiness

यन्याः भेनः हेत्याश्चायः विदः हो। सर्ने हिन्दे त्याः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्व यस्याः स्वाः स यस्याः स्वाः स

Certain non-Buddhist sages can put themselves into a deep, single-pointed state of meditation—and they attain all eight levels of concentration and formlessness.⁵³ But they lack the view with which you realize no self exists, and fail therefore even to reduce their harmful emotions slightly—much less to eliminate them. As the sutra called *King of Concentration* says,

विध्याहेत्रन्याते हिर्व्यहेत् क्षेत्राचेत् ग्रुरा दिश्व ते प्यत्याहु वर्ष्ण्य विश्व विध्या शे चेत्। दिश्व ते क्षेत्र केंद्र शक्षेत्र लेट्ट स्याव विया है। विश्व हेंद्र ग्रीश ते हिट वर्षेत्र वर्षेत्र पक्षेत्र श्राप्त विद्या

विषामासुरसामारी

The worldly meditate on concentration But it doesn't destroy their concept of a self. This feeds their unhealthy thoughts, stirs them up, And ends like the meditation of Udraka.⁵⁴

नेते स्रुमः विक्राम्य प्रत्या विक्राम्य प्रत्या विक्रम्य प्रत्य स्रुम्य प्रत्य स्रुम्य विक्रम्य विक्र

Our tendency to grasp to some "self" is the very root of our circling life. To cut this root we absolutely must gain the view that perceives that no such self exists. As the same work says,

विः यविष्यार्थः स्त्राध्याः स्त्रीः स

Suppose you analyze, see the no-self of things, And suppose you meditate on what you've seen; It leads you to the result of gaining nirvana— Nothing else can lead you to this peace.

53 We Must Use the Teaching of Nagarjuna

|र्स्चिर्न्यम्भुत्यः स्वाय्यः स्वायः स्वयः स्वयः

There's no way to peace for people who've stepped from the path

Of the system taught by the Master Nagarjuna. They've lost the truths, the conventional and the real;

Those who've lost the truths cannot be free.⁵⁵

तःलुश् । देश.य. चयः सुदुः सः य. य. देश स्र्रे स्याश्चा स्रेशः गाः या स्रेरः स्याशः स्रोरः

The matchless Lord Atisha has said as well:

Nagarjuna's student was Chandrakirti; The instructions handed down from them Bring you to see reality, truth.⁵⁶

You can see then that this profound viewpoint on things is indispensable for both the open and the secret teachings.

54 The Self that Does Not Exist

Broadly speaking, there were four great schools of Buddhist thought that came out of India—the "land of the realized." Members of the Vatsiputriya section of the "Detailist" school⁵⁷ assert that what we seek to see does not exist is any self which is unchanging, and singular, and independent. Other members of the Detailist school, as well as those of the "Scripturalist" school,⁵⁸ teach that what we seek to deny is something that can stand on its own, something which exists in a substantial way.

The "Mind-Only" school⁵⁹ says that what we come to realize does not exist is any case where the subject that holds an object and the object which it holds are made from any different "substance."⁶⁰ What we call the "Independent," one part of the Middle Way school,⁶¹ believes that what we come to refute is any object that exists in some unique way of its own, rather than being established as an existent thing simply by virtue of its having appeared to an unaffected awareness.⁶²

ख्यावशुरावद्यात्री ह्र्यायद्यायरायरायर्गाद्याः र्वत्राद्याः द्वात्राय्याः स्वराय्याः स्वराय्याः स्वराय्याः स्व इत्रायुवायाः ने प्रायाः स्वर्त्तायाः स्वरायद्याः स्वरायः स्वरायः स्वरायः स्वरायः स्वरायः स्वरायः स्वरायः स्वरा

The "Implication" section of the Middle Way school,⁶³ finally, teaches that what we come to see has no existence is an object which exists from its own side, rather than simply existing through a concept supplied from our side.

55 What "Interdependence" Really Means

स्वायायह्याः स्वायायह्याः स्वायायायाः स्वायायाः स्वायायाः स्वायायाः स्वायायाः स्वायायाः स्वायायाः स्वायायाः स्व

Different schools have different ways of explaining "interdependence." The "Functionalist" group⁶⁴ says that when something is "interdependent," it's because it has come about through various causes and conditions. This doesn't allow them to establish interdependence for those objects which are unchanging, and have no causes.

हेन त्रचेल मुंद्रेन दुलहें न स्था हुत हुत स्वापा स्ट मी के त्र से दिन से स्वापा होता ।

The "Independent" group has a way of describing interdependence that's a little bit better. They say that something is interdependent whenever it exists in dependence upon its parts. They then can establish interdependence with both changing and unchanging objects: for those with causes and without.

र्यः श्वात्त्र्यात्त्र्यं व्यात्त्र्यं वर्ष्ट्याः चितः त्रेत्रः त्रात्त्रः व्यात्त्रः व्यात्त्रः व्यात्त्रः व्य चितः ह्रेत्रात्तः व्यात्त्रः व्यात्त्रेश्वः व्यात्ते व्यात्त्रः व्यात्तः व्यात्त्रः व्यात्त्रः व्यात्त्रः व्यात्त्रः व्यात्त्रः व्यात्तः व्यात्तः व्यात्तः व्यात्तः व्यात्तः व्यात्तः व्यात्तः व्यात्यः व्यात्तः व्यात्त

The way the last group, the one we call "Implication," decides that something is interdependent is subtler than all the rest. They say that something is interdependent when we have taken two things—a reasonable basis to be given a name and a reasonable idea to give it a name—and come out with an object we gave a name.

56 The Emptiness of "Me"

क्ष्र-च्युच-ध-भेत्।

देश-व्युच-ध-भेत्।

देश-व्युच-ध-व्युच-ध-भेत्।

देश-व्युच-ध-व्यु

Now every existent object is a product of something to be given a name and something else to give it a name. There is not a single atom of anything in the universe which does not rely on this process—there is nothing which exists from its own side. I too then am a product: someone has taken two things together, my body and my mind, and called it "me." I am nothing more than that. There is no "me" which exists from its own side; there is no "me" which does not rely on someone taking my body and mind together and granting it the name. Neither in fact do my body or my mind themselves exist from their own sides.

यदीःयाः ह्याश्चार्याद्वात् यार्थेरः यद्वश्यात्ते श्वात्वात् । यद्वेदः यद्वेदः यद्वेदः व्यक्तिः यद्वेदः यद्वेदः व्यक्तिः यद्वेदः यद्वेदः व्यक्तिः यद्वेदः यद्वेदः व्यक्तिः यद्वेदः यदः यद्वेदः यद्वेदः यद्वेदः यद्वेदः यद्वेदः यद्वेदः यद्वेदः यद्वेदः

We can express all this in the classical form of a logical statement:

Consider all objects, those of the cycle and those beyond it.

They have none of the true and solid existence that I hold them to have; they cannot exist on their own,

Because they are interdependent.

दे.सट.ह्रंश.वंश.चीय.ब्रयाचिष.ता.यहेष.वंश.वंग्रीय.यवश.यविष.ता.यहेष.वंश.वंग्रीट.

What we mean here by "interdependence" is that all objects are interrelated with others on which they depend; that is, they occur through dependence on other objects. This is why there is absolutely no way they can exist on their own.

57 Names and Projections

यान्याश्वाले क्रियाश्वात् न्तुः सर्दन्तुः सर्दन्तुः स्त्रीत् स्त्रीः स्त्रीः

We can take for example the way we appoint the chanting master of a monastery, or the governor of some district, or any similar figure. First there must be a reasonable basis to be called "chanting master": there must be a person who is worthy of being the chanting master. Then there must be someone like the abbot of the monastery who says, "He is now the chanting master." Until the abbot does so, until the abbot applies the name and the

concept to this person, he cannot be the chanting master—even though he may have all the qualities you need to be named "chanting master."

श्रीटा व्यास्थायम् अध्याप्तम् याप्तम् प्रतास्थायम् प्रतास्थायम् विवार्थित् व्यास्य अधिकार्यस्य अधिकार्यस्य विवार्थित् व्यास्य अधिकार्यस्य विवार्थित् विवार्ये विवार्थित् विवार्थित् विवार्ये विवार्ये

If this were not the case, and if the person were somehow the chanting master from the beginning, all on his own without anyone putting the name or idea on him, then he would have to have been the chanting master all along—from the time he lay in his mother's womb. And when he was born, the moment he came out of her womb, people then should have said, "Here comes the chanting master!"

देश्वरःश्वेश्वरः त्र्यः स्वरः मुक्तः व्यव्याः विद्याः विद्य

But people didn't say it, because getting to be the chanting master depends on many other factors. We don't call someone "chanting master" until there is a basis to give the name—a monk who is fit to be chanting master, and until a person qualified to give him the name hangs it on him, and says "This is the chanting master." Neither until this time does the person himself think "I am the chanting master." But once the concept has been applied to him, "You are the chanting master," then people start to talk about him as "chanting master," and he too begins to think "I am the chanting master."

58 Why We Can't Make Any Projection We Want

ग्रीट्र ने प्रमाश्रास्य प्राप्त प्रमाश्री क्ष्य क्ष्य

"Well then," you might think to yourself, "if every object is nothing more that what we label it, then I can go out and call gold 'brass,' or call a pillar a 'pitcher,' and that's just what they will be." But it's not; we do say that things are just labelled what they are, but for the label to be applied, the basis that gets it must be a reasonable one for the particular label.

यम्बार्या द्र्यत्यात्त्र्यात्त्यात्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्यात्त्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्

When we apply a label, three conditions must be present. The three are as follows: (1) the object must be known to a conventional perception; (2) no other conventional perception can contradict its existence; and (3) no ultimate analysis can contradict its existence either. All three must be there.

द्राम्यत्राक्ष्याः वर्षे व द्रियाः वर्षे वर्षे

Now here is what we mean when we say that one conventional perception has been contradicted by another. We can be standing looking at a scarecrow way off in the distance, and someone next to us says "That's a man over there," and we believe him. Then someone comes up who's seen for himself that the thing is a scarecrow and tells us "It's just a scarecrow." Our initial perception of the

thing as a man then vanishes. This is an indication that the basis was not a reasonable one for the given name.

देरः अः बद्रा रे विदः यः दुः र्थेदः उत्राध्यरः यहमाश्रः ग्राद्याशः याविः व्यदः देरः श्रः श्रेदः यावः स्वरः यहमाशः याद्याशः याविः व्यदः देरः देरः विवाः यः यहमाशः याद्याशः याविः व्यदः यहमाशः याद्याशः याद्य

That's not all—we can go around giving out all sorts of names, we can say "Rabbits have horns," but that's not going to make the horns exist; there's no reasonable basis to get the label. Therefore we must have a reasonable, conventional state of mind that is applying a name to a reasonable collection of parts which acts as the basis we want to give the name—and which actually exists.

59 What "No-Self" Really Means

Here what we call "self" refers to any nature or state objects could have in which they relied on nothing else. The non-existence of this is what we call "no-self." 65

यशिरम्भाराश्यामायोरार्स्यामायोद्धारायां विमान्त्र विमान

Now the conventional "me"—the one that does exist—is only something we've created with a label, using some basis to take the label and some idea to give the label. This is what those lines in the ritual for the secret Frightener teaching are referring to as they start off, "Since every object is labelled, in dependence..." The same sentiment is expressed, among other places, in the ritual for the secret teaching of Highest Bliss: "Like an illusion, just labelled with a concept."

60 What "Me" Isn't There At All?

श्राम्रेयाःश्रुभात् प्रत्याः श्रुप्राभाव्याः विद्याः विद्य

It's just the same when we investigate this idea of "me." Suppose someone comes up and calls you out by name. At first the "me" that appears to you is simply the conventional one: you think to yourself, "He's calling me." But then he says to you, "So you're the thief!" or something like that. Then your "me" starts getting stronger and stronger; you start thinking to yourself "Why is he pointing the finger at me? It wasn't me who stole it. They can't blame ME!" You start saying "me" "me" and the "me" starts looking like a "me" that can stand on its own, a very vivid "me."

Now we are not denying the existence of the ordinary, conventional "me" that first appeared to you. Nor are we denying that "me" appeared to stand on its own, that it appeared to truly exist. We are not even denying the "me" that appears to stand on its own, the "me" that appears to truly exist. Rather we are denying that "me" could actually stand on its own, that "me" could actually exist naturally: we are denying any "me" that could actually naturally exist.

देशःकुषःचःदश्चेशःयदेःषशःह्रेदःयःधेत्।

And when you deny this "me," when you see that this "me" does not exist—when for your this so-vivid "me" that stands out there on his own without relying on the two of mind and body ceases to be, and all that's left is simple emptiness of him, then as the sages say you have first found the "view of the middle way." And then you have found the "path that pleases the Victors."

61 Emptiness Means You Must Be Good

दे.लब.वचंब.ल.क्षेब.कु.वच्च्.। हेब.वचिंद.चु.ट्र्य.वट्ट.लुचाब.तम.तुब.ब.ताब.वचंब.ल.ट्रब.त.तीचाब.ट्या.स्.क्षेट.

Any person who really understands interdependence in the sense that we've just described it begins to develop a strong recognition of the laws of actions and their consequences—they become more and more important for him.

दे.लूब.धे। क्री.दगु.कूच.लब्दाब.यी.यह.क्रीय.श्.श्रूप.वा.एक्.ल्य.यप्र.ववीट.य. हेब.वर्षेता.ताबा.वीट.खेट.।

And this is why. First of all, good deeds lead to pleasure and bad deeds lead to pain; each cause is connected to its own result—it can never go wrong somehow and produce the other result. This invariable relationship comes from interdependence.

यहिर्वशक्तिः स्वार्थः विवाधः ग्रीक्षः यो स्वार्थः विवाधः यो स्वार्थः यो स्वर्थः यो स्वार्थः यो स्वार्थः यो स्वार्थः यो स्वर्थः यो स्वर्यः यो स्वर्थः यो स्वर्थः यो स्वर्यः यो स्वर्थः यो स्वर्यः यो स्वर्थः यो स्वर्थः यो स्वर्थः यो स्वर्यः यो स्वर्थः यो स्वर्थः यो स्वर्थः यो स्वर्थः यो स्वर्यः यो स्वर्थः यो स्वर्थः यो स्वर्यः यो स्वर्थः यो स्वर्यः यो स्व

Once you understand the sense in which "interdependence" refers to lack of any natural existence, then you understand by implication that interdependence in the form of cause and effect is, in a merely conventional way, entirely proper or infallible. This then allows you to gain a total conviction towards the laws that govern all actions and consequences—whether they be those within the circle of life or those that are beyond it.

62 How to Know When Your Analysis is Still Incomplete

याशुस्रायाः स्वायते । नधुन्यासा स्वासायते । क्रिन्

The third of the five sections in our treatment of correct view explains how to know when the analysis you are conducting with the view you have is still incomplete. This point is brought out in the next verse of the root text:

|शूट्यामेन्यत्वेयावश्चुयासेन्यान्यः।
|शूट्यामेन्यायेन्यंयायेन्यंयायेन्यः।
|शूट्यायेन्यंयेन्यःयेन्यंयायेन्यं।
|शूट्यायेन्यंयेन्यंयायेन्यं।
|शूट्यायेन्यं।
|शूट्यायेन्यं।
|शूट्यायेन्यं।
|शूट्यायेन्यं।
|शूट्यायेन्यं।

বিষাধ্যমানস্থ্র

You've yet to realize the thought of the Able As long as two ideas seem to you disparate: The appearance of things—infallible interdependence; And emptiness—beyond taking any position.

र्चेत्रम्यक्षेत्रम्यस्य स्वाप्ति । स्वाप्ति

Let's say you've meditated on the instructions we've given above. You are directing your view to analyze all phenomena. If your analysis is really complete, then interdependence and emptiness must appear to you to go hand in hand, supporting each other.

63
How to Know When Your Analysis is Complete

|देश:ब्रेय:रेश:पहेंच|श्री:पर:श्रेय|श्री: |हेब:व्रेय:श्रे:पश्रुर:श्रेद्द्र्य:श्री:व्रह्म| |हेब:व्रेय:श्रे:पश्रुर:श्रेद्द्र्य:श्री:व्रह्म| |देश:ब्रेय:श्रेय:श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्रह्म|श्री:व्

At some point they no longer alternate, come together;
Just seeing that interdependence never fails
Brings realization that destroys how you hold to objects,
And then your analysis with view is complete.

Now here's what we mean when we say that "at some point they no longer alternate." We take two things: first, the fact that everything about the way things work, and about good deeds and bad deeds, is perfectly proper, despite the fact that no single object is anything more than labels, just names. Secondly there is the fact that, when we try to seek out the thing that got the name, we find only emptiness: that there is not a single atom of natural existence in whatever object we have chosen.

64 Fourfold Perfect Emptiness

The real sages of the Middle Way school make a fourfold distinction: they say that nothing exists naturally, but not that nothing exists at all; everything exists merely by convention, but everything exists without existing naturally.

65 Put Into Practice What You Have Learned

|निःस्र प्यस्योगिर्डः निःस्स्यम् स्यान्त्रः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः विषय

When you've grasped as well as I the essential points Of each of the three principal paths explained, Then go into isolation, my son, make mighty Efforts, and quickly win your ultimate wish.

This verse is a very personal instruction that Lord Tsongkapa, out of deepest feelings of love, has granted to all of us who hope to follow him. He is saying to us, "Go first and try to grasp the essential points of the three principal paths as I have explained them above; do so by listening to teachings on them over and over again.

"Then use contemplation to gain a recognition of the truth of these points; do this in retreat, staying in a state of isolation where you cut all ties to this life, and live according to the principle of having few material wants and being satisfied with whatever you have—keep your concerns and activities few. Make mighty efforts at this practice; act quickly, never lose yourself to putting off your practice; and then win, my son, the ultimate wish of all your many lifetimes."

66 You Can Do It

देश.योश्रेश.यी.केशश.स्योश.याचट.त्.रय.खेया.श्रेरो यदीट.यी.श्रेरो वाशर.त्. यट.क्य.जश.यी.केशश.स्योश.याचट.त्.रय.खेया.श्रेरो यदीट.यी.श्रेरो वाशर.त्.

We must spend much time in learning, and reasoning out, and then meditating on the various Steps on the path to Buddhahood. To do this we have to set a goal for ourselves, for practicing and then fully realizing the three principal paths: we have to say, "At best, I am going to gain them in a day. If it takes me a month, I'll consider it average. But at the very least I will see that I have them within this year."

क्र्या.याश्रेश.ताथ्ये। श्रुया.क्येट.वर्षेटा। श्रुं.क्ये.वर्षेटी व्र्ट.वाश्वट.क्रुंटी व्याय.यार्थश्व.ताथ्ये. श्रुया.क्येट.वर्षेटा। श्रुं.क्ये.वर्षेटी व्र्ट.वाश्वट.क्रुंटी

We should follow the words of Geshe Dolpa, one of the Seers of the Word, who said:

Steps of the path! Steps of the path!

They all come down to three short words:

"Look far ahead,"

"Think very big,"

"Keep a pace."66

यश्यात्र मुन्। र्ष्यात्र पश्चेत्र प्राचीत्र प्राचीत्र स्रुप्त प्राचीत्र प्राचीत्र प्राचीत्र प्राचीत्र प्राचीत्र प्राचीत्र प्रिया स्रुप्त प्राचीत्र प

What he meant by the expression "Look for ahead" was that we should set our sights on becoming a Buddha. "Thinking big" means we should think to ourselves, "To reach my enlightenment, I'm going to practice absolutely all the paths, one by one: those of the three increasing scopes, and those of the secret teaching—the levels of creation and completion."

दे.लट.७इच.५े४.ल.भूर.१४भ.गु.चंचक.घुटी क्र्य.ज.ट्टे.क्र्य.चेंच.चंटे.टट. इट.त्र्य.ज्.च्ये.क्र्य.क्र्य.क्र्य.क्र्य.चेंच.व्य.चेंची क्र्य.ज.ट्टे.क्र्य.चेंच.चंटे.टट.

Now in the worldly side of things, people who know they must die within the year still make grand plans and act as if they're going to live a hundred. In the spiritual side of things, you and I are the opposite: we set our sights as low as we can when it comes to the threefold practice of learning, contemplating and meditating—even down to the few prayers we're supposedly reciting daily. We always pick out the easiest practice possible—we always think small, we think "This is about all I could manage."

दे.क्षर.श्रुव.तर.प्रट.योश.येश.व.श्रटश.मेश.ग्री.य्य्त.त्तर.त्त्र्य.व.व्य्त.व.व्य्त.त्य. हे। श्रुव.तह्या.त्यश

But you're wrong: if you really put forth the effort, there's no question that you can even become a Buddha. As *The Bodhisattva's Life* says,

| यद्याः योश्यः यहाः स्वाः व्याः व्यः व्याः व्य

Don't be a quitter, and think to yourself "How could I ever become a Buddha?" Those who've Gone That Way only speak The truth, and this is a truth they spoke:

|तुर-कुवःर्वेव:दगवः ह्यः सेदःवर्वेव।

"Even those who live as bugs, Flies or gnats, and even germs, Reach matchless, hard-won Buddhahood If they really make an effort."

| यद्याः स्थितः स्याकः ग्रीः स्थितः स्था | यद्याः स्थितः स्थाः | यद्याः स्थितः स्थाः | यद्याः स्थितः स्थाः | यद्याः स्थितः स्थाः स्

|উঝ'মাঝুৎঝ|

Here am I born as a man, Able to tell what's right and wrong; What's to keep me from getting enlightened If I keep on acting an enlightened way?⁶⁸

देशक्षात्र विष्णा है के त्या हैं की यो देशका है के त्या है की यो देशका है के त्या है की यो देशका है के त्या है की यो देशका है तही य

Therefore you should think as small as you can in your worldly work, but as BIG as you can in your spiritual.

यश्रित्या पश्राच्या प्रत्या स्त्रीत् क्ष्या स्त्रीत् स्त

Now the words "Keep a pace" mean that you should avoid the kind of practice where you go back and forth between making fierce efforts at it and then letting it go completely—laying around and doing nothing. You should rather keep a steady pace in the effort you give your spiritual practice: let it flow on constant, like some great river. Do anything in your power, our Lama concluded, to draw the very essence from this life of opportunity.

NOTES TO READING TWO

- 43. *listeners and self-made victors:* Practicioners who have not yet developed the highest motivation of attaining Buddhahood for the sake of all beings. "Listeners" are so named because they can listen to the higher teachings and relate them to others, but not practice thse instructions themselves. "Self-made victors" can reach their goal without relying on a spiritual guide in this life, although only because of extensive instruction by countless teachers in their past lives.
- 44. *a lower escape:* This refers to lower nirvana, or the permanent end of all one's mental afflictions, and is equivalent to Buddhahood if one attains it with the wish to liberate all beings. Nirvana without this wish is a "lower nirvana."
- 45. "The Bodhisattva's Life," "Entering the Middle Way," and "The Rare Stack": This manual for bodhisattvas was written by the Buddhist poet-philosopher Shantideva (695-743 A.D.). The classic text on correct view by Master Chandrakirti, the illustrious 7th Century Indian philosopher of Buddhism, will be covered below with the third of the principal paths. In each case, the benefits of the wish for enlightenment appear in the opening verses. The Rare Stack is a separate section of the Buddhist canon containing some 49 different sutras. One often quoted in explanations of the wish for Buddhahood is The Chapter of Light Protector; it contains eloquent descriptions of the benefits of the wish throughout, and the section around f. 237 is particularly relevant here.
- 46. Were the merit of the wish... Quotation from f. 352b of this teaching of the Buddha himself.
- 47. *Loving-Gaze:* The divine form of the Buddha that represents all his compassion. The practice mentioned can be learned from a qualified lama.
- 48. Commentary on Valid Perception: Famed treatise which forms the basis for the study of formal logic in Buddhist monasteries. It was composed by Master Dharmakirti (c. 630 A.D.) in explanation of the Compendium on Valid Perception written by Master Dignaga (c. 450 A.D.), great forefather of the Buddhist logic traditions. The reasoning mentioned is found in the second chapter, the "Proof of Infallibility," beginning from line 142 (ff. 108b-109a).
- 49. the Elimination Ritual, etc.: We have not located the spurious texts listed.
- 50. *Three Heaps Sutra, etc.:* These four teachings of the Buddha himself are listed at entries 39, 21, 33, and 10 respectively.

51. Buddha-Dharma-Sangha prayer: A traditional prayer for refuge and developing the wish for enlightenment. It reads,

I go for refuge, until I reach enlightenment, To the Buddha, Dharma, and the highest Sangha. By the merit of giving and other goods deeds I do May I become a Buddha to help all living beings.

The Buddha, Dharma, and Sangha are also called the three rare jewels. They are so named because they are supremely valuable and infrequently found--the Buddha, defined as the ultimate shelter, a being who has completed the highest possible good for himself and others; the Dharma, realizations or the end of undesirable qualities within a person's mind; and the Sangha, or any being who has perceived the true nature of reality directly.

- 52. Stages of Meditation: The point is discussed by Lord Tsongkapa at ff. 89-92 of his shorter Steps on the Path, and ff. 191-202 in his longer version. Here a number of times he quotes the Stages of Meditation, a treatise in three parts by the eighth-century Buddhist master Kamalashila. Kamalashila is best known for his successful defense of the Indian Buddhist teaching of analytical meditation before the Tibetan king Trisong Detsen. His opponents were Chinese monks who wrongly asserted that meditating on nothing at all would be of any benefit.
- 53. *all eight levels:* Refers to intensely deep forms of meditation that lead to later births in the eight sections of the form and formless realms, which are still counted as suffering.
- 54. The worldly meditate on concentration... The verse is found on ff. 44a-44b of this famous teaching of the Buddha. The following citation is the next verse in the sutra, from f. 44b. The wording of the edition available to us is slightly different, but the intent equal. Udraka was a non-Buddhist sage who woke from an extended period of meditation and went into a rage because mice had in the meantime chewed away at his impressive yogi's locks of hair; because of his anger, he was then born in the hells.
- 55. There's no way to peace... From the sixth chapter of Master Chandrakirti's work (f. 205a). Briefly, the "two truths" mentioned are what are usually called "deceptive truth" and "ultimate truth." Both are valid, and all objects have both. The dependence of objects (especially in the sense described below, upon concepts and names) is their conventional or deceptive truth. Their appearance is "deceptive" because to the minds of normal people they appear to be something other than what they actually are. The "ultimate" (here called "real") truth of objects is their lack of non-dependence, and is first seen directly in the all-important meditative state known as the "path of seeing." Seeing this truth directly acts immediately to stop the process through which we suffer.

- 56. Nagarjuna's student was Chandrakirti... The lines are from his work on the two truths.
- 57. "Detailist" school: So called because "they devote their study exclusively to the classical commentary known as Detailed Exposition, or else because they understand the Exposition's meaning" (the First Dalai Lama).
- 58. "Scripturalist" school: The name is said to come from the fact that "this school of philosophers holds that scripture [eg. sutra] is valid, but denies the validity of classical commentaries such as the Seven Works on Knowledge" (ibid).
- 59. "Mind-Only" school: The name comes from the school's assertion that "every existing object is nothing but part of the mind," although this general description is further refined by the school.
- 60. made from any different "substance": That is, come from any different principal cause or latency.
- 61. "Independent" part of the Middle Way school: The school is so named because its followers advocate a middle way which avoids the extreme of thinking things exist (naturally) and the extreme of thinking things can't exist (if they don't exist naturally). The "Independents" are one of the two parts of the school; they believe one must lead a person to the correct view that things are empty of natural existence by means of taking an independent object and discussing it in common terms--rather than starting from the person's own incorrect view and demonstrating the absurdity that it necessarily implies. These points are illuminated by the great Changkya Rolpay Dorje, said to be a former life of Pabongka Rinpoche himself, in his Comparative Systems.
- 62. *unaffected awareness*: Any normal, "reasonable" perception--the vast majority of our everyday perceptions; the opposite would be those infrequent cases where we take something wrong, such as mistaking a moving leaf for a small animal as we drive a car, or believing in something unreal that we think we see under the influence of alcohol or a drug.
- 63. "Implication" section of the Middle Way school: So named because of their belief that a line of reasoning which implies a necessary absurdity in an opponent's incorrect view on the subject is sufficient to inspire in his mind the correct view of the nature of existence.
- 64. "Functionalist" group: Refers collectively to the Detailist, Scripturalist, and Mind-Only schools, since all assert that functional things exist truly.
- 65. Here what we call a self... Quotation from his commentary on the 400 Verses of Master Aryadeva.

66. Steps of the path! Original source of quotation not found. Pabongka Rinpoche's Liberation twice credits the three instructions to Gompa Rinchen Lama (entry 47, ff. 168a, 334a), who is said to have been a student of Lord Atisha (see Lord Tsongkapa's Greater Steps), and of Lord Drom Tonpa (Blue Annals, entry 94, p. 264). Geshe Dolpa, full name Marshurpa Rok Sherab Gyatso (1059-1131) was a student of the great Potowa and compiled his mentor's teachings into a famed text of the Seer tradition entitled the Blue Book.

68. *Don't be a quitter...* From the chapter on effort in Master Shantideva's classic. "Those who've Gone That Way" refers to the Buddhas.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Reading Three: Buddhist Refuge, Part One

The following selections on the Buddhist idea of "taking refuge" are found in the Analysis of the Perfection of Wisdom, composed by Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568), a famed writer of monastic textbooks from Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery.

1 The Three Goals of Refuge

॥गिष्ठेश्रायास्याने, त्यान्याया

Here is the second section, in which we present our own position.

यक्षित्र। भूतिःश्चेत्रभ्यात्रीत्रः द्वाः पर्द्याः पद्याः पद्याः

There is a specific reason why the Three Jewels are established as being the refuges for practitioners of the three classes. From the point of view of cause refuge, practitioners of all three classes take refuge in all three of the Jewels. But from the point of view of result refuge, those of the Listener class aspire chiefly to attain the state of a foe destroyer.

|२८:कुवाक्की:देवाबाउद,४अबाग्नीबार्वेद,श्चैवाश्चरबायदे,वर्म्यातातातात्रकेशतर.

चलवा मद्र अनुसाचलवा पो विसार्चे चा चुद्र वार्ड चे र मुसादसार्दे स रू वा किरा

Those of the class of Self-Made Buddhas aspire chiefly to attain that meditative wisdom where they abide in a meditation of cessation, a state where all the obstacles of the mental afflictions have been eliminated.

२९ चीश्राची स्री प्रश्नाची स्वारा श्री प्रश्नाची स्वारा श्री स्वारा स्व

Those of the Greater Way aspire chiefly to attain the Buddha Jewel, one who possesses that cause within Him which will allow Him to turn the wheel of the dharma, in its entirety, for disciples of all three classes. This then is the reason why the Three Jewels are established as being refuges for practitioners of the three classes.

2 The Buddha Jewel

स्यामुकारम्बिनायवेश्वायिक्षाय्यान्य स्वायान्य स्वयान्य स्वयाय्य स्वयाय स्वया

The definition of the Buddha Jewel is "That ultimate place of refuge, the one which has completely satisfied both the needs." There are two kinds of Buddha Jewel: the apparent Buddha Jewel, and the ultimate Buddha Jewel.

मिट्टिब-२८-पश्च-१८-विश-तर-किया । र्यक्ष-प्रक्ष-क्ष्य-प्रक्ष-भ्रम् । विश-श्व-भ्र-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक् श्व-भ्र-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक्ष-प्रक

বাধ্যমের শ্রীমা

This Buddha Jewel possesses eight different fine qualities, beginning with the quality of being uncaused. As the *Higher Line* states,

This is the One, the Buddha: He is uncaused, He is spontaneous, He is realized by no other way; He has knowledge, and love, and power; He has satisfied both the needs.

3 The Dharma Jewel

दर्मानात्मभानाः सुरान्ते स्थान्ते स्थाने स्

The definition of the Dharma Jewel is "The enlightened side of truth, either in the form of a cessation, or in the form of a path, or both." In name only this Jewel can be divided into two kinds: the ultimate Dharma Jewel, and the apparent Dharma Jewel.

4 The Sangha Jewel

र्याः वर्षेत्रः म्योः अक्ष्यः प्रमान्तः । द्रान्यः प्रमान्यः प्रम

The definition of the Sangha Jewel is "A realized being who possesses any number of the eight fine qualities of knowledge and liberation." In name only, this Jewel can be divided into two kinds: the ultimate Sangha Jewel, and the apparent Sangha Jewel.

5 Ultimate Refuge

The definition of an ultimate refuge is "Any refuge where the journey along the path has reached its final goal."

6 Apparent Refuge

The definition of an apparent refuge is "Any refuge where the journey along the path has not reached its final goal."

7 The Meaning of Taking Refuge

The definition of taking refuge is "Any movement of the mind that acts of its own accord, and consists of hoping that some object outside of one's self will be able to render one assistance."

In name only, taking refuge may be divided into two: taking refuge in words, the expression of refuge; and taking refuge in thoughts, the reliance on refuge. An example of the first would be something like the words you use as you take refuge.

The latter is of two types: ordinary taking of refuge, and exceptional taking of refuge. The definition of the first is "Any movement of the mind which acts of its own accord, and consists of hoping that some ordinary type of refuge will render one assistance."

The definition of the latter is "Any movement of the mind which acts of its own accord, and consists of hoping that any one or number of the Three Jewels will render one assistance."

8 The Five Ways of Taking Refuge

त्य्रीत्यंश्चिर्यंश्चित्रंश्चित्रं त्य्र्यं त्रात्यं वित्रंश्चित्रं त्य्ये श्चित्रं त्य्ये श्चित्रं श्चित्यं श्चित्रं श

There are five different kinds of this extraordinary taking of refuge: the taking of refuge which is shared with practitioners of a lesser scope, the taking of refuge which is shared with practitioners of a medium scope, the taking of refuge which is shared with practitioners of a greater scope, cause refuge, and result refuge.

9 Refuge Shared with the Lesser Scope

र्तः स्त्रीरः रु: न्रोति सर्केया याश्वस्य स्वान्य स्वरः स्त्रीत्रः स्त

Here are their respective definitions. The first is defined as: "First, you feel a personal fear for the sufferings of the births of misery. Second, you believe that the Three Jewels possess the power to protect you from these sufferings. Finally you have a thought which acts of its own accord: it is a hope, or something of the type, that some one or number of the Three Jewels will render you assistance, to protect you from these sufferings.

10 Refuge Shared with the Medium Scope

The second is defined as: "First, you feel a personal fear for each and every suffering of the cycle of life. Second, you believe that the Three Jewels possess the power to protect you from these sufferings. Finally you have a movement of the mind which acts of its own accord: it is a hope, or something of the type, that some one or number of the Three Jewels will render you assistance, to protect you from these sufferings.

11 Refuge Shared with the Greater Scope

श्रेश्वराय। यश्रिश्वरायदे श्रिक्त विद्यर्थ श्रेष्ठी व्या यश्रिक्ष विद्यर्थ विद्यये विद्यय विद्यये विद्यय विद्

The third is defined as: "Any movement of the mind which acts of its own accord, and consists of hoping that any one or number of the Three Jewels will render assistance, to protect every living being from the sufferings of the cycle of life."

12 Cause Refuge

ग्रीश्चरमुद्दायानेत्रः चेत्रः प्रतेत्रः प्रतेत्रः स्रोत्याः यहः प्रतेत्रः यहः स्रोत्यः स

The fourth is defined as: "Any movement of the mind which acts of its own accord, and consists of hoping that any one or number of the Three Jewels, as already achieved in another person, will render assistance."

13 Result Refuge

ग्रीकान्द्रान्यानेक्ष्यः न्यान्यकतः यदः क्षेत्रकाः याः स्यान्यः स्वर्धः स्वरं स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वर्धः स्वरं स्वरं स्वर्धः स्वरं स्व

The fifth is defined as: "Any movement of the mind which acts of its own accord, and consists of hoping that any one or number of the Three Jewels, as they are to be achieved within ones self, will render assistance."

14 Why We Take Refuge

र्जूशताब्रश्वश्वर्योः हेर्यन्ति । यदाराश्वर्याः क्ष्रियः प्रत्यः विवास्त्र विवास्त्र विवास्त्र विवास्त्र विवास वि

वर्षेवे क्रे क्रें वर्षेत्य वर्षेत्र वर्येत्र वर

There is a specific purpose for taking refuge in the Three Jewels. A temporal purpose is that They can provide you the highest form of protection. The ultimate purpose is to attain the state of enlightenment.

Taking refuge also serves as the foundation for all the different kinds of vows. When you take refuge, you thereby join the ranks of the "ones inside": you become a Buddhist. This taking refuge acts as well to slam shut the door to the births of misery. These and others are the purpose for taking refuge in the Three.

The Short Definition of the Wish for Enlightenment

As such, we can understand the definition of the wish for enlightenment as "The wish to achieve total enlightenment for the benefit of others."

16 The Full Definition of the Wish for Enlightenment

यक्षेत्रण्णेः सक्ष्यः केत्।
स्वाकाः स

Here is the section in which we present our own position. The definition of the greater way's wish for enlightenment is as follows.

First, it is that main mental awareness belonging to the greater way, which is focussed on achieving total enlightenment for the benefit of others, and which is matched with a state of mind that is associated with it: the aspiration to achieve total enlightenment.

Secondly, it is a knowledge belonging to the greater way, which acts as a door for entering the greater way (or is something of the type), and which is included into the activity side of the standard division into the two of "view" and "activity."

17 The Divisions of the Wish

श्याश्वायत्वे। पश्चेट्राक्ष्या द्रायात्री द्रायात्रात्री स्वायात्री स्वायायात्री स्वायायात्री स्वायायात्री स्

Here next are the divisions of this wish. Nominally, the wish can be divided into the apparent wish for enlightenment and the ultimate wish for enlightenment. In essence, it can be divided into the wish of prayer and the wish of engagement. In terms of level, it can be divided into the four types that begin with "the wish that acts out of belief." In terms of how the wish is developed, there are three types, starting with the "king's wish."

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Reading Four: Buddhist Refuge, Part Two

The following selections on the Buddhist idea of "taking refuge" are found in the Analysis of the Perfection of Wisdom, composed by Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568), a famed writer of monastic textbooks from Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery.

18 The Definition of Nirvana

दर्म्य ।श्चिट.वर्य.ग्री.अक्ष्य.क्षेर्। वर्म्य ।श्चिट.वर्य.ग्री.अक्ष्य.क्षेर्।

Here secondly is the section in which we present our own position. The definition of nirvana is "A cessation which comes from the individual analysis, and which consists of having eliminated the mental-affliction obstacles in their entirety."

19 The Types of Nirvana

In name only, nirvana can be divided into the following four types: natural nirvana, nirvana with something left over, nirvana with nothing left over, and nirvana which does not stay.

20 Natural Nirvana

रदःयहोदःश्चीःश्चरःवद्या रदःयहोदःश्चीःध्यया रदःयहोदःश्चीःश्वरःश्चेदा रदः यहोदःश्चीःश्चेद्र्यःस्त्रा र्द्र्यःयदेदःयःद्र्यस्यःद्र्यःयद्वियःश्चीःश्वरःश्चेदा रदः

The following all refer to the same thing: natural nirvana, the natural Mother, the natural perfection of wisdom, the natural Dharma Body, and ultimate truth.

21 Nirvana With Something Left Over

क्रीन्जी:श्रीन्त्रन्त्राक्षेत्रात्त्रेत्र्यात्रेत्रात्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्रात्त्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्यात्रेत्रः स्त्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेतः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेतः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेतः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेतः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेतः स्त्रेतः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेतः स्त्रेत्रः स्त्रेतः स्

The definition of nirvana with something left over is: "A cessation which comes from the individual analysis, and which consists of having eliminated the mental-affliction obstacles in their entirety, but where one still has the suffering heaps that are a result of his past actions and bad thoughts." A classical example of this would be the nirvana found in the mental stream of a listener who is a foe destroyer, and who has not yet shucked off the heaps he took on.

22 Nirvana with Nothing Left Over

यर्कतायीःसेट.स्.रेट.येतायदुःस्.स्ट्राय्यात्राय्येया ।सैयाःस्ट्राय्येयाः ११४.स्रीयःभाजीयात्रःसेटशाजीटः। क्रांभाद्राताभाध्येयायीःवयंभायेरःयीरःतद्रःकीयाः

मूर्योधिर तर्यास्य प्रिष्य क्रिया क्षेत्र क्ष

The definition of nirvana with nothing left over is: "A cessation which comes from the individual analysis, and which consists of having eliminated the mental-affliction obstacles in their entirety, and where one is free of the suffering heaps that are a result of his past actions and bad thoughts." A classical example of this would be the nirvana found in the mental stream of a listener who is a foe destroyer, and who has shucked off the heaps he took on.

23 Nirvana Which Does Not Stay

स्ति । यर्षा ग्री अष्ट्र केट्री अष्ट्र याष्ट्री अर्था मुक्षा यद्याया । श्री याद्र स्ति । श्री याद्र स्ति । श्री याद्र स्त्रीय याद्रेश शास्त्र स्त्र स्

The definition of nirvana which does not stay is: "A cessation which comes from the individual analysis, and which consists of having eliminated both kinds of obstacles in their entirety." A classical example of this would be the truth of cessation in the mental stream of a realized being who is a Buddha.

24 How to Achieve Nirvana

तयुःश्चित्वत्रश्चरत्यत्याच्चेत्रयायान्यत्यत्याच्चेत्रत्याय्येत्वत्यायाय्येत्वत्यायाय्येत्वत्यायायः विष्णाय्यः विषण्यायः विषण्यः विषण्यायः विषण्यः

The nirvana we are describing here is not something that one can achieve by using any method at all. Rather, you must achieve it with the training of wisdom, which realizes that nothing has any self nature; this wisdom must be under the influence of the first two trainings, and with it you must habituate yourself to what you were already able to realize.

ने भी । भी यावर नया यो बाली या राज्यी राज्या वाया है । विषया स्थान स्थान स्थान स्थान स्थान स्थान स्थान स्थान स स्या । स्थान स स्था । स्थान स

This fact is supported by the King of Concentration, which states:

Suppose you are able to analyze
One by one those things that have no self;
And after that you habituate
Yourself to what you analyzed individually.

This is what then leads you to Achieve your freedom; nirvana beyond grief. It is impossible for any other Cause to bring this peace to you.

25 What Emptiness is Empty Of

The first of these has two sections of its own: a demonstration of why we must identify what it is we deny, and then the actual identification of this object. Before a person can develop within his mind that correct view which realizes

emptiness, he must first identify the final object which is denied with reasoning that treats the ultimate. As the *Guide to the Bodhisattva's Way of Life* states,

Until you can find what you thought was there, You can never grasp how it cannot exist.

Suppose that what you sought to deny was the existence of a water pitcher in a certain place. If before you started you had no mental picture of what a water pitcher looked like, you would never be able to verify with an accurate perception that it wasn't there. Here it's just the same. What we seek to deny is that things could really exist. If before we start we have no mental picture of what a thing that really exists would be like, then we can never have a clear idea of emptiness: the simple absence where the object that we deny isn't there.

ह्यर्थे.लूर् क्यायवर्ता। यायाःचि.श्रवरः व्याप्तः वर्षेयाःचि. वर्षेयः यायाःचि. श्रवायाःचि. श्रवायाःचितःचितःचित्रःचितःचित्रःचितःचित्रःचितःचित्रःच

Here now is the actual identification of the object we deny. Suppose something were to occur in some way that was opposite to the way that all the phenomena of physical form and so on exist deceptively. Anything that could occur this way would be precisely the final object we deny with reasoning that treats the ultimate. Therefore we must first explain how it is that all the phenomena of physical form and the rest exist deceptively.

26 Deceptive Reality

यक्षेत्रायायुरायो देवायवरायाया युरार्देवायुरायावित्रायायाये यात्रेत्रायाय्ये स्वार्थायाय्ये स्वार्थायय्ये स्वार्थे स्वर्थे स्वार्थे स्वार्थे

ॻॖॏॴड़॓ॱऄ॑॔॔ॱॻॳ॑॔ॱग़ढ़ॖॱॺॖऀ॔ॸऻ ढ़य़ॕॴॻॖऀॱढ़ऻॕॎॴ॔ऄऀॴॴढ़ग़ढ़॔ॱग़॔॔॔॔ॻ॔॔॔ॾॕॣॻॱग़ढ़ॖॱॻऺॴढ़ॎॴॴढ़ॖॱॺऀ॔॔ॴॺॣॴ

The second part to the discussion of how things exist deceptively consists of an explanation of the various scriptural references. First we will give a brief treatment of these references, and after that talk about how this system establishes the two truths; this latter step will include an instructive metaphor. Here now is the briefer treatment.

There is a specific reason why we say that all these phenomena, physical form and the rest, exist deceptively. They are described this way because their existence is established by means of a deceptive state of mind, one which is not affected by a temporary factor that would cause it to be mistaken.

27 The Magician's Show

या व्याया क्षेत्राया क्षेत्र त्याया क्षेत्र त्या क्षेत्य

There is an instructive metaphor we can use for describing how physical form and other such phenomena are from our side established as existing, by the fact of their appearing to a state of mind which is not impaired; while at the same time these objects of our mind exist on their own side through their own way of being.

र्श्वाश्वास्थान्त्रीश्वास्थान्त्रास्थान्त्रस्यान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्यान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्यान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्थान्त्रस्यान्यान्त्रस्यान्यान्त्रस्यान्त्रस्यान्त्रस्यान्त्रस्यान्त्रस्यान्त्रस्यान्त्रस्यान्त्रस्यान्त्रस्यान्त्रस्यान्त्यान्त्रस्यान्त्रस्यान्त्रस्यान्त्

अर्थेट प्रति है ने देश के हे कि प्रति स्थान का स्थान है स्थान का स्थान है से स्थान का स्था का स्थान क

Suppose a magician is making a little piece of wood appear as a horse or cow. Seeing the piece of wood as a horse or cow comes from the side of the viewer, by the force of his own mind, as his eyes are affected by the spell of the magician. And yet the piece of wood, from its side, is appearing this way as well. Both conditions must be present.

There is a reason why the first condition must be present: the condition of being established from the side of the viewer, by force of his own mind, as his eyes are affected by the spell of the magician. If this condition didn't have to be present, then a spectator whose eyes were not affected by the spell would have to see the wood appear as the animal, whereas in actuality he does not.

At this same time the second condition, that the piece of wood appear from its own side as a horse or cow, must be present as well. If this condition didn't have to be present, then the piece of wood's appearing as a horse or cow would have to show up as well in places where there were no piece of wood, whereas in actuality it does not.

श्रुभः दुः ह्र्याश्चाद्वाद्वा

In this same way are the phenomena of physical form and the rest established by force of a state of mind which is not impaired. They are labeled with names, through an unimpaired state of mind and a name which is consistent with what they are.

They do not however exist on their side through their own unique way of being, without their existence having to be established by the fact of their appearing to a state of mind that is not impaired. If they were to exist this way, then they would have to be the ultimate way things are. And if they were, then they would have to be realized directly by a state of mind which was not mistaken; by the wisdom of a realized being who is not a Buddha, and who in a state of balanced meditation is directly realizing the way things are. In fact though they are not directly realized by such a wisdom.

स्याकामी:क्र्साम्स्रकालान्त्रेयः चीनामी:क्रून्वितानिकालाम्स्रियाः विवादाः मुन्तिः विवादाः मुन्तिः विवादाः मुन्तिः विवादाः मुन्याः विवादाः मुन्तिः विवादाः मुन्तिः विवादाः मुन्तिः मुन

Suppose a magician makes a little piece of wood appear as a horse or cow. Spectators whose eyes have been affected by his spell both see the piece of wood as a horse or cow and believe that it really is. The magician himself only sees the horse or cow; he has no belief that it is real. A spectator who arrives later, who hasn't had the spell cast on him, neither sees the piece of wood as a horse or cow nor believes that it is.

Three different combinations of seeing and believing exist as well with physical form and other such phenomena. The kind of people we call "common" people, those who have never had a realization of emptiness, both see and believe that form and the rest really exist. Bodhisattvas who are at one of the pure levels see phenomena as really existing during the periods following

emptiness meditation; but they do not believe it. Realized beings who are not yet Buddhas, and who are in the state where they are realizing the way things are directly, neither see physical form and other such phenomena as really existing, nor do they believe that they really exist.

28 Difference between the Two Middle-Way Groups

विचा गीय-तप्रक्षियान्यः स्थितः श्रीयाः विचा गीय-तप्रक्षियाः स्थान्यः स्यान्यः स्थान्यः स्यान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान

The Implication and Independent branches of the Middle Way school are identical in asserting that to exist really, to exist purely, to exist just so, to exist ultimately, and the idea where you hold that things could exist these ways are all objects which are denied by reasoning that treats the ultimate.

The Independent branch though does not agree that to exist from its own side, to exist by nature, to exist in substance, to exist by definition, and the idea where you hold that form and other such phenomena could exist these ways are also objects which are denied by reasoning that treats the ultimate. They say that in fact anything that exists must exist these ways, with the exception of existing in substance. (There is some question though about things that are nominal.) They assert that any functional thing that exists must exist in substance.

र्रे.शु.चढुरे.ट्री र्य.रश्चर्यस्यात्र्यस्य स्थान्त्रः वीयः स्थान्त्रः वीयः स्थान्त्रः वीयः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्यः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्यः स्थान्तः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्तः स्थान्त्रः स्थान्त्रः स्था

Neither the Implication nor the Independent branches of the Middle Way school asserts that to exist as the way things are, to exist as ultimate truth, or to exist as the real nature of things is the final object which is denied by reasoning that treats the ultimate; for if something is ultimate truth, it always exists in all these three ways.

29 Proving Emptiness with One or Many

भ । । वाहिश्यः सः स्टः वीः श्ववाश्यः व्याः वाहिः व्यक्षः इक्षः वाह्यः व्यवः व्याः वाह्यः वाह

Consider the three: basic knowledge, path knowledge, and the knowledge of all things.

They do not really exist;

For they exist neither as one thing which really exists, nor as many things which really exist.

They are, for example, like the reflection of a figure in a mirror.

या च्याका यक्षेत्र या वेत्र भाक्षेत्र अस्य या या या प्रत्य प्रत्

The Jewel of the Middle Way supports this when it says,

The things of self and other Are free of being purely one Or being purely many, And so they have no nature: Just like a reflection.

चतुःसुर।

चतुःस

Consider these same things.

They do not exist as one thing which really exists;

For they are things with parts.

The one always implies the other, for if something existed as one thing which really exists, then it could never be a thing which appeared one way but actually existed in a different way.

They do not exist as many things which really exist, because they do not exist as one thing which really exists. The one always implies the other, for many things come from bringing together a group of things that are one.

रु: प्रति: श्रः प्रति: प्रति:

The implication in the original statement is true, for if something really existed, it would have to exist either as one thing that really existed or as many things that really existed. This is always the case, for if something exists it must exist either as one or as many.

30 Proving Emptiness with the Sliver of Diamond

त्यश्चारक्ष्यः अत्री प्रदेशः याच्यायाः स्ट्राचीच्यायाः स्ट्राचीः स्ट्राचीः

Here is the "Sliver of Diamond" reasoning, for denying that things can come from causes:

Consider all inner and outer things that perform a function.

They do not arise ultimately,

For they do not arise from themselves, and they do not arise ultimately from something other than themselves, and they do not arise from both, and they do not arise without a cause.

क्री. श्री. त्रा. श्री. व्या. त्रीय. त्रा. त्रा

These things do not arise from themselves, because they do not arise from a cause which is such that, if something were the cause, it would have to be the thing it caused.

They do not arise ultimately from something which is other than themselves, for they neither arise ultimately from a cause which is other than themselves and which is unchanging, nor do they arise ultimately from a cause which is other from themselves and which is changing.

They do not arise ultimately from both the above, because they do not arise ultimately from either one of them individually.

They do not arise without a cause, because that would be utterly absurd.

र्भायर क्री न्य्री स्वाय विषय प्राप्त स्वीत । देव न्यायर क्री व ने न्यवि वार दुर व्यव्य स्वाय स्वीत ।

The implication in the original statement is true, for if something were to arise ultimately, it would have to arise ultimately through one of the four possibilities mentioned.

31 Denying That Things Arise

तत्र तत्रकार्य त्यार्थ त्याय प्रमान स्था क्षे त्या त्या क्षे त्या

Here is the reasoning called "The Denial that Things which Exist or Do Not Exist could Arise," which we use for denying that things can come from results:

Consider results.

They do not arise ultimately,

For results which exist at the time of their cause do not arise ultimately, and results that do not exist at the time of their cause do not arise ultimately, and results that both exist and do not exist at the time of their cause do not arise ultimately, and results that neither exist nor do not exist at the time of their cause do not arise ultimately.

The implication is proven in the same way as above.

32 Denying the Four Possibilities

Here is the reasoning known as "The Denial that Things could Arise through Any of the Four Possibilities," which we use for denying that things can come from both causes and results:

Consider the functional things of causes and results.

They do not arise ultimately,

For multiple results of multiple causes do not arise ultimately, and single results of multiple causes do not arise ultimately, and multiple results of single causes do not arise ultimately, and single results of single causes do not arise ultimately.

33 The King of Proofs for Emptiness

हीं र्र्याया स्थान स्था

यक्षेत्र, यक्षेत्र। क्षेत्र, यक्षेत्र, यक्षेत

[From the *Overview:*] Here we will explain the fifth type of reasoning, the one based on interdependence, and known as the "King of Reasons." First we will present the reasoning, and then secondly prove the validity of its elements.

Consider all inner and outer things that perform a function.

They are not real,

For they are interdependent.

The reasoning can also be stated as:

Consider all inner and outer things that perform a function.

They do not arise really,

For they arise in dependence on other things which act as their causes and conditions.

Either way you state the reasoning, the following part should be added at the end:

They are, for example, like the reflection of a figure in a mirror.

34 Who is Maitreya

दह्मायदे के निर्मा स्थाय प्रमाय स्थाय स्याय स्थाय स्याय स्थाय स्य

Here is how these others make their argument. They say that "It is incorrect to relate the opening lines [of the *Jewel of Realizations*], the ones that are an offering of praise, to any need of the author himself. This is because Maitreya possesses no state of mind where he is aspiring to fulfill his own needs, and

because the lines appear here only as a means to induce persons other than the author to follow the work. . ."

त्या चिर्म्यास्य प्रति स्वर्धित स्वर्येत स्वर्येत स्वर्येत स्वर्येत स्वर्य स्वर्येत स्वर्य स्वर्येत स्वर्येत स्वर्येत स्वर्येत स्वर्येत स

Here secondly is our own position. It is incorrect to make the argument that appeared earlier, for such an argument only reveals that the person making it has failed to undertake exhaustive study and contemplation of the major scriptures of the greater way. How can we say this? Let us first ask the following: do you make this argument assuming that the Holy One [Maitreya] is a Buddha, or do you make it assuming that he is a bodhisattva?

Suppose you say that you are making the former assumption. Doing so represents a failure to distinguish between speaking in the context of the way which is shared, the way of the perfections, and speaking in the context of the way which is not shared; that is, the way of the secret word.

श्रद्धाः स्वीत्राचीरः विवा विश्वास्त्र स्वार्थः स्वीतः स्वीत्रः स्वीत्रः स्वीत्रः स्वीत्रः स्वीत्रः स्वीत्रः स स्वात्रः स्वीत्रः स्वीत्रः स्वीतः स्वीतः

The teaching of the secret way says that the holy Maitreya is a Buddha. This is true because—according to the secret way—Manjushri is a Buddha, and the reasons for His being so apply equally to Maitreya in every respect.

35 Why Tantra Exists

It is correct for us to say that the way of the perfections is the way which is "shared," and that the way of the secret word is the way which is "not shared." This is because such a description is found in a great number of authoritative works. The *Steps of the Path to Buddhahood*, for example, speaks about "how to train oneself in the way which is shared—the way of the perfections, and how to train oneself in the way which is not shared—the way of the secret word." *The Concise Steps* as well includes the lines:

Thus is the path which is shared,
The one which is required
At both the stage of the cause
As well as the stage of result
In the higher way,
The path which is supreme.

There is another description that mentions the "way for common disciples" and the "way for unique disciples." It is apparent that these expressions, [which use the same Tibetan term,] have the same connotation as "shared" and "not shared" above.

त्यातात्तरः योशीटशातपुः हीर। रू। विश्वाश्वारणाः भीशाग्रीः भीत्वविदुः योटशाटुशाचुरः ताः क्रियोशाग्रीः जीयोशार्यटा त्याटशः शुः यबरः त्यरः बत्या वर्ष्योजाः भीराज्ञा ह्याशायविषः रटः त्यरः शुः वयाताः त्यरः वर्षीरः । । विश्वाश्वार्थे वर्ष्योजाः वर्षे वर्षे

Someone might assert that "In the context of the way of the perfections, the way of the secret word is not accepted." This though is incorrect, for the *Brief Commentary* includes a section where it states that presenting the bodies of a Buddha as being exactly four is moreover not inconsistent with the way of the secret word. This section reads: "Nor moreover is this inconsistent with the other division of the teachings."

रे.क्षाःशः याष्ट्रियोकारे.रेयो.योकायोटः यत्तरं व्यास्त्रेयः स्वास्त्रः स्वास

There are other reasons too which prove that there is a way of the secret word. It is stated with authority that the ability to fly in the sky, and other such miraculous abilities described in the *Tantra of the Garuda*, occur through the power of the being who has *spoken* the tantra. This is true because the *Commentary on Valid Perception* states:

There do exist the ones who know
The tantra and can in cases
Use the secret word with success;
These are the proof. It's mainly the power
Of the one who taught it,
And following his precepts.

Beyond this type of reasoning, I personally am unable to accept all the other things that people say on this point.

36 Maitreya as a Bodhisattva

त्रः यश्चित्रः तदुः द्वेर।

यश्चित्रः त्राचेर्द्रश्चराचिष्रश्चरः द्वेरः क्वेरः योः विष्यः स्त्रेरः त्राचेरः त्राचरः त्राचेरः त्राचरः त्राचेरः त्राचरः त्राचरः

The above arguments demonstrate then that the Maitreya who authored the *Ornament* is a bodhisattva who has one life to go. This is true since the *Mother* includes a line which says, "Go and ask Maitreya there; he is a bodhisattva who has one life to go." Moreover, the *Higher Line* states that Maitreya authored it in order to utilize the word of the Able One to purify himself of the obstacles to omniscience.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Reading Five: Applied Meditation, Part One

The following selections are taken from the Great Book on the Steps of the Path (Lam-rim chen-mo) written by Je Tsongkapa (1357-1419). This part of his work is a commentary on a well-known prayer called the King of All Prayers, the Prayer of the Realized One, Deeds of All Goodness. Also included is a special prayer to Je Tsongkapa entitled A Thousand Angels of the Heaven of Bliss.

The Six Preliminaries to Meditation

્રાતિશ્વર, કુશ. છુલે. શું. તાજા ી

From the *Great Book on the Steps of the Path* by Je Tsongkapa:

Here we begin a brief presentation of how to practice the steps of the path to Buddhahood. First we will make the actual presentation, and after that refute certain mistaken ideas about the steps. The presentation itself comes in two sections; the first is how to proceed during meditation periods. This starts with Six Preliminaries to meditation.

2 Making a Sacred Space

भू गार्श्वर श्रुवाश ग्री हेत यो वाषा या वाष्ट्र । या वाष्ट्र श्रुवाश ग्री वाष्ट्र । या वाष्ट्र श्रुवाश ग्री हेत यो वाष्ट्र । या वाष्ट्र श्रुवाश ग्री वाष्ट्र । या वाष्ट्र श्रुवाश वाष्ट्र । या वाष्ट्र श्रुवाश ग्री वाष्ट्र । या वाष्ट्र श्रुवाश वाष्ट्र श्रुवाश वाष्ट्र । या वाष्ट्र श्रुवाश वाष्ट्र । या वाष्ट्र श्रुवाश वाष्ट्र श्रुवाश वाष्ट्र । या वाष्ट्र श्रुवाश वाष्ट्र श्रुवाश वाष्ट्र । या वा

[1] Here we are following the descriptions of how Serlingpa practiced during his life. The first preliminary to meditation is to make the room tidy and clean; then set up a beautiful altar, with representations of the Buddha's body, speech, and mind.

3 Setting Forth Offerings

२ अर्केन्याम्भिकोन्यम्यर्थयायाम्भिन्यस्यस्यम्यत्वम्

[2] The second preliminary is to go and find offerings that you obtain without using any dishonest means. Put them forth in an attractive arrangement.

4 Sitting

दशःश्चीत्रशःशःवर्शःचःदरःश्रेशशःचश्चीदःचःश्चीदःचःद्वीदःदरःचदःश्चीतःचःशः चर्त्ररःश्चेश्चीःवःशःचःचरःचश्चिरःचदःश्चेदःचदःश्चेदःचदःश्चेदःचदःश्चेतःचःवःश्चेतःचःवःश्चेतःचःवःश्चेतःचःवःश्चेदःचदः।

[3] Now the *Levels of Listeners* [by Master Asanga] says that, when you are practicing to purify the mind of the obstacles of sleepiness and fogginess, you should "press them upon each other." It also states that, when you are

practicing to purify the mind of other kinds of obstacles, such as attraction to the objects of the senses, you should seat yourself upon a platform or smaller seat and assume the full lotus position. Therefore the third preliminary is to seat yourself on a comfortable cushion, sit up straight, and assume a full lotus position with your legs (a half lotus is also acceptable). In this pose then sink your mind deep into the thoughts of taking refuge, and the wish for enlightenment.

5 Visualizing the Garden

हे.क्र्यान्नान्यांत्र्यांत्रः क्षेट्रायान्यः याद्यां द्रम्यान्यः याद्यः क्षेत्रः प्रायादः क्षेत्रः प्रद्यः याद्याः प्रद्याः याद्याः याद्याः याद्याः याद्याः याद्या इस्रम्यः प्रद्याः क्षेत्रः याद्याः क्षेत्रः प्रद्यः याद्याः याद्या

[4] The fourth preliminary is to visualize the garden for gathering the power of good. In the space before you, imagine the Lamas of both the far-reaching lineage, and the lineage of the profound view. Together with them are an inconceivable mass of Buddhas, and bodhisattvas, listeners, self-made Buddhas, and protectors of the Dharma.

6 The Seven Ingredients

त्यात्तर्थत्यः क्रीट श्रीट त्यां श्रा त्यात्तर्थः त्यात्तर्थः क्षीत् त्यात्तर्थः त्यात्तर्थः त्यात्तर्थः त्यात्यः त्यात्तर्थः त्यात्तर्थः त्यात्तर्थः त्यात्तर्थः त्यात्तर्थः त्यात्तर्थः त्यात्यः त्यात्तर्थः त्यात्तर्थः त्यात्यः त्यात्यः

[5] It is extremely difficult to bring the path to grow within the stream of your mind if all you practice is the various principal causes. You also need the supporting causes for the path to grow; you need to gather together the

different factors that are conducive to the path, and you need to clean yourself of the factors that are obstacles, the ones that oppose the path. Therefore you must train your mind in the Seven Ingredients, which include in them all the critical points for gathering good and cleaning away obstacles.

7 Prostration

[a] The first ingredient is prostration. There is one kind of prostration that combines all three doors of expression. It is found in the verse [from the *King of All Prayers, the Prayer of the Realized One, Deeds of All Goodness*] that includes the words "Whosoever they are, as many as there may be." [The full verse reads:

विश्वान्त्रः त्याः भ्रित्रायः त्युत्तः त्यहेताः हेवः वा वित्याः त्योषायः त्युष्यः ते त्याः श्वस्यः यतः त्याः वित्याः त्योषायः त्याः याः त्याः श्वस्यः यतः त्याः विश्वान्त्याः त्याः स्वत्यः त्याः विश्वस्यः विश्वस्यः विश्वस्यः विश्वस्यः विश्वस्यः विश्वस्यः विश्वस्यः विश्वस्य

I bow down, and purely,
In body and speech and mind,
To all those Lions of living kind,
Whosoever they are,
As many as there may be,
To those Who are Gone;
Gone in the past,
In the present or the future,
On any of the planets
In the ten directions of space.]

Here we are not talking of a Buddha on a certain planet in a certain direction of space, nor are we talking of a Buddha of a particular time; our prostrations rather are directed at each and every Victorious Buddha, those who live in every one of the ten directions of space itself—those who have already come before, those who are going to come in the future, and those who now are here. Don't do your prostrations just to go along with the crowd; do them rather out of deep respect, from the depths of your heart.

On this the master Yeshe De, in his commentary, notes that "The good deed you do by prostrating to a single Buddha is beyond any means of measuring. So there's no need to mention what a goodness it is to picture this many Buddhas, and then prostrate yourself to them."

8 Offering

प्रिक्त स्वास्त्र स्वस्त्र स्वस्त्र स्वास्त्र स्वास्त्र

[b] This brings us to the second ingredient: offering. The offering which does have something higher is found in the two verses that contain the words "holy flowers". [The full verses read:

कितायार्थं स्थान्तर स्थान स्थान्तर स्थान्त्र स्थान्तर स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्य स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्य स्थान्य स्

I make offerings
To all of these
Victorious Ones;
Holy Flowers, holy garlands,
Cymbals and ointments,
The highest parasol,
The highest lamp,
And holy incenses.

I make offerings
To all of these
Victorious Ones;
Holy silken clothing,
The highest scent,
And a mountain of incense powder
High as Meru—
All set forth
In a way more lovely
Than any other thing there is.]

The words "holy flower" refer to the most wondrous blooms of all in the lands of both pleasure beings and humans; here they are single flowers. "Garlands" are assortments of flowers pressed together on a string. Either way, the flowers can be real ones, or made of other things.

The word "cymbals" refers to all types of music, whether it's on a stringed instrument, a wind instrument, or percussion like drums or cymbals. "Ointments" are thick potions with a delicious smell of incense. The "highest parasol" is the finest of all umbrella-like coverings. The "highest lamp" is one that burns from a fragrant mixture like incense and butter; it shines bright, and gives forth a light as lovely as the flask of a precious gem. The incense mentioned can be either the kind that is a concoction of various sweet-smelling substances, or just one of these substances by itself.

"Holy silken clothing" refers to the finest of all the clothing there is. "Highest scent" means perfumed liquid presented in the form of a water offering; it is made of water, or something similar, imbues with a delicious scent so powerful that it can spread throughout the entire system of a thousand thousand planets. "Incense powder" refers to incense in the form of powder, which you either spread itself or sprinkle atop a fire to make a fragrant smoke. It is in packets, or else laid out in lines like the colored sand used to draw a mandala, in a huge mass as high and wide as Meru, the great mountain in the center of the world.

The phrase "set forth" applies to each of the substances that are being offered; the original Sanskrit word here can mean "majority," or "put forth," or "various."

द्रभक्षात्रीःगीयःश्च्र्र्स्तः स्वीत्रः स्वीत्रः स्वीत्रः स्वर्ष्णः स्वात्रः स्वत्रः स्वात्रः स्वात्रः स्वात्रः स्वत्रः स्वत्रः स्वतः स्वत्रः स्वात्रः स्वत्रः स्वत्रः स्वत्रः स्वत्रः स्वतः स्वत्रः स्वत्रः स्वत्रः स्वत्यः स्वत्यः स्वत्रः स्वत्यः स्वत्रः स्वत्यः स्वत्यः स्वत

The other kind of offering is the one which does not have anything higher. This one is found in the single verse which includes the words "Any and every offering." [The full verse reads:

चित्राचाराइस्रमाद्ध्यात्रक्तासक्तेत्वा विचरार्याक्ष्याचात्रस्यस्य स्थितस्य न्या यीसा विचरार्याक्ष्याचात्रस्य स्थितस्य न्या यीसा विचरार्याक्ष्याचात्रस्य स्थितस्य स्थानस्य स्यानस्य स्थानस्य स्थानस्य

I see as well
Any and every offering
Unsurpassed, reaching far and wide,
Handed up to every Victor;
By all the power of my faith
In the Deeds of Goodness may I truly
Bow down and make offerings
Onto all the Victors.]

Offerings which we say "have something higher" are those of worldly beings. Therefore the offerings made in this verse consist of all the many wondrous things that very powerful beings, such as bodhisattvas, are capable of emanating with their mind.

The words of the second half of this verse should be applied anywhere in the verses before where the intent is not stated directly. Their function is to express both the motivation with which the prostration and offering are made, as well as the object towards which they are directed.

9 Confession

श्री प्रमुखायात्वी क्षायाक्षे प्रमुखायाक्षे प्रमुखायाक्षे व्याप्ताक्षे व्यापत्ताक्षे व्यापत्ताकष्ठे व्यापत्ताकष्ठे व्यापत्ताकष्ठे व्यापत्ताकष्त्रे व्यापत्ताकष्ठे व्यापत्ताकष्याकष्ठे व्यापत्ताकष्ठे व्यापत्ताकष्याकष्ठे व्यापत्ताकष्ठे व्यापत्ताकष्ठे व्यापत्ताकष्याकष्ठे व्यापत्ताकष्ठे व्यापत्

यस्यायायकर् द्वराष्ट्री साम्यस्य स्थाय स्

[c] The third ingredient is confession, and is found in the single verse with the words "like and dislike". [The full verse reads:

I confess, one by one,
Each and every one
Of all the wrong deeds
I may have committed
In action or word,
And also thought,
Motivated by like or dislike,
Or by dark ignorance.]

This refers to what was done with one of the three mental poisons as its cause; and with my body or of the rest as the vehicle; and with a nature of having been committed, either directly by myself, or by someone else at my bidding, or by someone else with my gladness that it was done. The words "all the wrong deeds I may have committed" are meant to include all these elements.

Try to bring to mind all the problems that these deeds will bring you, and so feel regret for whatever you have done in the past, and a sense to restrain yourself in the future. Then make your confession. Doing this prevents any future wrong from starting at all.

10 Rejoicing

[d] The fourth ingredient is rejoicing, and is found in the one verse with the words "Victors in any of the ten directions." [The full verse reads:

|र्सुवाश्वरकुदे:कुव्यःवःगुरु:द्रःश्वरशःकुशःश्रशः।
|दर्वाःवःगुरु:कुवःद्रःश्वरःवःदः।
|दर्वाःवःगुरु:कुवःवर्श्वरःवद्याःधःदः।
|र्देवशःवरुदे:कुव्यःवःगुरःद्वयःधःवदः।

I rejoice

Over every single one

Of the good deeds ever done

By beings in any of the ten directions:

By all of the Victors,

By all of their Sons and Daughters,

By those Self-Made,

By those on the paths of learning,

By those on the paths done learning,

By anyone at all.]

Try to think about the great goodness that comes from the virtuous deeds of these five different kinds of holy beings, and dwell in a sense of gladness, like a beggar who has stumbled across a mine of gold.

11 Asking for Teaching

र्त्रम् त्याः विश्वाश्चित्रः कृतः इस्यायरः स्वर्धः कृषः विश्वात्रः विश्वात्य

[e] The fifth ingredient is urging holy ones to turn the Wheel of the Dharma. This is found in the one verse with the words "Who in all the ten directions." [The full verse reads:

विद्यम् स्थान्त्रीयाश्चान्त्रवेद्वः विद्याः हेतः क्षेत्रं स्यान्त्रम् । याद्वान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रम् । याद्वान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य । याद्वान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य । याद्वान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य । याद्वान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य । याद्वान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य । याद्वान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्यान्त्रस्य स्थान्त्रस्य स्यान्त्रस्य स्यान्त्रस्य स्यान्त्रस्य स्यान्त्रस्य स्यान्त्रस्य स्यान्यस्य स्थान्त्रस्य

Lamps who light
Each of the worlds
In all the ten directions
Of space;
Those who have taken
Each of the steps
To Buddhahood,
And so reached
The state beyond desire,
The Buddha's enlightenment;
Saviors I urge You all,
Turn the Wheel of the Dharma,
Nothing is higher.]

This verse is addressed to those who in paradises in all the ten directions of space have but only recently found Buddhahood in the Buddha's perfect enlightenment—who have reached the state beyond desire, a knowledge which

goes anywhere it wants, unstoppable. We are urging them to send forth an equal number of bodies, to come and teach the Dharma.

The commentary by Yeshe De gives the root text here as "found Buddhahood in the Buddha's perfect enlightenment" [rather than "taken each of the steps to Buddhahood," and I have followed him.]

12 Asking to Stay

चर्षियाश्वास्त्रा

[f] The sixth ingredient is supplication, and is found in the one verse which contains the words "pretend to pass into nirvana." [The full verse reads:

वित्वाक्षीः व्यव्यः स्त्रीतः व्यक्षितः व्यक्षितः व्यक्षितः व्यक्षितः व्यक्षितः व्यक्षितः व्यक्षितः व्यक्षितः व विश्वाद्याः विद्यतः विद्यतः विद्यत्यतः विद्यत्यतः विद्यत्यतः विद्यत्यतः विद्यत्यतः विद्यत्यतः विद्यत्यतः विद्यत

I press my palms at my breast, And make this supplication To all of those who may intend To pretend to pass into nirvana: Stay, I pray to help all beings And bring them to happiness; Stay for eons equal in number To the atoms of every world.]

Here we are making supplication to all those in worlds of the ten directions of space who might pretend to pass into nirvana. We are requesting them to stay, ultimately to bring all beings help, and in the interim to give them happiness. We ask them to stay, and not to pass on, for eons equal in their number to all the atoms that make up the various worlds of the universe. We make our supplication, praying that they will remain, in bodies beyond all counting.

13 Dedicating

हो । प्रक्रें प्रदेश्यम् त्यम् द्वी सुमा पर्कत्य प्राप्त हिमा प्रदेश के मुमा पर्व हो। में प्र মী'অর'অমা'রুমা'মী'বমী'মঝ'মার্কুর'রঝ'বমী'য়'য়য়য়'उद'য়য়য়'उद' ८८. बिथ. शूट. टी. विश्व. पु. ह्र्याश. तयु. यीट. क्य. ग्री. क्यी. तयुर, त. द्या. त्या. त्या. त्या. त्या. त्या. द्रमः प्यतः भे वहर पर्वे । रे स्ट्रूर केवा रे र्वा की रेंद्र के वर मुरु व्याप्येर वाल्य रु अ'भेदब'यर 'द्याचुब'हे ब्रूद'वसूद'य'विदेद'तुब'द'वर्शेद'द्रस्य अ'ग्री'सुद'र्ये नममानुः सेनायदे सामि । निःस्रमान्यस्य मान्यस्य केनायान्यस्य स्यान्यस्य स्थान्यस्य स्थानस्य स्यानस्य स्थानस्य स्यानस्य स्थानस्य स्यानस्य स्थानस्य स्थानस्य स्थानस्य स्य स्थानस्य स्यानस्य स्यानस्य स्थानस्य स्य स् यःवादवःयःदरःधःररःदरःवृःदेःसञ्चदःक्रेवःर्वेवाद्यःवार्वेवाःयःधेदःवा व्यववाद्यःयः दै'वर्गाया मुद्रा क्षेत्र पार्श्वर पार्ट्य प्राप्त प्राप्त का प्राप्त का विकास का किया का का का का का का का का न्वाद न न में अप के र माने निया में वा न स्थान स्यान स्थान स यश्याश्वारान्द्रसुद्धारान्द्रसेयायदे नवो यस्यश्वास्त्रम् देवतः सेथा स्वारान्य सेवा य.२८.योषशःश्रेपशःश्रे.४चंशःये.सैं८.कुं.च८.तर.५र्योर.य.४शशःग्रीट.षेशःलट.शुः बर्यर होर्य क्षेत्र क्षेत्र व्यवायाय प्रत्य क्षेत्र क् নাধ্যুম'5'ব5ুর্ব্

[g] The seventh ingredient is dedication, which is found in the verse with the words "prostrations and..." [The full verse reads:

विष्यात्रक्तायः न्द्रम्योश्चरः क्रुयः श्वेरः प्रश्नेत्। विष्याः त्रक्तायः न्द्रम्याः विद्याः त्रक्षेत्रः प्रश्नेत्। विष्याः त्रक्तायः न्द्रम्याः विद्याः त्रक्षेत्रः प्रश्नेत्। विष्याः त्रक्षेत्रः विद्याः विष्याः त्रक्षेत्। विष्याः त्रक्षेत्रः विद्याः विष्याः विद्याः विष्याः विद्याः विष्याः विद्याः विद्या

I dedicate
To my future enlightenment
All my merit,
Whatever little goodness
I may have gathered here
By bowing myself and offering,
By confessing and rejoicing,
By urging and supplication.]

Here we are taking all the virtuous seeds within us, represented by the goodness we have accomplished in practicing the six ingredients that have already come, and dedicating them as a cause for the full enlightenment of ourselves and every living being, together. Make this dedication with tremendous will, and the power of your good will flow forever, and never finish.

Read this prayer as I have taught you to here; understand what each verse means, and say it out slowly, without letting your mind wander to something else. If you can do this, then you will gain a great mountain of good deeds, beyond any kind of measuring.

Five of the ingredients we have listed here—prostrating, offering, urging, supplicating, and rejoicing—help you to gather together the different factors that are conducive to the path. One of them, confessing, helps you clean yourself of the factors that are obstacles, ones that oppose the path. One part of rejoicing—dwelling in a sense of gladness over the good you have done yourself—also functions to multiply your virtue.

Dedication works to multiply, fantastically, even the minor good deeds you have done in the acts of gathering, and cleaning, and multiplying. It also takes good deeds that are short-term, those that are going to give a good result and then disappear, and changes them so that they will never be exhausted. In brief, it functions in all three ways: to gather, to clean, and to multiply such that goodness never ends.

14 Asking for a Final Blessing

For the sixth and final preliminary, refresh your visualization, and make an offering of a mandala. Them make a request that the Lamas bless the stream of your mind. Ask Them to help you stop, quickly, everything from disrespecting your Spiritual Guide on up to grasping to some ingrained self-nature, in either of its two forms. Ask Them to help you develop, smoothly, every single kind of thought which is perfect and unmistaken; everything from respect for your Spiritual Guide, on up to the realization of suchness, the fact that nothing has any nature of its own. And ask them finally to help you put a final end to all the things, within you or outside of you, that might obstruct your spiritual progress.

Make this supplication over and over, many times, with fierce hopes for its success.

15 An Actual Practice of the Preliminaries and Ingredients

A Thousand Angels Of the Heaven of Bliss, A Prayer of Lama Devotion

्रका । श्च.शदु. ईता. तर्ते र. देया द. कंच. कं. तथी. शा

lamay nelnjor ganden hlagyama

। द्याय स्व स्व प्रमुद्ध सर्वे व मी मुरामा मा

ganden hla-gyay gungyi tukka ne,

|रय:रगार:ब्रें.याशर:श्रुंदश:वर्द्दे:कु:वर्द्देन:क्रेर।

rabkar shosar pungdray chunzin tser,

क्रिं भी के त्राम्य मित्र मित्

chu-kyi gyalpo kun-kyen losang drak,

|स्थाद्राच्यायाम्याद्रीयाविष्ययासुःवार्यवा

sedang chepa nendir sheksu sol.

Please come to me,
Lobsang Drakpa,
King of the Dharma, who knows all things,
Come with your Sons, riding upon
The tops of clouds
Like mountains of pure white snow;
Come,
Come from the heart
Of the Lord of a Thousand Angels
Living in the Heaven of Bliss.

।सर्व.मी.यसायर.श्रर.मि.तर.चंदु.हेर.।

dun-gyi namkar sertri penday teng,

<u>|है'नर्जुन'स्'र्या'न्यीश्रायदे'वर्ह्यान्यार उत्रा</u>

jetsun lama gyepay dzumkar chen,

|वर्षा:र्र्वे:रूर्पवे:वर्केर:ब्रुश्वःविर:अर्केषा:रू

daklo depay sunam shingchok tu,

বর্ষধান্মশ্রিমারশ্রীমারশ্রীমারশ্রীমার্কা

tenpa gyechir kalgyar shuksu sol.

Sit in the air
In front of me,
On a throne with cushions
Of the moon, and the lotus;
Set on the backs of lions.

My holy Lama,
With pure white smile,
Happy with me,
I ask you to stay
For a million years
To spread the teaching;
Stay, for there is no one
Higher than you
With whom I may make merit
By goodness of my faith.

विश्वानुदे निंदान्तुद्वात्र्य स्वान्य

shejay kyunkun jelway lodru tuk,

। श्रेल. च बट. इ. चढु. क्वेष. चीर. जुवाश. च वट. वार्शेट. ।

kelsang naway gyengyur lekshe sung,

|ग्राम्बायदे:र्पयामुकाक्ष्माक्ष्माक्ष्मायदे:ह्या

drakpay pelgyi hlammer dzepay ku,

।शब्रूट.ब्रुश.रेथ.तश.ट्र्य.र्जय.ज.दिया.उक्ता

tongtu drenpe dunden la chaktsel.

Your Mind
Is knowledge
That wraps around
The entire mass
Of knowable things.

Your Words Are jewels Of good explanation That we the fortunate Wear on our ears.

Your Body Shines forth Shines with brightness Shines with a glory The world will see.

I bow to You; Just to see You Just to hear You Just to think of You Brings great things.

।धीर वेंद अर्केर धेंब सूर्कें वार्य से केंवा रूप

yi-ong chuyun natsok metok dang,

<u>| दे किंग पर्या भ्रें शक्र प्रतामाय प्रतामा</u>

drishim dukpu nangsel drichab sok,

रिट्रायविषदालूट सैंवायकूट सैंय मी अकूर दे।

ngusham yitrul chutrin gyatso di,

।वर्श्नर्भश्विद्रास्त्रेयाः विद्रायाः सर्हेन् यर व्युवा

sunam shingchok kyela chupar bul.

I make in my mind And place here as well An ocean of gifts That could cover the sky;

Presents to please
All of Your senses,
Every different color of flower,
Sweetest fragrant incense,
Lamps of light, perfumes
Upon your body,
And other gifts as well,
Do I offer You,
There is no higher
With whom I may make merit.

|याट.ब्रेया.ब्र्या.ब्रेट.र्यं.चंब्रयंव्यांब्र.त.ल्रो

gangshik tokme dune sakpa yi,

|खुब्र-८मा:धेर-मासुस्र-हो-५मो-ई-प्रमुब्र-५८-।

lu-ngak yisum mige chigyi dang,

। ব্রিদ্রেম : ই্রম : या ম্বুম : ক্রী : মার্ম : ই্রি বা মা

kyepar dompa sumgyi mitun chok,

। श्रुट र वर्षा वर्षे दिया द्वार्थ र वर्ष र वर्ष या वर्ष

nyingne gyupa drakpu sosor shak.

From deep within my heart,
I am sorry, deeply,
And openly confess
One by one
The harm that I have done
In my acts or words or thoughts;
Any and every wrong
Kept with me from time
With no beginning;
Especially what I may have done
Against any one
Of the three different kinds
Of vows.

। क्षेयायायादी द्यायदी रास्य देवा स्थाया स्थाय

nyikmay dundir mangtu drupla tsun,

विष्यानक्षर्भ्यस्यास्याद्यात्वेद्वर्र्द्र्यार्थर्ग्वर्

chugye pangpe delnjor dunyu je,

gunpo kyukyi labchen dzepa la,

|वर्वा:उवा:वर्ष्या:यश्वा:यशःधी:रट:ट्रॅः।

dakchak sampa takpe yirang ngo.

Here in the age Of degeneration You made every effort To gain great learning;

You threw away
The eight worldly thoughts
And so made use
Of Your leisure and fortune.

Savior, we rejoice We are glad, happy deep inside, For what you have done, So good and powerful.

jetsun lama dampa kyenam kyi,

chukuy kala kyentsey chunzin trik,

<u>इ.सॅ. उक्षूका मधु मीर्या विद्युत्त स्थाया</u>

jitar tsampay duljay dzinma la,

|=ব:শ্রুঝ:র্কুঝ:গ্রী:ক্রম:ঘ:ব্রব:দু:বার্ক্ঝ।

sabgye chukyi charpa aptu sol.

Holy lamas high,
Wrap the sky
Of your dharma bodies
In massive clouds
Of knowledge and love
And let them pour
Upon the earth
Of your disciples,
As we are ready,
A shower of rain,
The Teachings
Deep and wide.

|यर्या'मीश्राहे'क्केर्'यश्याश्रायदे'र्यो'य'दर्श

dakki ji-nye sakpay gewa di,

|वश्रुव:८८:वर्ग्रे:वःगुव:वःवाट:धव:८८:।

tendang drowa kunla gangpen dang,

kyepar jetsun losang drakpa yi,

|वसूर, परे स्रूट रें सेट रु वार्य वीद रेवा |

tenpay nyingpo ringdu selje shok.

May any goodness I have done With this my prayer Be a help to the teachings And to every living being.

I make a special prayer too
That for many years to come
I may carry forth
The Light,
The Essence of the Word,
The Teachings of Je Tsongkapa.

|८४७७:५४:४८५१:४८४:५४:५५१

pelnden tsaway lama rinpoche,

| वर्षाकी श्रुः वर्षः यर त्रुवे श्रेर वतुष्राया

dakki chiwor penday tengshuk la,

|पगवरदेवरकेवरप्रदेश क्षेर्वशह्रायनुरःह्रे।

kadrin chenpoy gone jesung te,

kusung tukkyi ngudrup tsoldu sol.

Come I pray and sit
My root Lama
Shining and precious
Upon the lotus
Atop my head;
Take me after You
In great kindness,
Grant that I attain
Your body, speech and mind.

|८६ूरा:बीय:भीय.उर्वेट:बीय.र्यट:रू.हु.उक्ट.।

ngudrup kuynjung tubwang dorje chang,

I pray to the One who Holds the Diamond The source from where Every goal is found;

। नुर्श्वेम् श्राचित्रः महिर के त्र श्रुवः रूषः म्राचीयाया

mikme tseway terchen chenre sik,

|\$'रोर'अष्टित'यदे'न्वर'र्ये'वहस'न्यवान्तुरस्य

drime kyenpay wangpo jampel yang,

| वर्तु-र्नु-स्थ-स्थान्य ।

dupung malu jomdze sangway dak,

|यारश्राः उदाः सायश्राः यार्वे याः क्रीदः हिंदः याः या

gangchen kepay tsuk-gyen tsongkapa,

|
রূ:ব=

রে ব্রাল্ম মের জ্বম অ লাম্প্র অ বং বই নমা

র

losang drakpay shabla solwa deb.

I pray to Loving Eyes Treasure of love With no one it loves;

I pray to Soft Glorious Voice Lord of knowledge That has no stain;

I pray to the Keeper of the Secret Who smashes all The army of demons;

I pray to Tsongkapa Crowning jewel Of masters of the Land of Snow;

I pray to One, I pray at the feet, I pray to Lobsang Drakpa.

|८४७७:५४.२५,५५५५५५५५

pelnden tsaway lama rinpoche,

|वर्वान्त्रीःक्षेटः|वरःवर्न्त्रवेदःववुवाराःवा

dakki nying-kar penday tengshuk la,

|चगाद:द्रेब:क्रेब:संदेश:ब्रेश:ब्रेश:च्रुट:क्रे|

kadrin chenpoy gone jesung te,

।भुःगशुरःश्वग्रांगुःदर्शंगुवःस्तानुःगर्शेव।

kusung tukkyi ngudrup tsoldu sol.

Come I pray and sit
My root Lama
Shining and precious
Upon the lotus
In my heart;
Take me after You
In great kindness,
Grant that I attain
Your body, speech and mind.

|८४७७:५४.२५,५५५५५५५५

pelnden tsaway lama rinpoche,

|वर्वान्त्रीःक्षेट:वर:वर:ब्रद्धेट:वर्ववाराःवा

dakki nying-kar penday tengshuk la,

|नगवरदेवरकेवरभेदे र्स्वरहेबरच्चर है।

kadrin chenpoy gone jesung te,

|अर्क्रेम। ५८ खुद्र-श्रेट १८ देश चुद्र-स्थि ।

chokdang tunmong ngudrup tsoldu sol.

Come I pray and sit
My root Lama
Shining and precious
Upon the lotus
In my heart;
Take me after You
In great kindness,
Grant that I attain
Both common and highest goals.

|८४७७:५४.२५,५५५५५५५५

pelnden tsaway lama rinpoche,

|वर्वान्त्रीःक्षेट:वरःवरः व्रदःक्षेटः वर्ष्ववाद्यः या

dakki nying-kar penday tengshuk la,

|नगाद:द्रैब:क्रेब:सेंदि:क्केंब्बर:हेश:नब्द:हे।

kadrin chenpoy gone jesung te,

|चु८:कुठ:क्केट:घेदे:घर:ठु:घह्रद:घर:घलुवारू।

jangchub nyinpoy bardu tenpar shuk.

Come I pray and sit
My root Lama
Shining and precious
Upon the lotus
In my heart;
Take me after You
In great kindness,
Stay here never moving
Until the Buddha's essence.

<u>|क्र.</u>रचन्नागीय.पे.क्रीजाय.क्रूट.चि.तन्ना

tserab kuntu gyalwa tsongkape,

विया अर्केया प्रवेश याने दः नर्देश शुः अर्द् नः पदे अर्श्वशा

tekchok she-nyen ngusu dzepay tu,

मियायमायस्य मार्यः यसाय वारा दे किरायमा

gyalwe ngakpay lamsang de-nyi le,

। भ्रदः द्वयाः द्याः प्यदः य भ्रद्याः याः याः याः व

kechik tsamyang dokpar magyur chik.

Through all the string of my future lives May Tsongkapa the Victor come to me And serve himself as my spiritual guide In the teachings of the Greater Way.

।श्चे.य.गीय.धे.लट.र्या.धे.का.रट.।

kyewa kuntu yangdak lama dang,

|यन्त्रया: क्रेन्टिका: क्रेन्टिका: क्रेन्टिका: क्रेन्टिका: क्रेन्टिका: क्रेन्टिका: क्रेन्टिका: क्रेन्टिका: क्र

drelme chu-kyi pella longchu ching,

|सर्दर्ध्यामा अर्थे अर्थे । स्थान

sadang lamgyi yunten rabdzok ne,

र्मि: दिक्द मी में तथर सुर र्वेच र्वेम

dorje chang-gi gopang nyurtop shok.

In all my lives
May I never live
Apart from my perfect lamas,
May I bask
In the glory
Of the Dharma.

May I fulfil
Perfectly
Every good quality
Of every level
And path,
And reach then quickly
The place where I
Become myself
The One who Holds the Diamond.

16 The Conditions for Developing Quietude

্ৰভা বিষ্ণাইষ্টেৰ্ইে বিশ্ব

From the *Great Book on the Steps of the Path*:

र्वेया.ताक्रा यात्रकात्यीय.तार. वर्चीर. यदुः क्री. ढ्रि. यात्रका. यात्रका

The explanation of how to train yourself in each of the two [quietude and special sight] has three parts: how to train yourself in quietude, how to train yourself in special sight, and how the two are joined in union. The first of these parts itself has three sections: how to gather together the conditions for quietude, how to meditate on quietude after you have gathered together these conditions, and how to know when your meditation has actually brought you to quietude. The first is described in the words, "Holy practitioners should first gather together the conditions for quietude: the causes that will allow them to develop quietude quickly and easily." Here there are six different conditions.

17 A Conducive Place

त्युः श्रीः त्युः त्युः त्युः त्याः त्याः त्याः श्रीः व्युः त्याः त्याः त्याः त्याः त्याः त्याः त्याः त्याः त्य व्यूः त्याः श्रीः त्याः त्यां व्यायः त्यां व्यायः श्रीः व्यायः त्याः त्याः व्यायः व्यायः त्याः व्यायः व्यायः व व्यायः श्रीः त्याः त्यायः त्यायः व्यायः श्रीः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व्यायः व

र्ट. ग्रॅ्याश्वाच नट. रेट. । विका क्रिंट नविका क्रिंट मुंद्रा । विका मार्शेट शास्र्रा । विका मार्शेट शास्र्रा । विका मार्शेट मार्थ मार्थ

- [1] The first condition is to do your meditation staying in a place which is conducive for it. The place should have five different qualities:
 - a) It should be a place with things that are "easy to find," in the sense that you can find food, clothing, and other necessities without any trouble.
 - b) It should be a "good place," in the sense that there are no fearful creatures like wild animals or the like, nor any persons like enemies who would try to harm you.
 - c) It should have a "good environment," in the sense that the environment doesn't cause any kinds of sickness to develop in you.
 - d) There should be "good friends" there, in the sense that your companions in the place share your sense of morality, and your world view.
 - e) The place should "have goodness," in the sense that, during the day, there should not be many people around and, during the night, there should not be many sounds.

As the Jewel of the Sutras says,

The place where intelligent people practice Should have things that are good to find, It should be a good place, with a good environment, A place where good friends stay, With all the practitioner needs, with ease.

18 Live Simply

यर क्याबारा क्षेत्र प्राप्ते क्रिंब म्याबारा क्ष्यां व्याप्त क्ष्यां व्याप्त व्यापत व्या

[2] The second condition is that you keep your wants few; you have no great attachment to things like fine robes, or a lot of things, or the like.

19 Be Easily Satisfied

वेश्याये । क्रिया वेश्याये क्रियायेश्याया श्रीयाश्चायायाय देत्र रहेश हे द्राया ह्या हु क्रिया वेश्यायेश क्रिया क्रिया वेश्यायेश क्रिया क्रिया वेश्यायेश क्रिया वेश क्रिय वेश क्रिया वेश क्रिया वेश क्रिया वेश क्रि

[3] The third condition is that you are easily satisfied; you always feel like you have enough, even if all you can find is robes or the like that are the worst.

20 Don't Get Busy

श.च.श्र.च.श्र्चात्रा.लूटश.शे.श्रेटश.त.त्री विश.त.रट.४च.विर.४श्रश.रट.२.१८८.५२८.५८१०.चिश.विर.त.रट.श्रेथ.विर.त.रट.श्रेथ. ्री वि.च.श्रट.त्र्त्य.शं.श्रेटश.त.त्री क्रि.कूट.ज.श्र्चात्रातप्त.वि.च.टथ.त.रट.

[4] The fourth condition is that you give up trying to do too many things. You give up undesirable actions like business; you avoid being too familiar with laymen or monks; you stop practicing the minor arts of medicine, astrology, or the like.

21 Be Pure

[5] The fifth condition is that your morality is perfectly pure. With regard to your vows of individual freedom, and your bodhisattva vows, you never break down the foundation of your training, the things you have been taught that are naturally wrong to do, and those that the Buddha has prohibited. If out of a lack of attention you do commit such deeds, your are quick to regret them, and you try to make up in the proper way.

22 Get Rid of Stupid Thoughts

ह्रेचा, ख्रम्भ १८८८ श्रीट, यर स्वीत्। ख्रिचा, ख्रम्भ १८८८ श्रीट, यर प्रम्म १८५८ श्रीय १८५८ श्रीय

[6] The sixth condition is that you totally rid yourself of the stupid thoughts of desire and the rest. You meditate on the problems of desire in this life—how it can bring you to death, and to bondage; and you meditate on the problems it brings you in the life after—a birth in the realms of misery, or the like. Or else you can meditate on how each and every one of these pretty things in the suffering cycle of life is going to end; how quickly it disappears;

how surely it will be torn from me before very long. Try then to get accustomed to thoughts like this: So why do I find myself caring at all about these things? What use are they for me? Use these to rid yourself of every stupid thought of desire.

23 The Nine States of Meditation

Here is the third division, which is a description of how one achieves the nine states of meditation using the steps explained above. Anyone who hopes to practice meditation must become proficient in these nine states; and to become proficient in them, one must know what they are. So here is an explanation of the nine states, which are called (1) placing the mind on the object; (2) placing the mind on the object with some continuity; (3) placing the mind on the object and patching the gaps; (4) placing the mind on the object closely; (5) controlling the mind; (6) pacifying the mind; (7) pacifying the mind totally; (8) making the mind single-pointed; and (9) achieving equilibrium.

24 Placing the Mind on the Object

शुः ब्रैयः तः क्षे। दुः कुः श्रुश्रश्चायाः क्ष्याः दुः त्र्रीत् । शुः त्रुः श्रुश्चायाः व्याः द्र्याः त्रुः त्र यदः दश्यायाः तः त्यवयाः द्र्याः त्र्याः द्र्याः त्र्याः व्याः क्ष्यः स्रोः याप्रशः त्याः क्ष्यः स्र्याः व्याः व्या

न्नर-नुःर्वर-नःरेषायाययास्य स्याः स्या वित्रः स्याः स

Here is the first state of meditation, called "placing the mind on the object." You achieve this state by means of receiving instructions from your lama about the object you should use for your meditation. The mind at this point stays on the object only from time to time, and for the most part is not fixed on the object at all: you are unable to keep your mind on the object for any continuous length of time. The two mental functions of noting and examining are present, and due to this you often lose yourself to scattering and agitation. You become aware of this condition and so you get the impression that you have even a greater problem of too many thoughts coming up to your mind than you ever had before. What's really happening though is not that you have more of these thoughts than before; it's just that you have now become aware of the problem.

25 Gaining Continuity

त्यीय।

स्यासीयाः प्रमान्त्राः प्रस्ताः प्रमान्त्राः प्रमान्त्रः प्रमान्त

Here is the second state of meditation, called "placing the mind on the object with some continuity." This state is reached when you practice placing the mind on the object enough that you can now keep your mind on it for some continuous, although brief, period of time. You could say it would be like being able to keep your mind from wandering for as long as it would take to do one round of the *mani* mantra on your rosary. At this point your problem of having too many thoughts goes away for a while, and then comes back for a while, so the impression you have is that these thoughts are making a periodic resurgence. This particular state of meditation is achieved through contemplating.

याःल्यान्यान्त्र्यः प्रत्यान्त्र्यः यात्र्यः यात्रः यात्र्यः यात्रः यात्र्यः यात्रः यात्र्यः यात्यः यात्र्यः यात्र्यः यात्र्यः यात्र्यः यात्र्यः यात्र्यः यात्र्यः यात्र्यः यात्र्यः यात्यः यात्र्यः यात्यः यात्र्यः यात्र्यः यात्र्यः यात्यः यात्र्यः यात्र्यः यात्र्यः यात्र्यः यात्र्यः यात्र्य

During these first two states of meditation, you have an abundance of dullness and agitation, and only occasionally fix your mind on the object. Therefore at this point we say that your mind is in the first of the four mental modes, the one described as having to "concentrate to focus." During these stages, said our Lama, the periods of distraction last longer than the periods in which the mind is fixed on the object.

26 Patching the Gaps

स्री यहेतर र्ये त. क्र्रीय अ. क्रिय वर्षे प्रमालेश प्रम प्रमालेश प्रमालेश

Here is the third state of meditation, called "placing the mind on the object and patching the gaps." The place where you put a normal patch is a piece of cloth; here the place you put the patch is the continuation of your focus. What this means is that you catch your mind quickly after it wanders away from the object, and so "patch" the hole in the continuation. The difference between this state of meditation and the two that come before it is in the length of time you are distracted. Our Lama also noted that this is the time when you are able to develop your recollection to a high degree.

Placing the Mind Closely on the Object

प्रतियाने इत्यान्त्रीयान्त्र इत्याने प्रत्यान्त्र विषयाने इत्याने हिन्द्र विषयाने इत्याने हिन्द्र विषयाने इत्याने हिन्द्र विषयाने हिन्द्र विषयाने हिन्द्र हिन

Here is the fourth state of meditation, called "placing the mind on the object closely." Since by now your recollection is highly developed, you are able to place your mind on the object of meditation in such a way that it is no longer possible to lose it completely; this then is what differentiates this state from the three before it. Even though you are succeeding in keeping the object from being lost, nonetheless dullness and agitation are present in your mind, and they are very strong. Therefore you must at this point apply the correction for dullness and agitation. These two levels, the third and fourth, are achieved by means of recollection. Our Lama noted that from this point on the power of our meditation was complete, or full-grown, like a person who has reached maturity.

28 Controlling the Mind

Here is the fifth state of meditation, called "controlling the mind." There is a tendency during the fourth state to draw your mind too far inside, and there is a great danger that this can lead to subtle dullness. Therefore we must now

develop our watchfulness to a high degree. It goes and spies on the mind, and finds something wrong; in response then we must uplift the mind by thinking over the many benefits that single-mindedness can bring to us. The difference between this state and those before it is whether or not obvious dullness can occur.

29 Pacifying the Mind

Here is the sixth state of meditation, called "pacifying the mind." The great danger at this point is that subtle agitation occurs, as a result of uplifting the mind too far while in the fifth state. Whenever this subtle agitation comes, you must raise up a powerful kind of watchfulness to detect it; realize that even very subtle agitation is a serious fault in your meditation, and stop it. What distinguishes this stage from the one before it is whether or not there is a great danger of having subtle dullness. These last two states, the fifth and the sixth, are achieved by means of watchfulness. From this point on, said our Lama, the power of our watchfulness is complete.

30 Pacifying the Mind Totally

यट्डियः द्वीर्ट्या उट्टर्स्स्य प्राचित्रः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वार्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्

कर चिर्रित्वेश्व से त्वा अप्याचिर्यं विष्य के प्रमान के

By the time you reach the seventh state of meditation, which we call "pacifying the mind totally," your recollection and watchfulness are total, and so it is unlikely that dullness and agitation are going to occur. At this point you must bring your effort up to a powerful level; see how destructive even subtle forms of dullness and agitation are, and do whatever you can to eliminate them altogether. The difference between this state and the ones before it is whether or not you should worry much about slipping into subtle dullness or agitation. Although there is no great danger at this point that subtle dullness and agitation will occur, you must still make great effort to implement the various methods for eliminating them. While you are in the fifth and sixth states of meditation, you still have to be concerned whether or not dullness and agitation are going to attack you. Here in the seventh state though you have the ability to initiate the effort necessary to block them; and so, said our Lama, dullness and agitation are unable to attack and create an obstacle. During these last five states of meditation—that is, from the third through to the seventh—the mind is for the most part in single-pointed meditation. Nonetheless, conditions such as dullness and agitation are interrupting ones concentration, and so we describe the mental mode during these periods as "engaging but interrupted."

31 Single-Pointedness

त्रुन्योःरेटः द्वीटः सेन्द्रस् सेवरः सेन्याः सरः योष्ठेनः यो दित्यः श्वितः यः वर्तुनः वितः। वर्नेः नयाः वर्तुन वर्त्तन्त्रः स्नित्रः सेन्द्रः सेन्याः सरः योष्ठेनः यो दित्यः वर्ष्टिनः श्वीः सेव्यः वर्त्तनः वर्ते । वर्नेः नयाः य्यीय।

श्रम्भयमः मुभायक्षेत्रः त्राप्त्रं स्वाप्तः स्वाप्त

Here is what happens when you reach the eighth state of meditation, called "making the mind single-pointed." When you begin a meditation session, you must still make a slight effort to bring up the various corrections. After that though you are able to go for an entire session without even the subtle forms of dullness and agitation coming up in the mind. These last few stages are like having an enemy who is at full strength, one who has lost part of his strength, and one whose strength is completely lost. Since these examples describe how dullness and agitation gradually lose their power, we can say that from the eight state of meditation you no longer need to make any conscious effort to apply watchfulness. Because in this eighth state you can make a little effort at the opening of a meditation session and then pass the entire period without being interrupted by problems such as dullness and agitation, the mental mode at this point is described as "engaging without interruption." The seventh and eighth states of meditation are achieved through applying effort.

32 Equilibrium

भर्द्यस्यास्त्रेयाः स्वीसायद्वेयाः । देन्ते पर्द्रस्य स्वीसायदेन्त्रेयसारी सावसाद्वेयाः स्वीसायदेन्त्रः स्

Here is the ninth state of meditation, called "achieving equilibrium." Here your mind is engaging in the object without any conscious effort at all. This state comes about as a result of having repeated the eighth state over and over until you are completely accustomed to it, and then you can go into meditation spontaneously, effortlessly. This is similar to the point you reach in your recitations when you can read out a text from memory without any effort, since you have practiced reciting it repeatedly. You go into single-minded meditation in a single swoop. This state of mind is for all intents and purposes a desire-realm form of single-pointed quietude. The ninth state is achieved through being totally accustomed.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Reading Six: Applied Meditation, Part Two

1 The Motivation for Meditation

The following selections are taken from Preparing for Tantra: The Mountain of Blessings. The root text of this book was written by Je Tsongkapa Lobsang Drakpa (1357-1419), and the commentary by Pabonka Rinpoche (1878-1941). The book was translated by Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin (1921-) and Geshe Michael Roach (1952-). Khen Rinpoche also wrote the following introductory sections.

Before you start this little book, decide on your motivation for reading it. Think to yourself,

I want to reach enlightenment as soon as possible. I want to reach it in this very life. And when I do, I will free every living being from every pain of the suffering existence we all live now. Then I will take all these beings up to the level of a Buddha, which is the ultimate state of happiness. This is why I am going to read this book, which shows all the steps to enlightenment.

Take a moment now before you go on. Make sure you have this motivation.

This little book covers absolutely everything that the Buddha ever taught. In Tibet we have a hundred great volumes of the Buddhas' own teachings, translated into Tibetan from Sanskrit, the language of ancient India. And this small book covers all of them.

All the old, great books of Buddhism have but one main goal, and that is to show how any one of us can reach the state of perfect enlightenment. They tell us everything we have to do: how to reach the goal, how to practice, and how to learn. They show us how to begin, they show us how to finish. Everything we need is in those books.

Five hundred years ago in Tibet there came a master monk and teacher, whose name was Tsongkapa the Great. He took these ancient volumes and arranged them into a kind of book known as the *Lam Rim*, which means "Steps of the Path to Enlightenment." Here he laid out all the steps that any of us can go through, one by one in the proper order, if we truly wish to reach enlightenment. He took care to present the steps clearly and simply, yet covering everything that must be done, as we start on the path, and travel along it, and finally reach its end.

The small book here is called the *Source of All My Good*. It is the absolute essence of all the *Lam Rims*, of all the books on the Steps to enlightenment. The text was written by Tsongkapa himself, and it is named from the opening lines, which read: "The source of all my good is my kind Lama, my Lord."

In the teachings on the Steps this work is also known by another name, something of a secret name, which is *Begging for a Mountain of Blessings*. The word "blessing" here refers to the blessings of all the Buddhas of the universe. "Mountain" comes from a Tibetan word which means a huge pile, a great mass of things all heaped together in one place. The word "begging" is meant to show how much we need and want these blessings.

When we recite this work out loud, then, it's as though we are begging the Buddhas to grant us their blessings, to help us achieve everything from the beginning up to final enlightenment. We are asking them to help us reach all the various paths, all the different levels of knowledge; we are asking for the power of their blessings, we are begging them for help.

Just whom are we asking for help? Normally when we perform the secret Ceremony of the Tenth, we begin with the Practice of Six, followed by the Thousand Angels. Just after that we start this *Source of All My Good*. Therefore we still have in front of us the same holy beings who were there during the Thousand Angels.

Sitting in the center, in mid-air before us, is Tsongkapa. Inside his heart is Gentle Voice, or Manjushri, who is the image of all the Buddhas' wisdom. In the heart of Gentle Voice is another holy being, Vajradhara—this is the Keeper of the Diamond, or the Buddha of the secret teachings. His body is blue, and within his own heart is the Sanskrit letter *huung*. This letter is marked with another letter, *mam*.

On Tsongkapa's own right is his disciple Gyaltsab Je, whose full name is Gyaltsab Darma Rinchen. Within this disciple's heart is Loving Eyes, whose Sanskrit name is Avalokiteshvara, and who is the embodiment of all the Buddhas' love. Inside the heart of Loving Eyes is again the Keeper of the Diamond, and in his heart the letter *huung*, marked with a *mam*.

On the other side, to Tsongkapa's left, is his disciple Kedrup Je, whose full name is Kedrup Je Gelek Pelsang. Inside of his heart is the Holder of the Diamond, or Vajrapani, and in the Holder's heart is the Keeper of the Diamond. Within the Keeper's heart is a letter *huung*, marked with a *mam*.

All of these beings are seated in the air in front of you, and they are the ones whom you are asking for their blessing. They are the ones that you are requesting to help you, to grant you every kind of knowledge, from the beginning of the path on up to final enlightenment.

Now I want you to think about something. What is the difference between a Buddha and us? What is it that makes all the Buddhas different from us? And what about you, yourself? You are trying to reach Buddhahood; but what is the difference between all these Buddhas, and you? This is a question you must examine, and then the answer will come to you.

What are the Buddhas? First of all the places where they live are paradise. Pure paradise. The paradises where the Buddhas live are completely pure, they are pure by their very nature, and there is not a single thing about them which is not pure.

Inside themselves too the Buddhas are pure. They have no inner obstacles at all, no bad deeds stored up in them, no problems of any kind. They have none of the problems that are caused by any of the four elements of the physical world, either around them or within them. They have no sickness, no getting old, no death. They do not even have a word for these things where they live. This is why their paradises have names like the "Heaven of Bliss," for they live in the highest happiness that there is.

When we think about our own lives then we can see the big difference between Buddhas and us. In one sense we are very fortunate; we have all had the very great fortune to be born as a human being, and we can enjoy that small amount of happiness which human beings sometimes experience. And so sometimes we think we are happy.

But still we have problems, a lot of problems. We have problems all around us, and we have problems inside of us. We have problems that come with the very nature of the kind of life we live. The Buddhas have none of these problems.

Try to think about this difference between the Buddhas and you. Why did you get this book, why are you going to read this book? The main purpose is to reach enlightenment, to gain the highest state of happiness that exists. And to get there you must escape all the sufferings that come with our present kind of life.

To do all this you are going to have to follow some kind of practice. You are going to have to move up through certain levels, certain paths, one by one through a great many different Steps. You will have to go in order, gradually, through each of these Steps. Each higher Step you will have to reach by practicing, and to practice you must learn what to practice. If you never learn what to do, you will never be able to do it.

In this little book you are going to learn what to do. But this is only a preparation for something else.

Generally speaking, this book is all you need. If this is all you ever learn, and if you practice what you learn here, then you will reach enlightenment. But it will take a long time to do so if you restrict yourself to this way, to the way of the open teachings of the Buddha. It will take a very, very long time.

But you want enlightenment, you need it, and you need it now. Why? Because the reason you are reading this book, the whole point of studying these things and reaching these goals, is to help each and every living being. All of them have been your own mother, and the purpose of everything is to help them.

Right now they are suffering, by the very nature of the life we live. Most of them are living in the three lower kinds of birth. Even those who live in one of the higher kinds of birth are suffering too; by the very nature of things, they are in some kind of pain, all the time. Your goal is to save them from this pain, your goal is to help them reach enlightenment, which is absolute happiness. This is why you are studying, this is why you are practicing.

If you only use the way of the open teachings, it will take a long time to reach the goal. But you want the goal now, you want to reach it quickly, because all these living beings around you, all who have been your mother during some lifetime in the past, are suffering in this kind of existence. You cannot stand to have their pain continue, you cannot let them go on suffering so long.

And so you will free them, and you will free them quickly, now. But is there any way to do it so fast? The answer is yes, there is a way, a path that works faster than any other, a path which is very deep and powerful and holy. This is the Tantric path, the secret path of the Diamond Queen: Vajra Yogini.

To practice this path you must receive an initiation to enter it, and then you must receive her teachings. But before you can do this you must first be granted another initiation, one which will qualify you to study and follow her path. There are four great groups of secret teachings, and to qualify to practice the path of this Angel you must be granted an initiation that belongs to the group which is called the "unsurpassed." Therefore the most important thing for you to do first is to seek an initiation of the "unsurpassed" group.

According to the tradition of the Diamond Queen, the best initiation to prepare yourself for her own initiation and path is the one we call the "Union of the Spheres." There are though other initiations of the unsurpassed group which you can seek if you cannot get this one; for example, there is the initiation of the being known as Frightener, which is much shorter and easier than the one for the Union of the Spheres, and still qualifies you to take her initiation later.

There is another step you should take too before seeking her initiation. When you go to a college to get an advanced degree, or any degree at all, you must first enter the college. Then you go to classes, do your study, and finally after a number of years you complete all the requirements, and reach your goal. To reach the goal then it is very important that you study and learn, on a constant basis. But to study, and learn, you first have to gain entrance into the college.

It's all the same here. The first thing you have to do is to gain entrance into the unsurpassed group of the secret teachings of the Buddha. To enter these teachings you have to go through the gate, and this is the initiation. The initiation is the door.

When you take the initiation, you commit yourself to a number of vows. Keeping these vows is like doing your study on a daily basis once you've been allowed to enter the college. In a school you have to learn what to study, and then you have to maintain a regular schedule of study. Here in the secret teachings, the vows that you took when you received your initiation are what you have to study: these are what you have to maintain on a regular, daily basis.

To keep the vows, you have to learn all about them. This is why it's essential that after your first initiation you study, in detail, the secret vows, along with the regular vows of morality, and the bodhisattva vows. The very function of these vows, the result of these vows, is very simple. *If you keep them, they produce enlightenment in you.*

Aside from this main function, keeping the vows has another effect as well. In the short run—that is, while you are still on the path, from the very beginning on up to the day you reach the ultimate goal—they help you, they keep you, they preserve you. They make you sweeter and sweeter, more and more pure, every single day you keep them. Everything about you gets better and better: the way you act, the way you think, higher and higher, day by day, month by month.

The vows then are your dear companion, the vows are your devoted helpmate. Vows are not some kind of punishment; the Lama doesn't come to the sacred place of initiation, and say to you, "Well now that you've got the initiation, here are some vows to keep, as a punishment." You must understand all the great good which the vows do for you, and you must learn what they are.

Once you have learned the vows, you must keep them as your daily practice. You should reach a point where, as you look back after some time has passed, you can see progress, you can say to yourself, "A number of years ago, I used to act like that; I had a certain kind of attitude, certain ways of behaving, the limitations of my knowledge were such, and my ability too was only so. Now they have all changed, for the better. Even in the last two years I have changed; no, even in the last year I have changed." You should be able to see for yourself, you should be able to judge, by yourself, whether you are keeping the vows, and how it changes everything about you.

So we are working mainly towards the day when we can receive initiation into the practice of the Diamond Queen. This will allow us to receive her teachings, and then to carry them out. To do this, we will first have to seek any one of the preliminary initiations into the secret teachings of the unsurpassed group, the highest group of secret teachings.

A person who seeks to be granted an initiation into this highest group should himself be highest, in the sense that he is highly qualified to receive the initiation. Becoming highly qualified is something that you must do in the proper stages, in certain steps, one by one.

Above I asked you to think about what it was that made Buddhas different from us. In the beginning though all the beings who are Buddhas now were just the same as we are at present. They lived the same kind of suffering life that we pass our days in now, and they did so over millions and millions of years, over very many lifetimes.

At some point though these beings were able to achieve an excellent life as a human; the same kind that you have now. Within that human life they were able to meet with an excellent spiritual teacher as well. He or she gave them the proper training, and the necessary initiations, and as a result these beings began to get better and better. Finally they achieved enlightenment: they were able to stop all the problems within them and outside of them, everything. If they have been able to practice and achieve this goal, then why can't you? Why not?

And so it is possible for you to become someone who is highly qualified, who is qualified to an unsurpassed degree to take one of the initiations of the unsurpassed group of the secret teachings. To be qualified to take this initiation, to be a highly qualified practitioner in this sense, means that you must be a practitioner of what we call the *Mahayana*: the Greater Way. This is because all the secret teachings also belong to the greater way; they are in fact the highest teachings and practices of the greater way. You too then will have to be an unsurpassed practitioner, of the greater way. But how do you reach this point?

You must first prepare yourself, with what we call the "shared" practice. The word "shared" means that this preliminary practice is shared by the way of the open teachings, and the greater way, and the way of the secret teachings—all three. It is a practice which all three ways share in common.

Suppose you are planning to construct a very high building, a building with many stories. The most important thing to do first is to build a good foundation, a very strong foundation. If the foundation is strong, then you can build as many stories as you like on top of it.

The little book you have here—*Begging for a Mountain of Blessings*, complete with the commentary of the great Pabongka Rinpoche—presents this foundation. It shows you the practice which is shared by all three ways, and which will prepare you for initiation into the secret teachings. This is the strong foundation upon which you will build your great, high house.

Think about it, and be happy. Take some joy now in what you are about to do. You must realize what a precious opportunity you have in your hands at this very moment, this one good time. Read, and learn, and try not to forget. Try to remember what you learn in this little book, and then try to put it into practice, in your daily life, in a regular way.

By the time you finish this book you should be a different person. The person who picks this book up to read, and the person who sets it down after finishing the last page, should be totally different people. On the inside. You must change: you must change in the way you think, you must change in what you know, in the way you behave all day, in everything about you. Try to change yourself. If you do, then you will win the result of reading this book, of picking it up, and of entering into what it stands for.

Khen Rinpoche Geshe Lobsang Tharchin

Abbot Emeritus, Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery Abbot, Rashi Gempil Ling Kalmuk Buddhist Temple Freewood Acres Howell, New Jersey, USA

Je Tsongkapa's Day December 27, 1994

Why Study the Steps to Enlightenment?

द्रायाश्वर्शे । निःयादिः स्वार्यात्र्याः विष्याः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विष्यः विषयः व

Let me remind you, he said, of those lines by the King of the Dharma of all three realms—Tsongkapa the Great; the ones that mention "This life of spiritual leisure, more precious than a jewel that can give you whatever you wish for." The refrain throughout these verses reads: "Those of you who wish for freedom should seek to master this, as I have done." You and I have lived in this circle of suffering life forever; and there is not a single form of life, in any of the six realms of pain, that we have not already lived.

In these lives we have suffered, and enjoyed the occasional short-lived pleasure, wandering aimlessly from that high level known as the "Peak of Existence," then down to the lowest hell, "Torment with No Respite," then back, and back again. We have lived this way for time with no beginning, and yet we have never gotten any meaning out of it; the time has slipped away from us useless, senseless, empty. And so still we are here, circling up and down in the three realms of the wheel of life, and certain we are to continue the round.

[&]quot;And so we begin," said the Lama.

र्श्व कर्रा स्ट्रिं स्वर्य स्वयं स्वर्य स्वयं स्वर्य स्वयं स

At some point in days gone by, you and I through sheer good luck were taken for some brief moments under the care of a Lama, or the Three Jewels, and so were able to gather together some bit of pure and powerful karma. The force of this karma, I will admit, has allowed us to gain, just this once, the present life we enjoy—full of the various leisures and fortunes, free of the problems that come when we lack the conditions that allow a proper spiritual practice.

I will admit as well that everything we need has come together for us this time: we have a Lama, we have some Dharma to practice, we have every favorable condition that we need. And so the capability to follow the spiritual path is something we now hold in our own two hands. Yet suppose we fail; suppose that we find ourselves unable to achieve the ultimate goal of the infinite lives we have led.

न्तर। श्रीम्ब्रायदेःयाद्यापद्यःयाद्यःवियाः हुःश्रीयः ग्राटः श्रृताः पश्चाः द्वाः प्रश्नाः विद्याः विद

Beyond a doubt then we will fall back again to the births where we have no chance for Dharma. And when we fall it matters not where we fall; wherever we fall in a birth without the Dharma, our life can never be anything but pain.

यर देश विट बंश तक के का शेरा पर ति वक्के प्रते के ति हैं स्थर ति स्था में स्था प्रति स्था के स्था

The way to avoid ever taking another birth where we have no chance for Dharma is to practice the Dharma purely now; there is no better way at all. And our practice must start this minute; you will die, you must die, it is certain you will die. But you've no idea when. And what will happen after that?

श्रमान्यस्ति। मान्यस्ति। मान्यस्

Whatever we do now decides where we go then: if we do good, it will throw us forth into one of the better births; if we do wrong, it will throw us to a birth of misery. So suppose we fail to practice; suppose we die in the middle of our present evil way of life. It is only fitting then that we should go right where we belong: to these very births of misery.

रीयोश्चर्यात्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रीत्रात्त्

We must then for the short term go for shelter to the Three Jewels, to keep ourselves from a birth in the lower realms. We must as well open up and admit the things we have done wrong before, and restrain ourselves in the future. To do so we must make strong and heartfelt use of the four forces that counteract the power of the wrong. We must too put all our effort into taking up even the smallest virtue, and giving up even the slightest harms we commit against others.

If in addition to all this we are able to follow perfectly the path of the three extraordinary trainings, then we ourselves will come to be free of each and every fear of the circle of suffering life. But it's not enough if it is only you who escapes the circle, for we must recall the words of the Master Chandragomi:

नित्रः हुः हुर् द्वार्यः प्रेत्रः हुत्राव्यः याद्वः स्त्राव्यः स्त्रः हुत् । वित्रः हुः हुतः व्यव्यव्यः वित्रः हुतः हुतः व्यव्यव्यः वित्रः हुतः हुतः व्यव्यव्यः वित्रः हुतः विव्यः हुतः विव्यः हुतः व्यव्यव्यः वित्रः हुतः विव्यः हुतः विव्यः हुतः व्यव्यव्यः वित्रः हुतः विव्यव्यः हुतः विव्यव्यव्यः वित्रः हुतः विव्यव्यव्यः वित्रः हुतः विव्यव्यव्यः वित्रः वित्रः हुतः विव्यव्यव्यः वित्रः हुतः विव्यव्यव्यः वित्रः वित्रः हुतः विव्यव्यव्यः वित्रः वित्रः हुतः विव्यव्यव्यः वित्रः वित्र

Even a cow knows how To take care of himself, To eat a few clumps of grass He easily comes across;

Even the beast can merrily drink From a pool of water he finds As bitter thirst Torments him.

But think now what it is To put your whole heart Into taking care of others;

This is glory, This is a park of pleasure, This is the ultimate.

१८८१ द्या प्रह्मे प्रमुख्य प्रत्य क्षेत्र क्ष

The Sun Climbs aboard his fantastic chariot, Flies across the sky, Lights up all the world.

The Earth Raises up his mighty arms, Bears the load, Holds up all mankind.

And so is the way Of those great beings Who wish nothing For themselves,

Their lives devoted To a single song: The well-being and the happiness Of every living thing.

3 Repaying the Kindness of our Mothers

क्रे.र्२.७म्.रम्प्तिर.क्र्य.त.क्षेत्र.क्षेत्रका.क्ष्य.स्त्र.क्ष्य.स्त्र.क्ष्य.स्त्र.क्ष्य.स्त्र.क्ष्य.स्त्र.क्ष्य.स्त्र.क्ष्य.स्त्र.क्ष्य.स्त्र.क्ष्य.स्त्र.क्ष्य.स्त्र.क्ष्य.स्त्र.क्ष्य.स्त्र.क्ष्य.स्त्र.स्त्

We must do as the verses say: we must distinguish ourselves from common animals, we must find that great courage of heart to accomplish the goals of all other sentient kind. And there is a good reason why we should.

यःश्रेन्। श्रिमाःश्रेन्। ने:विश्वायद्यःन्त्राःश्वेनःशेनःश्व

Every single creature in the universe has been our father, and been our mother, not once, but more times than numbers can count. And there is not a one who when they served as our parent did not shower us with every deep kindness, over and over again.

क्ष्यायाः क्षेत्रः याः त्राच्याः विवाद्याः याः विवाद्यां याः विवाद्यां याः विवाद्यां याः विवाद्यां याः विवाद्य विवाद्याः विव

Think: everything we have now, from this precious human body on up, has come to us through the kindness of other living beings. And so it is now that we must repay them. The repayment must begin here, in these circumstances, while I am able, while I possess this perfect form for the practice of the Dharma.

ने श्रीय प्रदेश यहा प्रति स्त्रीय स्त

If now I cannot accomplish this great goal, if all I have gained is wasted, then there is little point in claiming to work for every living being: it is little likely that I myself will be able even to reach the higher realms of suffering life again.

श्रंश्चर्यात्रीयश्चर्यात्रीयश्चर्यात्रीत्राच्यात्रीत्राच्यात्रीत्राच्यात्राच्

What is the way then to pay this kindness back? No way would be higher than to see to it that every living creature has every happiness there is, and that every living creature is free of every pain which exists. And I will do it! Raise these thoughts of love and compassion up in your heart—bring them on fiercely.

यद्यिरः च द्र्येश। व्याच दे प्याच व्याच व

And then you must resolve to take the load upon yourself: "I will rely on no one else in this work; it should be I, and I alone who brings every happiness to every being, and frees each one from every pain."

कूर्यान्नात्त्रप्रेन्नान्नेन्नान्न्यः स्वान्त्रप्रात्त्रप्रात्त्रप्रम्भान्नेन्नान्नेन्नान्नेन्नान्नेन्नान्नेन् नित्रमन्निन्नत्त्रप्रम्भान्त्रप्रम्भान्नान्नेन्नान्नेन्नान्नेन्नान्नेन्नान्नेन्नान्नेन्नान्नेन्नान्नेन्नान्नेन

And yet the ability to perform this noble task is had only by a single being: only by a Buddha, there's no one else at all who can do it. If for the sole purpose of all other living creatures I can reach the state of a Buddha, then I can fulfill completely both of the ultimate goals, and so by the way achieve everything I ever needed as well.

4 The Steps of the Path

बुद्द्वायो न्य अर्द्र स्वाका गुरुष्य विश्व कि निर्देश कि कि निर्वेश कि निर्व

This is a work of the kind we call the "Steps to Buddhahood"; books like this contain within themselves each and every crucial point in all the open and secret teachings of Buddhism. They present these points without the slightest error, from the very beginning to the very end: from finding and serving a spiritual guide on up to the perfect secret Union, where there is nothing more to learn.

क्रियायदे म्यान्य स्थान स्थान

These teachings on the Steps are the pure essence of everything that all the victorious Buddhas have ever spoken, the sum rolled into one. They are the one and only form of the Teaching that embodies all of the greater way; they are the point of the tip of the highest, matchless peak.

5 The Steps and the Secret Teachings

हे. मुः अदे क्ष्यश्वास्या यया अर्थे मान्य क्ष्यामा । हे प्रति क्ष्यामा । प्रति क्षया । प्रति क्ष्यामा । प्रति क्षया । प्रति क्ष्यामा । प्रति क्ष्यामा । प्रति क्ष्यामा । प्रति क्षयामा । प्रति क्ष्यामा । प्रति क्ष्याम ।

Our Lord Lama, in his work entitled Songs of My Spiritual Life, says,

When within yourself you've developed The path that is shared, The one that's needed For both the highest paths...

बयश्रभुटे.जो क्षेयो.तर.र्टे.क्येज.अष्ट्र्यो.के.त.कुरे.त्रश्री खेश.त.केर.क्रीर.अर्ट्र.क्येश.योट.लुर्थ.लट.क्र्य.तश्राची.रूश.त.वर्ट्ट.शुटे.

What he means is that, speaking in a general way, this instruction on the Steps to Buddhahood is one that you could never do without, whether you are practicing the open or the secret teachings of Buddhism. To put it more specifically, the Great Fifth of the Dalai Lamas has said,

|क्रेश:चय:योशट:य:कृष्णशः(वेश:रव:योग्राश:गुट:) |योट:देर:कुःद्द:व्यंश:युव:व्यंषा:यःवश् |क्रेश:य:केव:येव:क्रंप्यःवेश:यंव:वेव|

Everybody talks of it,
The Secret Word, The Most Profound,
Essential thread
In the River of Dharma
For those of the great capacity;

But try it before Your mind is trained In the path that both them share, Climb atop a mighty elephant Still wild, and not yet tamed; You will only lose Yourself.

त्रभाश्चर्रायास्त्रम् व्याभाग्नीः श्चेर्यायाः केर्यायाः केर्यायाः केर्यायाः केर्यायाः केर्यायाः केर्यायाः केर्

It is absolutely vital then, for anyone with hopes of entering the door that leads to the way of the Secret Word, that you train your mind first in this path shared by both the open and secret teachings.

Could any system be more profound or far-reaching than this Dharma, the Steps of the Path? Certainly not those teachings that others claim are oh-so-deep, or oh-so-high and inscrutable. People chatter about attaining some realization, some supposed zenith of some very secret way: they talk of termination; they talk about the levels of creation and completion; about the channels and winds and drops; the great seal, or the great completion, whatever. But if one never makes use of these very Steps, he can never even plant the seeds, much less bring the path in full to grow within his mind.

6 Why you Need a Lama

र्ट्ट्रिंडी।
।र्ख्यान्विम्युम्यविम्युम्द्रिम्यस्थाः
।र्ख्यानविम्युम्यविम्युम्द्रिम्यस्थाः
।र्ख्यानविम्युम्यस्थाः
।र्ख्यानविम्युम्यस्थाः
।र्ख्यानविम्यस्थाः
।र्ख्यानविम्यस्थाः

|ব্ৰীপ্ৰ:ম.কুৰ.মূৰ্প্ৰ:মহ-দ্ৰীৰ:ফ্ৰীপ:সূৰ্যপা

बिश्रायदे र्स्नु गायिया यीश यस्त्र।

The first of these [general sections of the steps of the path] is presented in a single verse,

the first one of the work:

The source of all my good
Is my kind Lama, my Lord;
Bless me first to see
That taking myself to him
In the proper way
Is the very root
Of the path, and grant me then
To serve and follow him
With all my strength and reverence.

र्रायास्यान्त्रात्वस्यान्त्रात्वस्यान्त्र्याः विष्यात्रात्त्र्याः विष्याः विष्याः विष्याः विष्याः विष्याः विषय विष्याः विषयः विषयः

This Step of taking a Lama is itself divided into two sections: developing clear faith in him, which is the very root of the Path; and then building up reverence for him, by considering the great kindness he has paid us. The instruction in developing faith comes in two stages: how to follow a Lama in one's thoughts, and then how to follow him in one's actions.

देश । त्र्येन्य्यक्ष्यक्ष्यक्ष्यक्ष्यः व्यास्यक्ष्यः । विष्यः व्यास्यक्ष्यः व्यास्यक्ष्यः व्यास्यक्ष्यः व्यास्य देश । त्र्येन्यः व्यास्यक्ष्यः व्यास्यक्ष्यः व्यास्यक्ष्यः व्यास्यक्ष्यः व्यास्यक्ष्यः व्यास्यक्ष्यः व्यास्यक्षयः विष्यक्षयः विषयक्षयः विषयक्षयः विषयः विषयः

Now the Secret Teaching of Sambhuta says,

You will never be able to take a boat To the other side of the river Unless you take the oars up in your hands.

You will never reach the end of suffering life Without a Lama, Even if you perfect yourself In every other respect.

वित्रः द्वीतः अर्रे : सुत्रः यात्रा अर्थः सुर्थः केथः त्रा स्वरः यात्रः यविश्वः यात्रहेतः हें र वित्रः द्वीतः अर्रे : सुत्रः यात्रा अर्थः सुर्थः केथः द्वाः यात्रः यविश्वः याः यहेतः हें र

The Shorter Sutra on the Perfection of Wisdom concurs:

The Victorious Buddhas,
Who possess the highest
Of all good qualities,
Speak as one when They say:
"Every single part of the Buddhist way
Depends on a Spiritual Guide."

त.र्जर । विजिज्ञान्यक्षात्रस्थान्यक्षात्रस्थान्यक्ष्यान्यक्षेत्रः स्थित्। विज्ञान्यक्ष्यः विश्वान्यक्ष्यः विश्वान्यक्ष्यः विश्वान्यक्ष्यः विश्वान्यक्षयः विश्वान्यक्यविष्यविष्यविष्यक्षयः विश्वान्यक्षयः विश्वान्यक्षयः विश्वान्यक

It says as well:

And so the wise Who seek the high state of enlightenment With a fierce wish deep inside Should smash all pride within them,

And like a mass of sick men Who flock to medicine for a cure, Take themselves to a spiritual guide And serve him single-mindedly.

र्शक्षरायश्चित्रायश्चर्य । श्चित्रश्चाश्चर्यात्र्यं प्रश्चरायश्चर्याः वर्ष्वयः त्यात्र्याः वर्ष्वयः त्यात्रायश्चरः वर्ष्वयः त्यात्रायः वर्ष्वयः त्यात्रायः वर्ष्वयः त्यात्रायः वर्ष्वयः त्यात्रायः वर्ष्वयः त्यात्रः वर्ष्वयः वर्षयः वर्ष्वयः वर्षयः वर्ययः वर्षयः वर्ययः वर्षयः वर्षयः वर्षयः वर्षयः वर्षयः वर्ययः वर्षयः वर्षयः वर्षयः वर्षयः वर्षयः वर्षयः वर्षयः वर्षयः वर्षयः वर्ययः वर्ययः वर्ययः वर्ययः वर्षयः वर्ययः वर्ययः वर्ययः वर्ययः वर्ययः वर्यः वर्ययः वर्ययः वर्ययः वर्ययः वर्ययः वर्ययः वर्ययः वर्ययः वर्ययः

Our Gentle Savior, Tsongkapa the Great, has too spoken these words:

There is a single key
For finding a perfect start to reach
Your every wish, both happiness
In the short run and ultimately;

And the highest words ever spoken Speak it always the same: It is your Lama.

And so you must devote yourself To meditation upon him, Upon the essence of all The three different kinds of refuge; Ask him, for all your goals. अम् ने न सून्य क्ष्या सून्य प्रत्ये स्वाध्य स्वाध्य स्वाध्य स्वाध्य स्वाध्य स्वाध्य स्वाध्य स्वाध्य स्वाध्य स्व

All these lines are saying the same thing: if you have any hope of reaching up to the high spiritual qualities of the various levels and paths, then from the outset you must absolutely find and follow a Lama who can show you how to do so.

7 The Qualities of an Authentic Lama

And the Lama that we are describing here is not just any one you might happen to come across; it's not just anyone they call a "Lama." Rather, he must have in him the ten high qualities described in the *Jewel of the Sutras*. He must first of all be subdued, at peace, and at high peace; that is to say, he must possess all three of the trainings. He must display fine spiritual qualities that exceed those of his student, and exhibit exceptional effort. He should have a total mastery of the Dharma in the form of scripture, and should have realized suchness. He should be highly skilled in teaching the Dharma, he must have a great love for his disciples, and he must never become tired or discouraged in his teaching, no matter how much or how often he is called upon to do so.

त्यामार्यर पुराक्षा क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र क

चुर्। ।यश्रेवःयःर्वअःग्रीशःरयोःयवेयःश्लेवःययोगःयये। ।यवेशःयाद्येवःर्व्यायःश्लेवः इरः क्रुवः।यस्रवःया

We are though now in the days of degeneration, and so perhaps it is difficult to find someone who possesses each and every one of these qualifications. In such a case, we must follow the advice of the Lord of Lamas:

If you take my advice,
Man of the land of Gyalkam,
Take yourself to the ultimate
Spiritual guide:
To one who grasps Reality,
To one who has controlled his senses,
Who takes your heart away
As soon as you lay your eyes on him;
To the one that,
When you follow what he teaches,
The good in you begins to flower,
And the bad begins to fade.

च.रट.र्जिय.त.र्ज्ञु.जि.क्ट.च.र्य्यूश्व.वीटा। विश्व.श्यात्रात्त्रे.जि.क्ट.च.र्य्यूश.वीटा। विश्व.श्यात्रात्त्रे.जि.क्ट.च.र्य्यूश.वीटा।

These and other such lines are telling us that the Lama we seek must at least possess a complete set of five different qualities: He must have brought his mind under control, by following the three trainings; he must have realized thusness; and He must have love.

द्रश्यस्यवः द्रश्यः स्रवः क्रेंशः द्राः द्रियः हेतः याष्ठेशः याश्रः व्याः विवः याष्ठेशः याश्रः विवः याश्रः याष्ठेशः याश्रः विवः याश्रः याश्यः याश्रः याश्यः याश्यः याश्रः याश्यः याश्यः

As a bare minimum, the Lama must surely fit the following description. He must occupy himself more with the Dharma than with the things of the world. He must as well occupy himself more with the concerns of the future life, than with those of the present one. He must occupy himself more with helping others, than with helping himself. He is never careless in what he does, or says, or thinks. And, finally, he never leads his disciples along a path which is mistaken.

The Benefits and the Dangers

Suppose you are able to find a Lama like the one we have described above. What are the benefits you can expect from following him properly? Simply put, you will win each and every good thing in this and all your future lives. What are the dangers of refusing to follow him, or of following him less than properly? You will undergo a great mass of unendurable pain, in both the short term and the long. You must seek to grasp these facts fully.

लुब खुटा याद्र अत्याभाग्नी:लूब प्रथ स्थान्यां प्रयुत्त स्वाप्त स्थान्यां स्थान्य स्थान्यां स्थान्य स्

Your Lama is like the source, he is like the very root, from which every single good quality of all the different levels and paths of both the open and secret teachings spring. If you ever succeed in stopping a single personal fault, it will be because of him. If you ever manage to cultivate a single spiritual quality, any good at all, that too will come from him. The whole range of virtues, from the final attainment of secret Union on down to having a single wholesome thought, all flow from him.

यित्रः यीद्रः तत्रः श्रीः याद्रः श्रीः याद्रः याद्रः याद्रः याद्रः याद्रः याद्रः याद्रः याद्रः श्रीः याद्रः याद्रः श्रीः याद्रः याद्रः श्रीः याद्रः याद्रः श्रीः याद्रः श्रीः याद्रः याद्रः श्रीः याद्रः याद्रः श्रीः याद्रः याद्रः श्रीः याद्रः याद्र

Your Lama is also the one and only "source" in the sense of being the embodiment or actuality of all the mighty deeds, all the great good, that all the victorious Buddhas perform in their holy actions, words, and thoughts. Try now to develop this root of the path—clear faith in him or her.

If with eyes made clear by this faith you begin to see your Lama as a real Buddha, then the blessing of a real Buddha will follow in your mind-stream. It's essential therefore that you train your mind in the relevant parts described in the texts on the Steps: the reasons why you should see that your Lama is a Buddha; the reasons why you can see that your Lama is a Buddha; how to see him, and so on.

9 How to Follow Your Lama

न्द्रियापित्रेष्ठ्राप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्राप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्याप्त्रेष्ठ्र्यापत्रेष्ठ्र्यापत्रेष्ठ्रेष्ठ्र्यापत्रेष्ठ्र्यापत्रेष्ठ्यापत्रेष्ठ्रेष्ठ्र्यापत्रेष्ठ्र्यापत्रेष्ठ्यापत्रेष्ठ्यापत्रेष्ठ्रेष्ठ्यापत्रेष्ठ्यापत्रेष्ठ्रेष्ठ्यापत्रेष्रेष्ठ्यापत्रेष्ठ्यापत्रेष्ठ्रेष्

What does it mean to "follow your Lama properly?" You must understand that it means to surrender yourself completely to him or her. Here you should take yourself to him in the way of an obedient child, and with the rest of the nine attitudes described in the *Arrangement of Trunks*.

यहार विद्यो स्वापित्र विद्यो स्वापित्र विद्या के स्वापित्र विद्य के स्वापित्र विद्य के स्वापित्र विद्य के स्वापित्र विद्य के

To put it briefly, you must absolutely conduct yourself correctly in this regard; you must follow precisely every one of the classical descriptions of how to find and follow a Lama. If the cornerstone of a house—the walls of its foundation—are solid, then the house itself is solid. If the roots of a tree are planted firmly in the soil, then the branches and fruit and all the rest grow strong.

अट्टाप्तरायेष्वरायरायक्षेत्राचराय्ये प्रशास्त्र स्वाधायम् स्वाधायम् स्वाधायम् स्वाधायम् स्वाधायम् स्वाधायम् स्व

What we hope to grow is the path, in its entirety: all the Steps from recognizing the importance of the spiritual leisure and fortune of our present circumstances, on up to the attainment of secret Union itself. We must find sure and solid knowledge, we must see, that taking ourselves to our Lama properly will bring all of this about, without any difficulty at all.

यक्षात्री क्रिंग्यक्ष्यायश्चित्रक्ष्या प्राचित्रक्षात्री क्रिंग्यक्ष्यात्रेत्रक्षात्र विष्यात्रक्ष्यात्र विष्या विषयः व

The entire subject of how to follow your Lama in your thoughts is revealed in the words "first to see." Thus you must come to see your spiritual Friend as a real Buddha; and this brings us to how you should follow him in your actions.

सैयरायोशीटरातायेषुर्यः देशरातायायेषुर्यः योग्यः क्रियोशास्त्रः यः योग्यः योश्यः याद्वेतः यश्यः यस्त्रः याद्वेत योग्यः योश्यः योश्यः योग्यः योग्य

यक्षेत्र-त्रः इत्-तः

How can we please our Lama? Relative to the path which is shared, you should use the instructions found in the discussions on how to find and follow a Lama in general. Relative to the way of the secret Word, use the instructions in the *Fifty Verses on Lamas*. Both of these describe how you should, to the very best of your ability, "with all your strength," gladly take up any difficult task in any of the three doors of expression—of body, speech, or mind—in order to please him or her.

र्श्वास्त्राचा वर्गार हैं रेश में हित्या हें श्रीय स्वर्ग हित्या हिता हिता हैं से स्वर्ग हिता स्वर्ग हिता स्वर

There are different levels of how we pay homage to our Lama: to offer him or her gifts, material things; to give ourselves up to his service, his honor; and to take what he has taught us and put it into actual practice, accomplishing our spiritual goals. Each of these is higher than the one before it, and the last one is supreme.

The root text here then is saying that we must take ourselves to our Lama in a whole different number of ways, in keeping with our personal mental capacity.

योट्ट.ट.क्रे.प्ट.क्रेट.खट.ट्र्ट्ट.ज.झ्ट्य.त.ज्र्ट्ट्य.त.क्रे.येट.यीच्य.त.क्रे.यीट्ट.याच्य

And as you serve your Lama, remember. When a farmer goes to plant his seeds, whatever work he does in the field, he does for his own sake. It's not as if he is doing the field a favor. Here I am the same. It's me who hopes to

reach freedom from pain, and the state of knowing all things. To do so, I must take up certain things and give up others; but I am like a man who is blind—I am totally ignorant of which of these things are which.

My spiritual Friend is here to lead the blind; and in my service of him or her I am obliged to do anything required of me, no matter how exhausting, no matter how distasteful—so long as nothing morally wrong is involved.

And I am not to view this service as if I were laboring for someone else; on the contrary, I should not even see it as a burden, but rather as a reward: it is my great good fortune to have the opportunity. And so I must succeed in serving him or her in both my thoughts and actions, with the deepest feelings of reverence.

म् त्यर सूर्य सूर्य स्वर्थ स्वर्य स्

If our service of our Lama is good, then in all our future lives we will find ourselves taken under the care of Lamas. Then too we can count the life we have found now as the first in a long and unbroken series of lives in which we enjoy each of the eight spiritual leisures, and the ten fortunes. And there will never again be any mistake in this particular arithmetic: we will always enjoy

the exact number of circumstances needed to follow our practice of the Dharma, and so finally reach the state of perfect enlightenment.

10 The Precious Life We Have

|भेःक्षेर्-द्रमुशःभ्रुशःद्रवदःर्यः क्ष्टः। ।यशः अद्यवः अः व्यवाः मात्रशः यः द्रा

We do have all five of the spiritual fortunes that relate to one's self, as described in the following verse:

Born as a human, In a central land, And having one's faculties All complete; Not lost to the last of karma, And feeling faith for the place.

पिर्ड्स प्राप्त क्षेत्र क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र क्

Here "born in a central land" refers to a land where there exists the "core of the Dharma," meaning that there are people in the country who keep the vows of the "four attendants to the Buddha." This refers to the full ordinations for a man and a woman, along with the novice ordinations for the same. The main component of the core is the fully ordained monk.

ฆฐานารุกา

"Not lost to the last of karma" means not having collected, and then failed to clear from oneself, the karma that comes from committing one of the "immediate," heinous bad deeds.

द्यार : स्तु: क्र्याग्रुव: क्री: प्रदेश वायवा । त्याया क्री या स्तु र : स्वी र : या स्वी

The *place* from where each and every white and good thing grows is the teaching on discipline; here the word "discipline" can by extension be applied to the entire contents of the canon—the three collections of scripture—since they all function to discipline one's mind. We do then possess the fortune of having faith in the holy books.

श्चिरः क्रेश्यात्रें विशायवे मालका वर्ते राष्ट्राक्षा श्चिरः क्रेश्यात्रें विशायवे मालका वर्ते राष्ट्राक्षा विशायह्या। मालका स्वीरः

Let us examine though whether we have the five fortunes that relate to what is outside ourselves. The classic reference here is:

The Buddha is come, And taught the holy Dharma. The teaching remains, As do the ones who follow. There is compassion For the sake of others.

यविष्यः सवटः देवुः हुष्यः श्रीः वहियोः तः..
यविष्यः स्वाः कुष्यः वर्षेष्यः सः देषः वर्ष्यः वर्षः वर्षः वर्षः सः वरः सः सः वर्षः सः वरः सः वरः सः वरः सः वरः सः सः वरः सः वरः सः वरः सः वरः सः वरः सः सः वरः सः व

Here the Buddha must have come and still be present in the world. He or his direct disciples must be teaching the Dharma. The resulting teachings must also remain, and this during the period before his final passing beyond all sorrow. Certain of his disciples must observe other disciples actually achieve the four results, after he has taught them; and these disciples must undertake to follow the same practices too.

पत्रक्रित्वाः स्टारेशःगुट्याः क्रियः व्याप्ताः सर्वेदः वित्यते स्वाप्ताः स्वापताः स्

यासुरसः संयोधः ग्रीसः ने 'नया 'ने न्युवः ह्ये र 'नु 'र्थन' सः त्यसः ने रेसः यास्यः संदरः यास्यः ने रेसः यास्यः संदरः यास्यः ने रेसः यास्यः संदरः यास्यः संदरः वास्यः संवीदसः संयोधः स्वीदसः संवीदसः संवीदस

All four of the fortunes just explained have been possessed even by the likes of the monk Udayi, whereas the same cannot be said even for the Savior Nagarjuna, who lacked them in their literal form. We too have met our Lamas, who are no different from a Buddha, and they have spoken the Dharma and so on; these are a full substitute yes, but we cannot say that we have all those fortunes in their literal form. We do however enjoy all eight of the spiritual leisures; these then are our primary advantage, and it's with this fact in mind that the verse reads "life of leisure."

यालय स्तुर स्क्रीर प्रस्ति प्राप्ति स्ति स्वार्थ स्वर

What does it mean when the reference says, "There is compassion for the sake of others?" The "others" here refers to ourselves; our sponsors and Lamas and other such persons act for our sake, motivated by compassion, to see that we are provided with all the conditions that will facilitate our practice of the Dharma: they give us food, or clothes, and other necessities; They teach us the Dharma; and so on. Therefore this phrase should be understood as describing the good fortune to have around us those who give us the things we need to practice.

श्रास्त्र मुश्राणुः सूत्र प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त प्रिया प्राप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वापत स

People like you and I are forever committing non-virtuous deeds, and this is the single greatest obstacle to our reaching the state of spiritual leisure and fortune ever again. Beyond this are statements from the *Foundation Word on Vowed Morality*, and other texts, which describe how those born as animals are fewer than those born in one of the other births of misery; those born as humans are fewer than the animals; and even among humans those born in a country where the Buddha's teachings have spread are fewer still.

To be born in such a land, and then go on to actually encounter the Dharma with a mind and body so very special as the one which we now possess, is an occurrence which borders on the impossible. This shows how a life like ours is difficult to find by its very nature as well.

11 Staying Aware of Death

ग्रीशःश्र्यशा । विश्वास्तरःश्र्रीं या योष्ट्रश्राण्या । विश्वास्तरःश्रित्याः योष्ट्राः विश्वास्तरः विद्याः विश्वासः यो । विश्वासः यो विश्वासः यो विश्वासः यो । विश्वासः यो विश्वासः यो विश्वासः यो । विश्वासः यो विश्वासः यो

My body and the life in it
Are fleeting as the bubbles
In the sea froth of a wave.
Bless me first thus to recall
The death that will destroy me soon;
And help me find sure knowledge
That after I have died
The things I've done, the white or black,
And what these deeds will bring to me,
Follow always close behind,
As certain as my shadow.

Grant me then
Ever to be careful,
To stop the slightest
Wrongs of many wrongs we do,
And try to carry out instead
Each and every good
Of the many that we may.

दे.क्षेर.रेज.उत्त्रीर.ग्रीश.हेष.पवनः मिर.तर.२४.व्रच.ग्रीट.उकु.य.जाह.छेर.वर्ग्यायर. योषश्चार्यर.योज्.खेट.वर्ग्यीर.पेश.श्चेर.ठ्या.श.इ.इश.ग्रीट.वकु.य.जाह.छेर.वर्ग्यायर. श.चर्

And so we have attained this very special kind of life, with its spiritual leisure and fortune. But *my body and the life in it are fleeting*, forever changing, and every passing moment they move inexorably closer to my death.

दक्षेत्रा तस्त्रा ता त्या विका सुर त्या विका स्वाया वा स्वया त्या स्वया वा स्वया वा स्वया वा स्वया वा स्वया वा विकास क्षेत्र त्या विका सुर त्या विका सुर त्या विका विका विका विका विका स्वया विका स्वया विका स्वया विका स्वया

But that's not all—there are conditions all around me that can strike and kill me in an instant: things like illness and harmful spirits, sudden disasters, attacks upon me by the very four elements that make up my own body. They stand around me ready to snatch away my life, like a pack of dogs circling around a piece of fresh meat, lusting after it.

Still more, my body is like a *bubble in the sea froth of a wave*; it has no power to resist even some very minor harm: we can see with our own two eyes that even the prick of a thorn can lead to a person's death.

In sum, my body and life are fragile; so death will destroy me soon.

12 Dragged to the Slaughterhouse

विष्यः त्राच्या व्यक्तः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः विष

You are not long in this life Death comes quick; You step ever nearer to it With every moment that passes, Moving on like an animal Dragged to the slaughterhouse.

Your plans for today Your plans for tomorrow Will never all be filled; Let go all your thousand plans, Devote yourself to one.

You will be summoned into The awesome presence of Lord Death; The end is lying on your bed, The breathing stops, the life is gone.

And on this day, My Rinchen Drup, Nothing but the Dharma Is any help to you.

13 There is a Future Life

The master teacher of Bodong, whose name was Jikdrel Chokle Namgyal, has also said:

The existence of past and future lives can be understood as well through logical reasoning. If the human body could occur without any proper cause, then every existing object might just as well be stuffed full of human bodies. If the human body could occur without any involvement of previous consciousness, if it could come from physical matter alone, then every bit of dirt, every rock, every mountain and stream might just as well be stuffed full of human bodies. For those who deny that life goes on, hearing these lines is like being struck by a bolt of lightning.

14 Nothing Else Can Help Us Then

श्चन्द्रियाम्भूद्र्याम्भूष्याच्याम्भूत्र्याम्भूत्यम्यम्भूत्यम्यम्भूत्यम्यम्भूत्यम्भूत्र्यम्यम्भूत्यम्यम्भूत्र्यम्भूत्र्यम्यम्भूत्यम्यम्भूत्यम्यम्भूत्यम्यम्भूत्र्यम्य

Since nothing else can help then, it is essential that we give up on life and be sure to devote ourselves to death, by practicing some pure form of the Dharma, as a way to assist our future self. It's not as if, *after* you and *I have died*, the stream of our mind just stops and we turn into nothing. Rather we have no choice but to take another birth. And there are no more than two places where we can take that birth: in the higher realms of happiness, or the lower realms of misery.

दे.याद्धेश्वाचाराद् भ्रीः परायाप्तराद्याराधेरायाः वर्षे वायाद्धेश्वाः यो स्वाधिश्वाः व्यवाः विद्या

We have absolutely no control over which of the two places we go; we must follow where we are sent by the separate causes for each place, and these causes are the things we've done, the white and black, respectively.

त्रभावियात्मात्र्यात्म् अत्तर्भात्मात्म प्रमान्त्रभाविक्षः स्वान्त्रम् स्वान्त्रम्

Our mental streams contain very, very few of the causes that will take us to a higher birth; but we have a vast multitude of the causes that will lead us to one of the births of misery. Right now we are doing both white deeds, and black deeds: the good and the bad. At the moment of death, the power of one or the other will be activated, and force us over to our next birth. The seeds of the deeds which are more plentiful are the kind that are likely to be activated.

And after we cross over to our new birth, the fair or foul consequences of our virtue or our evil will *follow close behind*. These consequences can never go wrong; good must come from the good, and bad from the bad. They will attach themselves to my consciousness and pass on to wherever it goes, *as certain as my shadow*.

15 Have No Fear of Want

य्युपाणी । श्वीः संयापाळे स्थापाय स्था स्थापाय स्थापा

The most important thing is for us to follow the words of that King of the Dharma, Dromton Je:

We have little time to live, It's sure we'll not long be here. Let the world pass the time Working to feed themselves; Even the poorest know how.

Those who follow the rules of Dharma Need not worry, The knife of hunger Can never touch and kill them.

Leave this life behind; You can't work for the future life And for this one as well. The next is the more important one; Make effort in the Dharma.

वयर्य। ब्रि.सर्र्यं स्वान्त्र्यः क्ष्यं प्रत्यान्य व्याप्त्रः विष्यान्त्रः विष्यान्तः विष्यानः विष्यान्तः विष्यान्तः विष्यान्तः विष्यान्तः विष्यान्त

He says as well,

Whether you fill your belly In this life well or not, Still you will live on.

What's difficult is To meet the Dharma In your future life;

For this life then Put all your efforts Only in the Dharma.

If now you cannot do your best To do what's virtuous, Be sure that in the life beyond You will feel only pain.

16 Learning to Want Freedom

बिशायतः भूष्याम्बर्धाः मुन्ना विश्वास्त्र स्त्र स्त्र

Bless me to perceive
All that's wrong
With the seemingly good things
Of this life.
I can never get enough of them.
They cannot be trusted.
They are the door
To every pain I have.
Grant me then
To strive instead
For the happiness of freedom.

17 Who Our Real Enemy Is

श्र्म् तर्ते। नि.चिर्यात्त्रं देश्यात्रः स्या।

चन्नरः त्या। नि.चिर्यात्यं द्र्यायाः स्या।

वन्नरः त्या। नि.चिर्यात्यं क्रिं स्याप्त्रं स्थाः स्थाः विष्याः विष्यः स्थाः स्था

That highest of Victors, the Great Fifth of the Dalai Lamas, has said as well,

What happened before?

Someone has been in my mind for time with no beginning.

When was that?

There's never been a moment when they were gone.

Who are they?

I live, and live again, the mental afflictions.

And in the end?

They will leave me to rot in the ocean of suffering life, without an end in sight.

And the karma?

It comes like the wind, with all the things I never wanted.

How far?

It whips around me everywhere, and stirs great waves, the three forms of suffering.

How long?

I could wander around this sea forever; the torch would spin, and the circle of light would blaze.

What should I see?

Think on this, and see that the afflictions of the mind are the one true enemy.

What must be done?

The enemy of living for this life must die.

Who shall do it?

You will have to pretend that you are warrior enough to be the one.

When will it come?

Your foes, the afflictions in your mind, have always been there waiting, ready for the battle.

Now then?

The time has surely come: go forth now and defeat them.

केशःयाश्रुदशःयाःश्वरःविर्वरःयाःविरःयःविरःश्रुवाःयश्वयःश्वरःविरःविदःयःयः । रदःवीशःयाद्येशःयरः ग्रुशःहेःश्केदः द्व्यशःशुः यद्यवाःयवेः हेवः श्रेदशःयवेः द्व्याःयेः विदेः केदःधीयःवा

As the lines point out, there is one thing which acts as the very root of all our sufferings here in the circle of life. This is none other than the enemy of the mental afflictions, so dearly cherished by us, so close to our hearts.

18 What is Important in Life?

त्रियात श्रीया श्रीया विद्या विद्या के स्था के स्था के स्था के स्था विद्या के स्था विद्या के स्था विद्या के स्था विद्या के स्था के स्था विद्या के स्था के स्था विद्या के स्था विद्या के स्था के स्था विद्या के स्था के स्था

Listen to these descriptions of suffering life, first from the lips of the Victor, Yang Gonpa:

You can't be sure you will live, Nor fix the time you die;

This monster, the Lord of Death, Has no interest To come at your convenience.

The four elements of your physical body And your mind Could go today their separate ways;

Think about it: Can you ever feel secure, Can you ever feel at peace?

विश्वःचिःचःतः स्वीशःतः न्तः।

विश्वःचिःचःतः स्वीशःतः न्तः।

विश्वःचिःचःतः स्वीशः स्वार्थः स्वीशः स्वीशः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः

He adds other lines including:

This devil, greed, Collected money

Ignoring all comfort And hardship to do so;

But we have no power To carry even A bit with us that day.

What's the use of money, That's never there When you need it?

Our friends and family Stayed with us Through thick and thin;

We won and kept them By fitting in, And maintaining our reputation.

But there's not one Who can take one step Along with us that day.

What's the use of family, friends, Who are never there When you need them?

With toil and sweat
We built a great
And wonderful house for ourselves;

To do it we obliterated Every rule Of what to do, or say, or think.

But what happens when Lord Death decides He'll not sleep in one morning?

What's the use of a house That's never there When you need it?

क्र्या भ्रास्यानयुःर्श्वेयाःयर्श्वयाश्चरःयीशःरथ। स्याःयह्यःयायशःव्र्यश्चराःग्रीःर्यःवयाःरेःयशः भ्रितः श्वेयःयर्थः श्वेयाःयर्श्वयाश्चरःयीशःरथ। स्याःयह्यःयायशःव्र्यश्चराःग्रीःर्यःवयाःरेःयशः । प्रति रःश्वेयः क्षेत्रः यहियाशः पर्वेशः स्वर्यः योष्ट्रं यायशः व्रिस्यः योष्ट्रं यायशः व्रिस्यः योष्ट्रं यायशः

And then he says,

In the summer Great clouds crowd the sky,

And lightning comes, And lightning goes

The suffering called impermanence Drags our life Downhill;

Dispense with the sense Of permanence, Of feeling prepared.

ब्रुंकिक्यः मुंकिक्यः मुं

The rain brings it on, The fortuitous moment, When everything is just right,

And a rainbow comes, And a rainbow goes

The suffering called impermanence Drags our happiness Downhill;

Dispense with Looking your best, And strutting around.

स्यात्तरः र्रेयाः यर्जातः व्यात्रः योषाः द्र्या । व्यात्रः द्र्यायात्रः वर्त्रः योगात्रः वर्षः वर्षः वर्षः वर् । व्यात्तरः र्रेयाः पर्जातः वर्षः वर्ष

A sudden sound Brings it on,

And an echo comes, And an echo goes

The suffering called impermanence Drags our fame Downhill;

Dispense with The hope for greatness, The hope for a name.

यक्षः क्र्री विष्यान्य स्वान्यत्वः स्वान्य स्वान्य स्वान्यः स्वान

They travel to the big city To sell their wares, And stop in some hotel,

The guest comes in the morning, The guest leaves in the eve

The suffering called impermanence Drags our friends Downhill;

Dispense with hoping To fit in with your friends And family.

In the summertime the bees Labor and build up Their hives,

But anyone can see How they are wiped out In an instant

The suffering called impermanence Drags our food and money Down the hill.

Dispense with trying To gather together All this money and food.

19 Finding the Path to Freedom

योध्याः अर्ह्यः विश्वास्त्र प्राप्ताः स्त्रीः यात्याः । विष्याः विश्वास्त्र स्त्रः । । यद्भः व स्त्रः व स्त्रः

Nowhere does it say Anything else but this: If you hope to develop

Insight, the training
Of wisdom well,
You must find quietude,
That of concentration.

It says as well That if you wish to develop Pure single-pointed mind,

You must have the training Of morality; And this is fine advice.

र्यात्र क्ष्म। यया । प्रत्योश के क्ष्मावश यो प्रत्या । क्ष्मावश्या पर्ये प्रत्या । व्याप्त क्ष्मावश्या । प्रत्ये व्याप्त क्ष्या । प्रत्ये क्ष्मावश्या । प्रत्ये क्ष्मावश्ये क्ष्ये क्ष्मावश्ये क्ष्ये क्ष्ये क्ष्मावश्ये क्ष्मावश्ये क्ष्मावश्ये क्ष्

Some brave souls Claim they'll keep A lot of different vows,

But it's oh so common To see them smash Whatever pledges they've made.

The way of the holy Is to strive To maintain their morality pure,

Exactly as They have agreed To do so.

Once you see The truth in this, Then use your watchfulness,

Constantly check Your thoughts, words and deeds To stop any wrong to come.

Recollect yourself, Take the greatest care, Have a sense of shame, And consideration;

Use them on
The horse of the senses
When he mistakes the way.
Use your strength
To rein him in,
For this is the state of mind

That you can bring
To focus and stay
On any virtuous object

Solidly, Whatever you want, However you wish it to be;

And this is why They sing the praises Of morality as the way

To reach one-pointedness of mind.

20 Start with an Ethical Way of Life

The essential points of the entire *teaching of the* victorious *Buddha*, the meaning of the contents of the three collections of the Word, all this is included within three precious, extraordinary forms of training: the trainings of morality, of meditative concentration, and wisdom. The crux on which the latter two trainings turn, their basis, *their root* and the ground they stand upon, is in the main a single item: morality, in the form of the various vows of freedom. As the great Panchen Lama, Lobsang Chukyi Gyaltsen has said,

योर्ट्-तटु-योवे-अम् तर्या ।

योर्ट्-तटु-योवे-अम् तर्या ।

योर्ट्-तटु-योवे-अम् तर्या ।

योर्ट्-तटु-योवे-अम् तर्या ।

योर्ट्-त्या ।

योर्ट्-तटु-योवे-अम् तर्या ।

योर्ट्-त्या ।

योर्ट-त्या ।

It all begins
When you think to yourself
"It won't hurt much

If I break a few Of these minor vows In a minor way";

Before too long You have gone against A great many of your vows.

If you really think about it, This kind of attitude Is like a butcher

Who comes to Rip out the life Of your future higher birth.

यक्षैर्रे, रे. वर्ग्य, य. जन्म, य्रम, मेर्ट्स, मेर्ट्स, प्रमेर, प्रमे

The point here is that, if something so small as breaking a single minor vow can escalate so far, then needless to say when we amass a collection of even greater transgressions it's only proper that it would eventually lead us precisely to one of the three lower realms—to a kind of pain which is totally beyond our ability to withstand it.

21 Reach the Wish for Enlightenment

पर-विद-श्री-अर्केर-खुट-प्राहे-प्रविद-त्र्य । । सर-युर-प्रयो प्राप्त-ग्राह-ते-प्रयाप्त । । स्विद-स्वाप्त । । स्विद-स्वाप्त । स्विद-स्वाप्त । । स्विद्य-स्वाप्त । । स्विद-स्वाप्त । स्विद-स्वाप्त । स्विद-स्वाप्त । स्विद-स्वाप्त । । स्विद-स्वाप्त । स्विद-स्वाप्त । । स्विद-स्वाप्त । स्विद-स्वाप्त । स्विद-स्वाप्त । स्विद-स्वाप्त । स्विद-स्त । । स्विद-स्विद-स्वाप्त । । स्विद-स्वाप्त । । स्विद-स्वाप्त । स

I have slipped and fallen
Into the sea
Of this suffering life;
Bless me to see
That every living being,
Every one my own mother,
Has fallen in too.
Grant me then
To practice this highest
Wish for enlightenment,
To take on myself
The task of freeing them all.

दशःस्वाःतरःवश्चित्राश्चेशःब्रुश्यः । विष्यःभिवद्यःश्वेशःश्चेशःश्चे। ।देःदेःदेः ।देःवःवावःहेःवश्चिशःब्रुश्यःव। ।वश्यःभिवद्यःवश्यश्चेःग्वःवगरःश्चे। ।देःदेःदेः दशःस्वाःतरःवश्चित्रःश्चेशःब्रुशःवश्चेशःवादः।

Now the Sutra that Viradatta Requested says,

Were the merit of the Wish for enlightenment To take on some kind of physical form It would fill the reaches of space itself And then spill over farther still.

विश्वास्य विश्वास्य स्था । विष्य स्था । विश्वास्य विश्वास्य विश्वास्य विश्वास्य विश्वास्य । विश्वास्य विश्वास्य विश्वास्य विश्वास्य । विश्वास्य । विश्वास्य विष

The book called The Bodhisattva's Life too has lines like the following:

All the other Kinds of virtue Are like a bamboo tree;

They give their fruits And then they always Die and go away.

But the Wish For Buddhahood Is an evergreen that always

Gives forth its fruits, And instead of fading Flourishes even more.

22 Take and Keep the Bodhisattva Vows

र्श्चितःतरः चुर्रः खुर्राः श्चिरः पर्दः श्चिरः पर्दः श्चिरः यो विद्यान्त्रः । विद्यान्तरः अर्थेटः द्याः स्वान्य । विद्यान्तरः अर्थेटः द्याः स्वान्य । विद्यान्तरः अर्थेटः द्याः स्वान्य । विद्यान्तरः । विद्यान्तरः अर्थेटः द्याः स्वान्य । विद्यान्तरः । विद्यानः । विद्यानः । विद्यान्तरः । विद्यानः । विद्यानः

Bless me to see clearly
That the Wish itself
Is not enough,
For if I'm not well trained
In the three moralities,
I cannot become a Buddha.
Grant me then
A fierce resolve
To master the vows
For children of the Victors.

दर्गीर.जा ग्री.क्रॅश.ता.चर्डिर.क्री.क्रीव.श्रमश्रयतर.त्रीय.येया.जारा। श्रमश्रा.येश.येश. ग्री.क्रॅश.ता.चर्डिर.क्री.क्रीव.यमीट.तर.येश.ग्रीटा। श्रमश.यमीट.वश.क्रि.यंश. प्रतिर.क्रंश.तप्रतिर.ता.चर्लिव.श्रमश्रयत्व.यी.प्रतिर.विश्व.ग्रीटा। श्रमश.यमीट.वश्व.यंश्व. प्रतिर.क्रंश.तप्रतिर.ता.चर्लिव.श्रमश्रयत्व.यी.प्रतिर.वश.क्रिंग.यंश.

Suppose you are able, as described above, to reach *the Wish* for enlightenment, where you truly hope to achieve the state of a Buddha in order to help every living being. This *itself* is not enough. Once you do reach the Wish, you must still take on the vows of these bodhisattva princes and princesses, these sons

and daughters of the victorious Buddhas. And then you must train yourself in giving and the other five perfections. Otherwise there is no way you could ever come to enlightenment.

23 Reach Perfect Meditation, on Emptiness

मुशः स्ट्रियशा विश्वः तदुः र्श्वैः योः योष्ठयोः योशः यक्षेषा त्या विश्वाप्रश्चः स्थ्रयोः श्रेष्ट्रः चीरः दीः दीयः यद्यः त्यशा विश्वेरः दीः स्थ्रीः यरः स्थिरः यः श्रीः यरः स्थिरः यः श्रीः यरः स्थिरः यः स्थितः यः स्थि

Grant that I may quickly gain
The path where quietude
And insight join together;
One which quiets
My mind from being
Distracted to wrong objects,
The other which analyzes
The perfect meaning
In the correct way.

The verse here speaks of objects which are "wrong"; this should be understood as referring to objects which are mistaken, in a particular sense. One example would be trying to develop meditative concentration by fixing the mind on a short stick of wood, as some non-Buddhists advocate. We must seek to "quiet" the mind—that is, stop the mind—from being distracted to these types of wrong, external objects.

There are Tibetan schools of the past too which have taught that meditative quietude consisted of not thinking about anything at all, just keeping the mind in some dark state of dullness. The high state of perfect insight then they explain as moving in this stupor to a realization of the pure and simple emptiness of the deceptive nature of the mind—except they describe this emptiness as what you come to when you analyze whether or not what we call the "mind" consists of any shape or color, and then fail to find that it's any such thing.

য়ূবা৵৻ঀ৵৻ঀ৾য়৵৻ঀ৻৸৴৻ য়ৢঀ৾৵৻ড়ঀ৻ঀ৾য়৵৻ঀড়ৣ৻৴ঀ৾৵৻য়য়ড়৻য়য়৻ড়ৢ৾ঀ৻য়ৣ৾৻য়য়৻ৼঀ৾৻ৼৢড়ৢ৻৻য়য়৻ৼৢয়৻ড়ৢ৻ড়ৢ৻৻

But none of these ideas is correct; rather, we must follow texts such as the briefer and more expanded explanations of the Steps to the path composed by the Lord himself, where he presents the instructions given by the Great Regent, Loving One, in his own work entitled *Separating the Middle and the Extremes*.

त्रंथः त्रं श्रेश्चरः व्यव्यात् व्याप्त्रं त्र्यात् व्याप्ते व्यापते व्याप्ते व्याप्ते व्यापते व्यापत

These treatises describe how one progresses in steps by eliminating the five problems to meditation, taking the eight corrective actions, and achieving the nine mental states, complete with their four different modes.

न्योः पर्यः न्य्येयाश्चः इसः यादः स्ट्राः लियाः याद्वेयाः तुः याद्ययः प्राः याद्वेयः स्थाः यादः स्थाः यादः स्थाः यादः स्थाः यादः स्थाः याद्वेयः स्थाः यादः स्थाः यादः स्थाः याद्वेयः स्थाः यादः स्थाः याद्वेयः स्थाः स्याद्वेयः स्थाः स्थाः

One thus attains a kind of bliss, a total pliancy of body and mind, which comes from staying in one-pointed meditation on any virtuous object one chooses. This then leads to what we call meditative *quietude*.

च्रम्पत्रः स्वाम्यक्ष्मः यन्त्राम्यम् स्वाम्यक्षमः व्याम्यक्षमः व्यामः व्याम्यक्षमः व्यामः व्या

The phrase "perfect meaning" here in the verse refers to a particular object: the fact that nothing has any nature of its own. A kind of wisdom used for examining the nature of something analyzes this object in a certain correct way, and by the end of its analysis comes to a definite conclusion. The mind stays in meditation upon this truth, such that the analysis and a fixation on this object join and work together. This brings on a feeling of bliss that fills the mind completely—and one has thus achieved what we call "perfect insight."

We seek to practice this process, where quietude and insight are no longer separated one from the other. When we recite the verse we are asking our Lama to *grant that*, as a result, *we may quickly gain* within our minds that exceptional form of realization where meditative quietude and perfect insight join together.

24 Enter the Secret Way

ब्रीशः स्ट्रेंचर्या विश्वःतरुः र्सूः गाःचारुचाःचाश्वरसः हो। ।श्चराःच च स्श्वेः च्रुंदुः यह्वाः द्वाश्वाः नश्चराः ने स्वाः नित्रः स्वाः विश्वरः स्ट्रेंद्वाः यसः च्रितः ।श्वरः श्वरः यसः श्वेद्वः यहिषः द्वाः याः विश्वाः याः ग्वरः स्वाः विश्वरः स्ट्रेंद्वः विश्वरः स्वाः विश्वरः स

Grant that once I've practiced well The paths shared and become A vessel that is worthy,

I enter with perfect ease
The Way of the Diamond,
Highest of all ways,
Holiest door to come inside
For the fortunate and the good.

र् अंट क्या वाया र स्वाया प्राया क्षेत्र या प्राया क्षेत्र या श्री या क्षेत्र या वित्र प्राया वित्र या वित्र प्राया वित्र या वित्र या

You must first have *practiced well* the general Steps of *the path* which are "shared" by both the open and the secret teachings; that is, which are so important for both that you could never succeed without them. More specifically, you must have trained your mind well in the three principal paths: renunciation, the Wish for enlightenment, and the correct view of reality. On top of this you must have as your motivation a very fierce desire to reach enlightenment for the sake of every living being. These then make you a *vessel that is worthy to enter* the Way of the Secret Word.

25 The Way of the Diamond

दह्या,रेज्ञ्य,कुर.। क्ष्य.मुश्रश्चर,देवुर.त.मुज्यश्च्या,ध्युः भक्ष्य,ध्यः स्था,थ्यः स्या,थ्यः स्था,थ्यः स्यः स्था,थ्यः स्था,थ

When this time has come you must surely enter the "Way of the Diamond"; which is to say, this Way of the Secret Word. It is the highest of all the "different ways"—the ways of the listeners, the self-made Buddhas, and the bodhisattvas. What makes the Diamond Way higher is that is has certain unique features, such as using the goal of practice as a path to the goal.

र्देहिते: अत्रित्र निर्मा हिन्य प्राप्ति क्षेत्र क्

The Tibetan word for "diamond" here is *dorje*. This is a translation of the Sanskrit word *vajra*—a term that has the basic meaning of "inseparable." The "diamond" here is the actual diamond of the holy mind of the Buddha; that deep state of meditation which can only be compared to a diamond. You can also say it refers to that one type of wisdom which is the inseparable combination of what we call "method" (great bliss) and "wisdom" (emptiness).

त्य्र्रात्माय्येत्रावेत्। य्य्र्माय्येत्रावेत्। य्य्र्मायः स्वित्राचेत्रायः स्वित्। य्य्र्मायः स्वित्। स्वित्

The word for "way" here has a meaning of "conveyance"—something you get on and ride to reach a destination. The "diamond way" mentioned here is thus a kind of "diamond conveyance" as well. In the way of the perfections, one must carry on his practice for three "countless" eons in order to reach Buddhahood. This takes so long that it's almost as if you were walking on foot, rather than travelling on any sort of conveyance.

If though you use the Diamond Way, the Way of the Secret Word, no such length of time is needed: you can attain the state of secret Buddhahood, Union, in the length of but one lifetime—even in one of the very short kinds of life that we have here now, in the age of degeneration. In fact it's possible to reach Buddhahood in no more than three years and three months. This way then is a method which is incredibly deep and quick; more like riding a fine racehorse.

26 The Holiest Door

चैवा.श्रश्रातालाचे वाशेट्या हा. स्राचा. तार्थः त्या. स्राच्या स्

What is the "holiest" (meaning highest) door, or gateway, for bodhisattvas for these people who are so fortunate and good—to come inside this path? It is receiving the four empowerments of the Diamond Way, the Way of the Secret Word, and receiving them perfectly, so that they are sure to plant the seeds for the four bodies of a Buddha.

What we are requesting in this verse then, said our Lama, is that our Lama grant us the ability to enter, with perfect ease, the profound path just described: the Way of the Diamond, the unsurpassed form of the Secret Word.

27 Purity: the Way to Secret Buddhahood

Bless me to know
With genuine certainty
That when I've entered thus,
The cause that gives me
Both the attainments

Is keeping my pledges And vows most pure. Grant me then To always keep them Even if it costs my life.

त.रे.डु.कु.। इ.लट.योशट.क्योश.रू.हु.ब्रयो.त.डु.कूर.२ट.री.चीर.थश.रेयट.यखे.लुयोश.तर.ब्र्य.

Now suppose *you have entered thus*—you have made yourself a vessel which is worthy of the Diamond Way, the Way of the Secret Word; and you have received, in the proper manner, the four different empowerments. If you then follow the correct method you can gain *both the attainments*: the one we call the "ultimate," and the one we describe as "shared."

अर्क्रवाची नर्द्रशः चुवाकी र्स्त्रेवायवे बुदावह्मा कुवाव र्स्ट्रो वक्ष्य विषय प्राप्त विषय विषय

The ultimate attainment is reaching secret Union, where there is nothing more to be learned. This is the state of the Victorious One, the Keeper of the Diamond.

रयाची श्रेमाञ्चर मरासर्चीयाया रे.ती श.त्यामाञ्चरता पर्देर.तासी स्वार श्रेर्ये.की.रेर्स्य वीयः यद्याया हुर्या स.त्याची स्वार्य श्रेर्याया पर्देर.तासी रेर्याची श्रेमाञ्चरी मरासर्चीयाया रे.ती श.त्यामाञ्चरता पर्देर.तासी

The shared attainments are those such as the "eight great attainments." These include the special powers known as the sword, the eye ointment, swift feet, the pill, passing underground, disappearing, taking essence, and sky walking.

इस्रायर प्राप्तर प्रश्रुट पारे प्राप्त । स्वाप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त । प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त । प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त । प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त । प्राप्त प्राप्त । प्राप्त प्राप्त । प्राप्त

What then is it that can *give* you these attainments? Their *cause* or foundation, the very support that holds them all up, is one thing, and only one: to *keep most pure* every one of the root and secondary *pledges and vows* which you took upon yourself when you were granted the empowerments.

र्म्याश्राणीः तात्राः श्रम्याः श्रीः तो त्र स्त्राः त्र स्त्राः त्र स्त्राः स्त्राः स्त्राः स्त्राः स्त्राः स् प्रतः मेत्राः स्त्राः प्रतः त्र प्रतः स्त्राः स्त्

The immense power of the purity of your pledges and vows will lead you over the string of your future lives to attain a very special kind of life, where you can practice the secret teachings. You will always meet an authentic Diamond Master—one who teaches you the secret way. And you will always find yourself able to put the secret paths into actual practice.

क्रुंद्र,त्र, र्र्ड, डि. ५कर, योष्ठ, योष्ठर, यदु, ष्राहूर, ग्री. क्रिंदे, ज्या । ...भ्री. य. यर्थे, येष्ठा । देशत, श्रव्यत, श्री. य. यर्थे, येष्वे, य्येष्ठ, य्येष्ठा । ...भ्री. य. यर्थे, येष्ठा । देशत, श्रव्यत, श्री. य. यर्थे, येष्वे, य्येष्ठ, य्येष्ठा ।

As such you will, without a doubt, be able to reach total enlightenment within seven lifetimes, or in sixteen at the very most. On this our Teacher, the Keeper of the Diamond, has spoken the following in the *Tantra of the Treasure of Secrets*:

लुशःश्चे,यःयर्थः त्यःश्चे। ।श्चायश्चेश्वश्चरा ।श्चे,ररःश्चे,यरःरयरः पश्चेरः वर्धेर। ।रु

If the person is granted A pure empowerment,

Then life after life Will the power be given.

Within seven lives The goal is reached,

Even if the person Does not meditate.

28 The Essence of Secret Practice

चलुत्रःश्चीतःतरः चुत्रःश्चीत्रःश्चित्रःश्चित्रः मक्ष्याः यात्रः यात्यः यात्रः यात्रः

Bless me next
To realize precisely
The crucial points
Of both the stages,
The essence of
The secret ways.
Grant me then
To practice as
The Holy One has spoken,
Putting all my effort in
And never leaving off
The Practice of the Four Times,
Highest that there is.

यश्चिर-रमार्श्वभावरायदेश्वी विद्यान्तरायदेश्वी विद्यानस्ति विद्यानस्ति

One may wonder, "Suppose I am able to maintain my vows and pledges; what must I do after that?" The highest of Victors, Kelsang Gyatso, has spoken the following:

The point

May be birth or death or the state between them.

The time

Most important for planting their seeds is now.

The way

To transform them is the practice of creation and completion.

The refuge

You must learn is the three final bodies themselves.

भवतः नयाः व्याः चर्त्वेदः न्याः न्याः व्याः व । इत्राः न्याः व्याः चर्त्वेदः व्याः न्याः व्याः व

What's being said here is that, first of all, you must continue to keep each and every one of the secret vows and pledges, as explained above. Then you must practice the very *essence* of the great sea *of the secret ways*. Here first is the stage of creation, which is exemplified by a number of methods.

We tend to see things in an ordinary way, we take them to be no more than what they seem to us; we tend to grasp this way to the place where we live, to our own body, to the things we own and use, and to things like the parts that make up us, and the world: what we call the "heaps," the "categories," and the "doors of sense." We have also always had to undergo an ordinary birth, ordinary death, and ordinary passage between death and birth.

तक्र-त्य-त्रीन्यत्रात्रभानम्भेन्यत्रः स्थान्यत्रभान्तः । याविजात्मस्यात्रम्यः स्थान्यत्रभ्यः स्थान्यत्रभ्यः स्थान्यत्रभ्यः स्थान्यत्रभ्यः स्थान्यत्रभ्यः स्थान्यस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्यानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्यानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्य स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थानस्थः स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थानस्थः स्थानस्थानस्थानस्थानस्थः स्थानस्य स्थानस्थानस्य स्थानस्थः स्थानस्थानस्थानस्थानस्थानस्य स्थानस्थानस्थानस्य स्थानस्य स्थानस्य स्थानस्य स्थानस्य स्थानस्थानस्य स्थानस्य स्थानस्य स्थानस्य स्थानस्य स्थानस्य स्थानस्य स्थानस्य स्थानस्य स्यानस्य स्थानस्य स्य स्थानस्य स्थानस्य स्थानस्य स्थानस्य स्थानस्य स्य स्थानस्य स

In the stage of creation we transform all these seemingly ordinary things and events; we turn them into the three bodies of a victorious Buddha. We take whatever presents itself to us: all that appears to our eyes, all that reaches our ears, and all that comes in our thoughts, and we make it show itself as total and absolute purity, as a galaxy of perfection, as great celestial mansions, as holy angels, as a magical dance put on by our Lamas.

४:सुट पश्चें अया र्व अया के दा के राष्ट्र आहे । या हु आशे विषया या विषया या र्व अप दर । बेअआ या अवा रे या यो दे दें वे अर्थे टायर्व अया विषया अर्थे के वें राव विषया या स्था युः ।

As for the stage of completion, some mistakenly equate it with concentrating solely on a meditation that involves the various channels and winds, and which results in achieving a rather ordinary kind of inner heat. Others make the error of thinking it is some high spiritual path when you succeed in nothing more than perceiving how the essence of the mind is that it is aware and knowing.

The real stage of completion though is not like this; rather, you take the various winds which course through the body because of one's ordinary conceptual thinking, and redirect them all into the central channel—in a three-fold process of entrance, residence, and absorption. As a result a primal state of mind arises, the clear light, the wisdom which is simultaneous. And the power of this wisdom makes all of existence appear as the play of bliss and emptiness.

In the path of the stage of completion then we meditate over and over on this and related practices, until finally we are able to bring about the Union of the holy body and holy mind: we reach the state of the Lord of the Secret World, the Keeper of the Diamond.

The Asian Classics Institute Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Reading Seven: The Proof of Future Lives, Part One

The following selection on the proof of future lives is excerpted from Light for the Path to Freedom (Thar-lam gsal-byed, ACIP electronic text S5450), written by Gyaltsab Je Darma Rinchen (1364-1432), an eminent disciple of the great Tsongkapa (1357-1419). The text is an explanation of the Commentary on Valid Perception (Pramana Varttika, ACIP text T4210), composed by Master Dharmakirti in about 650 AD.

1 The Purpose of Logic: Not Judging Others

विश्वस्था सर्थः श्री सर्थः विश्वस्था प्रस्ति स्थान्य विश्वस्था । विश्वस्थाः स्थाः स

Here is the third division, [on the purpose served by the reasoning where one proves the non-existence of something which does not appear]. A sutra states the following:

I or someone like myself can judge a person, but no normal person should judge another, for he will fall.

This statement itself expresses the purpose of the reasoning. What the Buddha is saying here is that:

Without being able to see the real condition, you should never say anything even close to "This person has such and such faults. This person hasn't the least good quality"—or "He or she has some good qualities, but nothing more than that."

स्व-त्र-विद्रा स्व-त्र-विद्रा प्रम्य-विद्रा प्र

We never know who might be a holy being, and every open and secret scripture there is says that the very finest way to end up in an unbearable birth within the realms of misery is to speak badly about a holy being. Every person who has any intelligence should therefore act with extreme caution in this regard; treat such matters as though you were walking on the edge of a great pit of glowing embers, innocently covered with powder of ash.

य.शह्याश्री । भ्री.म्.मिथ्य.ट्या.जा.ट्या.कॅट.श्रीट.यप्प.भावेश.ययट.श्री्य.यह्ट.ग्री.श्री.य.थेट.टी.यिश. वट.जा.त्ययं.ता.ट्ट.यट्ट.यद्व.श्रीश्रम्थ.ट्ट.क्य.तप्प.यी.प्यूश्राचाह्ट.ग्री.श्री.य.थेट.टी.यीश. विस्त्र.ग्री.शह्र.र्यट.प्रेय.पर्योजा.ग्री.यिथेट.उट्ट.ट्या.ग्रीश.श्रमश.व्य.वश्रमश.

The implication suggested by the sutra above, and by the great treatises which comment upon it, is that we must try to keep an attitude of wanting to help all living creatures, of wanting to assure their happiness. So try to remain in that pure vision where you see only pure good in other people. If you are not capable of this, then at least it would be nice if you could try to speak badly of others a little less than you do now.

2 A Bit on the History of Buddhist Logic

The next selection is from the English introduction to the Jewel of the True Thought (Tsad-ma dgongs-rgyan, ACIP text S0023), a modern commentary on valid perception by Geshe Yeshe Wangchuk, an eminent scholar from Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery.

Subject of the Work

The study of valid perception is of vital importance in Buddhist philosophy, for it is this perception which allows us to determine the real nature of the world around us and thereby escape pain, whether it be in the form of a mild headache, or anxiety, or any undesirable object at all, on up to death itself.

This real nature of the world must be perceived not only with our direct physical and mental senses, but by indirect methods such as reasoning, which allows our minds to see important concepts such as the benefit of being moral. Therefore the study of perception is tied to the study of reasoning, or logic—and these form the core of the subject matter of the *Commentary on Valid Perception*, the classical text which this book explains.

The Commentarial Tradition

The Commentary on Valid Perception (Pramāṇavārttika, or Tsad-ma rnam-'grel) is a work in four chapters by the Indian Buddhist master, Dharmakīrti. As with many early Buddhist sages, we know little of his life or even the dates that he lived; Western scholars place him at around 630 AD, although even this is uncertain. The "valid perception" in the title of his masterwork refers to another treatise, the Compendium on Valid Perception (Pramāṇasamuccaya, or Tsadma kun-btus), and Master Dharmakīrti's text is actually a defense of this piece.

The *Compendium* was itself composed by Master Dignāga, who is considered the father of the Buddhist logic traditions and is dated by Western scholars at around 440 AD, although again there is considerable uncertainty, and according to tradition he was a direct teacher of Master Īśvarasena, who is said to have been the direct teacher of Master Dharmakīrti.

The philosopher Dignāga was for his part commenting upon the concepts of perception and logic presented in the teachings of Śākyamuni Buddha, who lived 500 BC. And so the lineage goes from the Buddha, to Master Dignāga, to Master Dharmakīrti, and then on to the early Indian explanations of Master Dharmakīrti, including his own autocommentary.

Looking backwards from our present time, it is typical for a modern Tibetan commentator of the Gelukpa tradition to base his work on one of the monastic textbooks, typically written in the 17th or 18th century for the curriculum of a specific monastic college. These textbooks are themselves based on a preceding generation of commentaries composed in the 15th century by Tsongkapa the Great (1357-1419) or by one of the scholars of his immediate school.

Here two important works are the *Jewel of Reasoning (Tsad-ma rigs-rgyan)* of the First Dalai Lama, Gyalwa Gendun Drup (1391-1474), and *Light on the Path to Freedom (Thar-lam gsal-byed)* by Gyaltsab Je (1362-1432), who was the great first regent of Je Tsongkapa's school. These texts are based on the Indian commentaries to Master Dharmakīrti's work, and thus the entire commentarial tradition stretches through 25 centuries, from Śākyamuni Buddha up to the great Tibetan philosophical masters of our own time.

3 A Chart on the Levels of Reality

The following chart was compiled from various Tibetan sources by Geshe Michael Roach.

Deductive valid perception That based on belief a hide good	That unerring, fresh Those dee perception which perceives which ca a hidden object by using a only begood reason based on belief. scripture.	That unerring, fresh Those deeply hidden object perception which perceives which can be established those which say, "Giving a hidden object by using a only by authorative morality leads to abundance, and good reason based on belief. scripture. Rocality leads to abundance, and morality leads to happiness." They are unerring about what they teach, because they are scripture which has been confirmed with the three different tests.	Consider scriptures such as those which say, "Giving leads to abundance, and morality leads to happiness." They are unerring about what they teach, because they are scripture which has been confirmed with the three different tests.
Deductive valid perception That based on convention a hidden good convention a conve	7.77	unerring, fresh Those objects which are Consider the "portrait of the tion which perceives decided on nothing more rabbit." You can say it's the mobject by using a than whether we choose moon, because it's something you can think tion,	Consider the "portrait of the rabbit." You can say it's the moon, because it's something you can think up.

A Chart on the Levels of Reality (English version)

Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One Reading Seven

धेर, के था हे था प्रया	धैर्दक्षियविद्वायायहेब्द्वाया रट्योयावयाचुर्मेयायुर्या मासर्द्रशेयक्षुयवेत्वस्या	दीन'हु'र्झेना'ग्रुर'य'व्युद'र्डब' ग्रीब'ग्रुच'य	क्रुकायकार्वात्कार्क्चेन्विक्रका गुकायन्। विकार्क्यमकागुःवुदः क्रेकाउद्या कत्यमित्रक्वयुद्धेः र्नेकायकाक्यम्पर्यक्षित्विः यामकुकाग्नुकान्यमायदेःवुदः धेकायदेःधुका
ন্রদাম'যের ইম'ব্যদ্রা	यामकायदे हमकाष्पद्रप्तायः बहुदाद्वार्यास्याचीयाव्यायः भ्रामा बह्युरायाम्बरात्यस्यद्वायदेः देवाया	वर्नि य र्रह्मा यीका प्रविद्या थ।	भेजेंद्र उद्य के बार उद्या स्था ज्ञा या के बा ज्ञा बा या के दि प्र कि या प्र वि में के के के बार के प्र के प्र विक्षेत्र ।

A Chart on the Levels of Reality (Tibetan version)

4 Master Dignaga's Opening Statement

For the next selection we return to Geshe Yeshe Wangchuk's Jewel of the True Thought.

This chapter begins from the second major point of the outline to the entire work; this is the explanation of what it is we seek to perceive: freedom and the state of all-knowing, and the path that will take us there. Here there are two divisions—the main subject, and certain secondary subjects.

| १८८: में त्या मुख्य क्षेत्र द्वेत्र स्थ्वेत्र स्थ्वेत्र स्थ्या द्वेत्य द्वे

There are three parts to the main subject; these are showing what it was that Master Dignaga stated, describing how the author of the *Commentary* explained what he stated, and demonstrating the true intent of each.

प्रमा प्रमा

Here is the first. The following is the classical statement by Master Dignaga:

वित्रस्य सुन्य प्रवित्र प्रवित्य प्रवित्र प्रवि

I bow down to the One who turned correct, Who helps all beings, the Teacher, The one who went to bliss, And our Protector.

And now out of love For those mistaken in their logic I shall explain the right way To establish correct perception.

विश्वासक्ति पहिंद्र प्रदान स्थित । प्रतास्त्र । प्रतास । विश्वास । प्रतास । प

As elucidated in the *Light on the Path to Freedom*, these lines present the offering of praise and the pledge to compose the work. . .

5 Proving that the Buddhas are Totally Correct

We read again from the Jewel of the True Thought:

यक्षेत्र.तत्। वक्षत्र.तत्। वियातःक्ष्यःयक्षेत्र.ताय्यः। अयोकःक्ष्याःयोःक्षेत्रःत्रःक्षेत्रःतःत्रक्षेत्रःत्रःक्षेत्रःत्रःक्षेत्रःत्रःक्षेत्रःत्रःक्षेत्रःत्रःक्षेत्रःत्रःक्षेत्रःत्रःक्षेत्रःत्रःक्षेत्रःत्रःक्षेत्रःत्रःक्षेत्रःत्रःक्षेत्रःत्रःक्षेत्रःत्रःक्षेत्रःत्रःक्षेत्रःत्रःक्षेत्रःत्रःकष्ठित्रःत्रःत्रःत्रःकष्ठित्रःत्र

Proving that the Able One is totally correct has two parts. The first is to show what path it was that He came by; this involves the forward order. The second is to show the evidence to establish that he did come this way; this involves the reverse order.

क्रेन्न्र व्या क्रिया क्रया क्रिया क्रय क्रिया क्र

The first of these has three parts of its own. The first is identifying a typical example of a person who is totally correct, by explaining the meaning of the words "Who turned correct." The second is to identify the definition of a person who is totally correct, which is done by explaining the remaining four elements of the statement. And the third is to identify the path by which one travels to this state.

पद्मन्यं । प्रासं व्या अर्धन्ते प्रत्या अर्धन्ते प्रत्या श्विपायय । श्वपायय । श्विपायय । श्वपायय । श्विपायय । श्वपायय । श्विपायय ।

The first of these has as well two sections. The first is the definition of correct perception in general. The second is a demonstration that this definition does moreover apply to the Able One. Our discussion of the definition itself will proceed in two steps: the essence of the definition, and a detail of the definition.

हिंदर से त्या अर्क के देश देश माली प्रतास के का मिया के का सामित स्था के के देश के देश मिया के के स्था के के देश मिया के के स्था के के देश मिया के के स्था के के स्था मिया के के स्था के के सामित स्था के स्था मिया के के सामित स्था के स्था मिया के के सामित स्था के सामित स्था के सामित सामित

The essence of the definition is itself divided into the definition, a typical example, and establishing that the definition applies to this example. For the definition we will first have to identify what it means to be "unerring," then refute that it might not be comprehensive, and finally refute that it could be too comprehensive.

१भ्रे:श्रुप्तः देशम्ब्रुट्यायाः स्वाययाः १र्द्रप्तः मश्रुप्तः याद्यः याद्यः याद्यः याद्यः याद्यः याद्यः याद्यः १भ्रे:श्रुप्तः याद्यः याद्य १भ्रे:श्रु

The identification of what it means to be "unerring" is found in two and a half lines of the root text:

Correct perception is a state of mind unerring; To be in a condition able to perform a function Is what "unerring" means.

यः केन् स्योः विकायान्। कन् स्योः स्यात्रे स्यात्ये स्यात्रे स्यात्ये स्यात्रे स्यात्रे स्यात्रे स्यात्रे स्या

The thing that correct perception undertakes to perceive is the existence of and the means for a person to attain a birth in the higher realms, as well as definite good. The Able One is the one being who is unerring with regard to all of these things; and so, if you should wonder how correct perception is defined, we can state that "a fresh **state of mind which is unerring**" is the definition of correct perception.

And what is the meaning of "unerring"? Suppose you perceive something as being **able to perform the function** of cooking or burning something else. Your perception is "unerring" when this thing does actually exist in the **condition** you have perceived it to be.

6 Details of Correct or Valid Perception

The next selection again comes from Jewel of the True Thought:

ानिश्रेश्वास्त्रस्त्र स्त्रेत्र श्री श्री स्त्र स्त्र

. . .Here secondly is a detail of the definition, which is indicated in six lines from the root text:

It must also illuminate something not perceived. Subsequent to perceiving the thing in its very essence, You have a more general type of experience. It's because the intent when they mention a perception Is one that has not perceived a definitive object. Because it discerns its own definitive object.

त्री क्र्यास्त्रियाः स्त्रीत्रास्त्रीत्रास्त्रास्त्रीत्रा नेश्वा यश्चरात्रीत्रास्त्

What this is saying is that the requirement described above, that a perception be "unerring," is not by itself enough to complete the entire definition of correct perception. This is because the perception **must** be one which **illuminates something** that was **not perceived** previously; and so we must **also** mention at some point in the definition that the object is known "for the first time," or "freshly." As such, the standard definition for correct perception is "a fresh and unerring perception."

र्ह्नियासर-तु-वासवान्ति-र्यत्-स्याध्येत्। र्ह्ह्मिस-प्रते-प्रिस-प्रते-प्रते-प्रते-प्रते-प्रते-प्रते-प्रते-प्रत स्त-स-प्रति-प्रते-प्रत

Someone might make the following objection. "Suppose we allow you to define correct perception as a fresh illumination of an object. Consider then a recollection in which you perceive the color blue. According to you, wouldn't this have to be a correct perception? Because isn't it a state of mind which realizes its object and is fresh? And it is just that, for it is a state of mind which is a fresh perception of the mental image of the color blue."

Yet there is no such problem. What happens is that the state of mind which grasps the color blue directly **perceives** that **very essence** of blueness which is unique to it. **Subsequent to** this perception **you have a more general experience,** where your mind grasps to a mental image of the color blue. This latter state of mind though does not have the ability to discern the object on its own power alone. If something is correct perception, it must be a fresh perception of a **definitive object** that it **has not perceived** before, or else must be directly dependent upon such a perception. Incidentally, you should understand the phrase "definitive object" here as referring to an object as it exists in its own essence.

7 Showing that the Buddha Has the Qualities of Correct Perception

। त्रे. क्षेत्र प्रकृष क्षेत्र क्षेत्

डेबा केंगा की व

Here secondly we show that the qualities of correct perception are as well possessed by the victorious Buddha. We proceed in two steps: bridging this explanation to the meaning of correct perception already presented, and explaining the meaning of the words "who turned." The first of the two is conveyed in the root text with the line,

The one who has it is the Victorious One; Perfectly correct itself.

वियात्ताय्यक्तात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्य विष्णायात्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्या

Consider the **Victorious One**, the able Buddha. He is **perfectly correct** towards each and every existing object, for He is **the one who has "it":** that is, who has a fresh and unerring perception of all these objects, and who is that **itself.**

The main point here is to show that omniscience is a correct perception which sees directly, and on its own power, each and every existing object: the nature of all things, and the totality of all things. And the Buddha is as well a being who possesses this omniscience. Incidentally, this fact also disproves the belief that realized persons who are Buddhas do not possess the mental function of wisdom.

At this juncture, *Light on the Path to Freedom* and a number of monastic textbooks present the following argument. The wording of the root text implies that there exists some object which is not seen by the first moment of omniscience, but which is seen fresh by the second moment of omniscience. Suppose that one therefore accepts such an object. Consider this object. Isn't

it true that it *must be* seen by the first moment of omniscience? Because isn't it something that is? And isn't this necessarily so, since the first moment of omniscience is a kind of wisdom which perceives, directly, each and every existing object? And isn't this so, since it is omniscience? And suppose you say that just because something is omniscience doesn't mean it perceives directly each and every object. What then about the quotation [from the *Jewel of Realizations* by Master Asanga] which states, "It is the path which is the one knowledge of each and every kind of object"?

तश्राचाश्वर रे.स्योश्रातपु.स्थातपुरम् चार्ष्यचेता स्थायचित्र स्याचित्र स्थायचित्र स्याचित्र स्थायचित्र स्थायच्य स्थायचचित्र स्थायच्यचित्र स्थायच्य स्थायचयचित्र स्थायचच्यच्य स्थायचयचित्र स्थायच्यच्यच

Suppose now you disagree to our original statement, [where we said that the object is something which is.] Consider again this object [which is supposedly not seen by the first moment of omniscience but is seen by the second moment]. It *is* true that it is, for it is an object which is perceived fresh by omniscience of the second moment. If you say it is not, then you contradict your own position.

स्रेट्रियां याद्येश्वर्यां स्वारं कर्रा स्वारं कर्णा याद्यर स्वारं स्वारं स्वारं स्वारं याद्यर याद्य स्वारं स्वरं स्वारं स्वरं स्वारं स्वारं

Our own textbooks, in the section on the study of the mind, define recollection as "A state of mind where you perceive what you have already perceived before." The textbooks of certain other monasteries say that the definition of recollection is "A state of mind which is not correct perception, and where you perceive what you have already perceived before." *Light on the Path to Freedom* says,

No matter how much we look within ourselves and think it over, we cannot detect any case where omniscience could be anything other than correct perception, or where there could be any case of correct perception that were not a fresh perception.

If you consider this quotation carefully, you can see that it is stating that the second and following moments of omniscience are fresh perceptions towards their objects.

स्र-३वा,चाक्षेत्र,त्रा,चाक्ष्य,जी,चालज,ची,लुय,श्रिय,श्रक्य,में,उर्च्य,च्या विक्राचित्र,श्रिय,चित्र,श्रक्ष,चीच्यात्र,च्या,च्यात्र,च्या,चीच्यात्र,च्या,चीच्यात्र,च्या,चीच्यात्र,च्या,चीच्यात्र,च्या,चीच्यात्र,च्या,चीच्यात्र,च्या,चीच्यात्र,च्या,चीच्यात्र,च्याच्यात्र,च्या,चीच्यात्र,च्या,च्यात्र,च्या,चीच्यात्र,च्या,चीच्यात्र,च्या,चीच्यात्र,च्या,चीच्यात्र,च्या,च्यात्र,च

If the first moment of omniscience does not see the past, present, and future all at once, then there could be no wisdom which sees all these three times at once. If it does see these three, then it would have to see all objects which are going to occur in the future. As such there could be no object which the second and following moments perceived which had not already been perceived before, or which the first moment had not perceived. Therefore our own position is that the group of things which are discerned by the first moment of omniscience and the group of things which are discerned by the second moment of omniscience are completely identical.

One may then make the following objection:

If that's the case, then let's consider the second moment of omniscience. Isn't it then a state of mind which perceives something which it has already perceived before? Because isn't the only thing it perceives then exactly the same thing which has already been perceived by the first moment of omniscience?

Our answer is that it doesn't necessarily follow. Although it is true that the second moment of omniscience does perceive what it does in the way described, it does not engage in its object by force of the first moment of omniscience, but rather perceives its object on its own power.

8 What it Means to Have "Turned" Correct

|याक्षेत्रायायाुरायवे र्देत्रायविरायाया याुरायाञ्चेत्रायवे र्द्वोत्त्राया देःवा

৻য়৻য়ৣয়৻য়৻য়৾৻য়য়ৣ৾য়৻ৼ৾য়৻ৼৢ৻ ৻য়ৣৼ৻য়৻ঢ়ৢঀ৻য়৻য়ৢৼয়৻ঀ৾৻ড়৻য়ৣৼ৻ ৻য়ৣয়৻য়ৢঀ৻য়৻ড়ৄয়৻য়ঀ৻ড়য়ৼয়য়য়৻

প্রথার্ক্তবার্থারা

Here secondly is our explanation of the meaning of the words "who turned." First we will describe the necessity for mentioning "who turned," and then after that discuss some objections to this description. The first point here is covered in the following three lines of the root text:

The phrase that goes "who turned" Is spoken in the sense

Of the opposite of something Which wasn't ever developed.

This as well is why it's right That correctness depends on achieving.

श्रम्भेश्वास्त्र्वास्त्रम्भा क्रायुर्ण्याम्य क्रायुर्ण्याम्यम्य क्रायुर्ण्याम्य क्रायुर्ण्याम्य क्रायुर्णियम्य क्रायुर्ण्याम्य क्रायुर्णेयम्य क्रायुर्णेयम्य क्रायुर्णेयम्य क्रायुर्णेयम्य क्

There are two reason why Master Dignaga, in the verse of the offering of praise at the beginning of his work, the *Compendium on Correct Perception*, mentions the phrase "who turned." The first purpose for these words is the kind that is meant to exclude something. Here they are spoken in the sense of the opposite: they are meant to indicate that a person who is totally correct could never be something that didn't ever develop from its proper cause.

। प्रत्याम् वर्षेत्रः म्याः वर्षेत्रः स्वा वर्षः विष्यः मित्रः स्व वर्षः विष्यः स्व वर्षः स्व वर्षः विषयः स्व व

The second purpose for these words is the kind that is meant to imply something. Here the point we are supposed to grasp is that one develops into a person of total **correctness** only by **depending** on reaching the final perfection of a gradual practice of all the various methods used for **achieving** this state.

9 Disproving Wrong Ideas on the Nature of Omniscience

गीयःमन्त्रियः तः सूर्यः स्त्रात्त्। रयायाः सः र्यायाः सः स्त्रात्त्र्। याध्रेश्वः सः रेप्याः स्त्रात्त्र्। व्यव्याः स्त्रात्त्र्यः स्त्रात्त्र्यः स्त्रात्त्रः स्त्रात्त्रः स्त्रात्त

Here secondly is our refutation of arguments against our position. We will proceed in two steps: disproving the idea that someone who created every knowable thing could be an omniscient being, and proving that someone who could perceive directly the actual way in which each and every knowable thing exists is an omniscient being.

र्ट्यायाः व्यव्यक्षाः व्यक्षाः व्यक्तिः विद्यत्ते । विद्यक्षेत्रः विद्य

The first of these two has two steps itself: disproving the very nature of some Lord of Power who created every knowable thing, and disproving the attempted proofs for his existence.

10 Disproving the Idea of a Creator

सन्यायास्या इस्यायास्या

The first of these has two parts: disproving a Lord of Power who is unchanging, and disproving one who is changing.

Disproving a Lord of Power who is unchanging is presented in the following seven lines of the root text by Master Dharmakirti:

₹.건৴

वित्र संस्वाय केत् थेत् सेत्।
निर्देश थेत् हेवाश य कत् सेत्र हित्र त्रा ।
निश्च से हिवाय कित्र हित्र सेत्र सेत्र

A correct perception which exists as unchanging could never be;

This is because it's a correct perception towards something that's a working thing.

And since the thing it knows is something which is changing,

It too can only be something which has no stability.

It's true as well since things that arise in stages gradually

Could never be something that arises from a thing that is unchanging,

And neither could they properly be things which must depend.

स्र-ल्र्-तःस्यान्नात्रःक्न-नास्त्रात्रः विद्याः स्यान्याः स्यान्याः स्यान्याः स्यान्याः स्यान्याः स्यान्याः स्य विद्याः स्यान्याः स्य

Some other groups say that there is a being who created every existing thing: the Lord of Power, who is unchanging. He, they say, is a being who is totally correct, and who just came that way from the beginning. Now since these groups assert that this powerful deity is a being with correct perception towards every existing thing, they must agree that he has **correct perception towards** objects of his mind **which are working things.**

है-जिन्ना क्रास्यायकेन्द्रिम् विवासी ज्यानेस्वायकेन्द्रिम् विवासी ज्यानेस्वायकेन्द्रम्यविवायकेन्द्रम्यविवायकेन्

Suppose he did have such a perception. This **correct perception—which exists as** something **unchanging—could never be,** because it perceives an object of the mind which is changing. This is always the case, for if **the thing it knows—the** object of the mind—**is something which is changing,** then **it too** (the correct perception which engages in this object) **can only be something which has no stability.**

लयः तथः श्री वयः विश्वात्वेत्रात्वेत्रात्वेत्रात्वेत्रात्वेत्रात्वेत्रात्वेत्रात्वेत्रात्वेत्रात्वेत्रात्वेत्र स्तरः देवरः श्री वयः विश्वात्वेत्रात्वेत्रात्वेत्रात्वेत्रात्वेत्रात्वेत्रात्वेत्रात्वेत्रात्वेत्रात्वेत्रात्व

तश्चर्री इस्ट्वीर्म्यायायिक्तर्तुः श्चीरायाय्वेद्धायाय्येद्धायय्येद्धाययेद्धायय्येद्धायय्येद्धायय्येद्धायय्येद्धायय्येद्धायय्येद्धायय्येद्धाययेद्धायय्येद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धायेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धायेद्धाययेद्धाययेद्धायेद्येद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्येद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्येद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्येद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्येद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्यायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्धायेद्येद्धायेद्येद्धायेद्येद्धायेद्येद्य

Now suppose you say that this Lord of Power is himself unchanging. Since you agree that the mind of this Lord is changing, you must agree that his mind arises. And yet this mind **could never arise from** a Lord of Power who was **unchanging**, because it **arises in stages**, **gradually**. **Neither could** the mind arise through dependence on certain conditions, for nothing which is unchanging can **properly be a thing which must depend** on something else.

The Great Commentary, *Ocean of Reasoning*, presents some additional points here. It is a contradiction for the subject mind to be unchanging if the object it perceives is changing; but on the other hand it is not necessarily the case that, just because the object the mind perceives is unchanging, the subject mind itself must be unchanging.

This is because of the following. When the subject mind perceives its object, does it engage in the object all the time, or does it engage in the object intermittently? If it engages all the time, then the object would have to be there all the time, which is a contradiction, since the object is changing.

त्रीयाद्य क्षेत्राच्यात्य विकास क्षेत्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्र प्राप्त क्षेत्र क्

If you answer that the subject engages the object intermittently, then the perception of the object must depend on certain factors, and so it would have to be changing.

It is true that, even it the object is unchanging, the subject mind that perceives it need not be unchanging. This is because the perception of the object by the subject depends on certain causes and conditions.

Some people claim that what's being disproved at this point is a conventional correct perception that was unchanging. Consider then ultimate perception. According to you then there cannot be any changing thing which acts as its object. Those schools here in the Land of Snow which assert that omniscience is unchanging have come to a point of direct contradiction against the great work of this Lord of Reasoning.

|উষ'র্ক্টবা'বাইম|

Here secondly is how we deny a Lord of Power who is something that changes. The root text presents the point in two lines:

Because there are not things at all which help him any way,

There is no correct perception at all even if he were changing.

यान्त्रेश्वासाक्षेत्रामा व्यासात्रश्वासात्र्याक्षात्राम्यात्र्याक्ष्यास्याक्ष्यास्यात्र्याक्ष्यास्यात्र्याक्ष्यासात्र्याक्ष्यासात्र्याक्ष्यासात्र्याक्ष्यासात्र्याक्ष्यासात्र्याक्ष्यासात्र्याक्ष्यासात्र्याक्ष्यासात्र्याक्ष्यासात्र्याक्ष्यासात्र्याक्ष्यासात्र्याक्ष्यासात्र्याक्ष्यासात्र्याक्ष्यास्यात्र्याक्ष्यासात्र्याक्ष्यासात्र्याक्ष्यासात्र्याक्ष्यासात्र्याक्ष्यास्यात्र्याक्ष्यास्यात्र्याक्ष्यास्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्याक्ष्यास्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्य

Suppose **even** that someone were unable to bear the above reasoning, and claimed instead that the Lord of Power **were changing**. They would say that he was from the very beginning a person free of all desire, and omniscient, without having to go through the process of experiencing desire and all the rest during his time in the circle of rebirth, and then depending on practices wherein he meditated on the antidotes.

यीट सुर्वा स्वाया स्थाया स्याया स्थाया स्याया स्थाया स्थाया स्थाया स्थाया स्थाया स्थाया स्थाया स्थाया स्था

But isn't it true that **there is no correct perception at all** that can establish the existence of a state of omniscience which has arisen from a Lord of Power of the past who is of the same type? Because isn't it true that this Lord of Power is someone who has never been harmed by the afflicted side of existence during a period when he was living in the circle of rebirth; and someone who has never been **helped** by the pure side of existence? Isn't it true that there are **no things at all** that have affected him in **any** such **way**?

यालेश्वास्त्रः क्षेत्राचे विश्वास्त्र विश्वास्त विश्वास्त्र विश्वास्त विश्वास्त्र विश्वास्त्र विश्वास्त विश्वास्त्र विश्वास्त्र विश्वास्त विश्वास्त्र विश्वास्त्र विश्वास्त्र विश्वास्त्र विश्वास्त्र

On these two lines, the Great Commentary starts from the reason that it is incorrect to say that an unchanging thing could arise from certain conditions, and proceeds to saying that, as far as the denial of being changing, the Lord of Power is admittedly changing; but that it is incorrect to assert that he is omniscient. Based on this presentation it seems a little delicate to call this section the "denial of something that changes."

11 Identifying what Omniscience Really Is

Here thirdly is the section on identifying what it is to be omniscient. The root text of Master Chandrakirti says:

The thing that we agree to be totally correct

Is the one who has knowledge of the fact of what it is

That we should take up and give up, and the method too;

It's not though one who knows everything there is.

Whether or not He can see to some so very great distance,

He is a person who has seen the one goal that we wish.

If what it takes to qualify is how far he can see,

Come then over here and take the vulture as your Teacher.

तःशह्र-तदुः हुर।

यर्द्रेशः तः क्षेत्रः व्याः क्र्याः व्यव्याः त्याः व्यव्याः त्याः व्यव्याः व्यव्यः व्यव्याः व्यव्याः व्यव्याः व्यव्यः व्यव्यः व्यव्यः व्यव्यः व्यव्यः व्यव्यः व्यव्यः व्यव्यवयः व्यव्यः व्यव्यः व्यव्यः व्यव्यः व

Consider now the Able One, the Victorious Buddha, the One Gone Beyond. It is right that all those who aspire for liberation should **agree** that He is **totally correct.** This is because He has reached the ultimate point of knowledge where He sees directly the causes for our getting trapped and for escaping: He sees everything that **we should take up** (the end of suffering, and the path to it) **and** everything we should **give up** (suffering and its source); and He sees **the method** to follow here **too.**

म्यान्तर्भात्रेरः मित्र्रिः स्ट्रिस्तर्भेत् स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स

It's not though that knowing every kind of thing there is, all the rocks and tiny creatures at the bottom of the ocean, is all it takes to fulfill the wishes of those who seek liberation.

It doesn't matter whether or not He can see to some so very great distance; either way, the Teacher, the Transcendent Buddha, is the right one to take as a teacher, for He is a person who has seen that one goal that those who seek for freedom wish.

ब्रिट्रे.ग्री.क्रॅब्र.तर.चक्रेब्र.तर.ग्रीक.वीया.डका.याट्रेक्याका.स्याका.तर.वर्गेर.स्रा इट.म्.क्रांट्र.यका ग्र्या.य.ट्रेब्र.याक्षेर.ग्री.याट.चया.ता.क्र्र.त्या वि.म्.ट्रेय्याका. वया.इट.म्.कांट्र.यका ग्र्या.य.ट्रेब्र.याक्षेर.ग्री.याट्या.या.क्र्य.त्या वि.म्.ट्रेयाका.

If what it takes to qualify as a person who is totally correct is nothing more than how far one can see, then it would be proper to give the following advice to people who are wishing to reach liberation:

Come then over here. It's true that a vulture is nothing but a bird, but he does see to a very great distance; and so you should take vultures or other such beings as your Teacher.

In everyday life, people talk about how it is some being that was able to make the world who is the omniscient one. This verse though serves to identify the real nature of an omniscient being, which is one who understands in totality all the details of what one should take up, and what you should give up.

क्रें वर्रेर अक्राक्ष धर ध्रुष्ठी अध्यव कर र्रेव र्र्या विष्ठ र विष्ठ ध्रिय

Here is some advice for those of you who have no attachment to this present life, and who aspire to goals of the next life, and beyond.

यत्। र्वास्यानित्रस्यान्त्र्यान्त्र्यान्यस्यान्त्र्यान्यस्यान्त्रस्यान्त्यस्यान्त्रस्यान्त्रस्यान्त्रस्यान्त्रस्यान्त्रस्यान्त्

The one thing which is important, beyond all else, is to follow properly, in your mind and in your deeds, a spiritual Guide who possesses the necessary qualifications. And the way to find the Guide is to look for one who can teach you, in exactly the right way, how to reach the goal that you desire. This key—that is, what you really need to look for—is described with absolute perfection by the Lord of Reasoning in the verse above.

The Asian Classics Institute
Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Reading Eight: The Proof of Future Lives, Part Two

12 The Four Reasonings of the Forward Order

The following "Four Reasonings of the Forward Order" have been written out for this class presentation by Sermey Khen Rinpoche, Geshe Lobsang Tharchin. They are found in ACIP electronic text S0073.

बका में वे स्वार्ध त्या व स्वार्ध व

We turn now to the point in the text which treats the lines from the "Sutra" on Correct Perception which include "The One who turned correct, who helps all beings." Here two steps are presented towards proving that the Teacher is a person who is totally correct: using the forward order to show what path the Teacher came from; and using the reverse order, putting forth evidence that He could have come this way.

Here is the first.

[First: the "Reasoning of the Protector," which proves turning totally correct:]

Consider our Teacher.

He is someone who turned correct,

Because He possesses the quality of being an unsurpassed Protector, who by teaching the four noble truths protects each and every living being from suffering.

रे.क्र्य.वर्ष श्रेच.त.र्थं.य.क्र्यं.य.क्रंट्य.क्रंट्य.वर्ष्यं.वर्ष्यं.वर्ष्यं.वर्ष्यं.वर्ष्यं.वर्ष्यं.वर्ष्यं

[Second: the "Reasoning of Eliminating Undesirable Qualities—the One who Went to Bliss," which proves being the Protector:]

Consider the same One.

It is true that He possesses the quality of being an unsurpassed Protector;

Because he has eliminated undesirable qualities, totally.

[Third: the "Reasoning of the Teacher," which proves having gone to bliss:]

Consider the same One.

It is true that He has previously eliminated all undesirable qualities;

Because during His time on the paths of learning He has for the sake of others acted in every way to practice continually on the subjects of selflessness and so on, and because He has reached the final perfection of this same practice.

हैक्याउवा नेत्वराम्बनार्वे न्यान्यात्वराम्बन्यायः क्षुत्रायतः स्वायायः स्वायायः स्वायायः स्वायायः स्वायायः स्व

[Fourth: the "Reasoning of Great Compassion," which proves being the Teacher:]

Consider the same One.

There is a reason why He has practiced this way for the sake of others; Because He has reached the final perfection of compassion.

દ્રે. ક્ર્યાં ક્યાં તાર્યા ક્યાં તાર્યા તાર્યા તે ત્યાં તાર્યા તાર્ય તાર્યા તાર્યા

Consider this same One.

He is not a person who is totally correct and who is also unchanging, who just came that way from the beginning;

Because He has turned this way by practicing, for a long period of time, a great many methods that were both a part of the cycle of life and also beyond it; and He did so over the course of many different kinds of lives He has taken—driven all the while by His compassion.

13 An Explanation of the Perfected Thought

We return next to the Jewel of the True Thought, by Geshe Yeshe Wangchuk:

चवुः वयका मुक्तिका स्वास्त्र स्वस्त्र स्वास्त्र स्वस्त्र स्वास्त्र स्वास्त्र स्वास्त्र स्वास्त्

The root text of Master Dharmakirti says—

It comes from practicing perfectly what helps bring Him about: holy compassion.

As for the things that **help bring about** a person who is totally correct, holy great compassion comes first: that is, before. This is because you must become the Teacher first by giving birth within yourself to the **compassion** which wants to liberate every living being from suffering, and then by **practicing perfectly** the method for liberating them from suffering.

स्वर्यात्रहे.क्रेयंत्रहे.क्रे

This kind of holy great compassion, moreover, comes about through constant practice of earlier and similar forms. The two phrases terms "holy great compassion" and "great compassion" are explained as being the same in this particular instance.

On the Different Kinds of Compassion

श्चीकाः है क्षेत्रः संस्थेन प्रमानिकाः प्रक्षेत्रः स्वीताः स्वीतः प्रमानिकाः प्रमानिकाः

The autocommentary to Entering the Middle Way says:

They do not possess the great masses of merit and of wisdom, nor holy great compassion, nor omniscience or the like. Therefore they are less than totally enlightened Buddhas, and so are said to be "medium."

The Analysis of the Middle Way from our monastery quotes this passage and says that therefore not even bodhisattvas have holy great compassion in their mind streams.

यः प्रस्तायक्ष्यः प्रदेशः प्रश्चित्रः प्रदेश्चेत्रः । व्यव्यव्यः स्वेतः प्रस्तायक्ष्यः प्रदेशः प्रस्तायक्ष्यः प्रदेशः प्रस्तायक्ष्यः प्रदेशः प्रस्तायक्ष्यः प्रदेशः प्रस्तायक्ष्यः प्रदेशः प्रस्तायक्षयः प्रदेशः प्रस्तायक्षयः प्रदेशः प्रस्तायक्षयः प्रदेशः स्वायक्षयः प्रदेशः प्रस्तायक्षयः प्रस्तायक्यः प्रस्तायक्षयः प्रस्तायक्यः प्रस्तायक्षयः प्रस्तायक्यः प्रस्तायक्षयः प्रस्तायक्षयः प्रस

In the seventh chapter of the *Treasure House of Knowledge (the Abhidharmakosha)*, eight distinctions between great compassion and holy great compassion are set forth. This text states that holy great compassion is found only in the mental stream of a realized being who is a Buddha. As the root text of the *Treasure* says,

The Buddha's great compassion, deceptive mind. Because of collection, aspect, activity object, Evenness, for greatness in the extreme. Distinctions between them of eight different types.

According to all this then, the difference between holy great compassion and great compassion is vast, and holy great compassion is no path which is practiced at the outset of the path of the greater way.

तः श्रीटा है कि वे सं र्ल्या की देश सं अव स्तर्य के सम्मान स्वास्त्र के सम्मान स्वास्त्र स्वास्

In this same vein, the majority of the textbooks of the great monasteries state that there is no great compassion in the mind stream of a practitioner of the lesser way. Our own textbooks though establish that enemy destroyers of the Listener type do possess great compassion in their mind-streams; they do so by using a quotation from the *Dar* commentary to the *Higher Line*.

नेश्वाः यश्वाः वर्त्तः श्रीः श्रीः स्ट्रीः स्

They state moreover that, although these enemy destroyers lack the kind of compassion where they wish to protect living beings from suffering, they do have the kind where they wish to see them free of suffering.

म्मायविर्ध्याः सदीन् त्या म्या म्यायाः स्थायविर्ध्याः स्थायविर्धिः स्थायविर्धिः स्थायविष्ठे स्थाय

The text called *The Explication which is a Light on the Path to Freedom* says that "This great compassion is the one thing that allows one to reach the start of the practice of the path of the greater way."

श्रमान्त्रवामान्यतः श्रीमान्यतः श्रीमान्यतः व्यान्यतः वय

The Great Commentary, the Ocean of Reasoning, also says:

Any person who is able to develop in the stream of his mind this one thing, the great compassion that wishes to free each and every living creature from suffering, has thereby become someone whom we can speak of with the name "bodhisattva."

म्र्याः सर-प्रविदः याः प्रविदः योः भ्राप्त स्याः स्याः म्राज्ञेयाः क्रवः म्राप्त स्याः प्रविदः योः भ्राप्त स्य भ्राप्त स्थाः स्विदः स्थायाः स्विदः योः भ्राप्त स्याः स्याः स्याः स्वयः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्वतः स्

It states as well that:

This one thing, great compassion, is explained in the section on the forward order as being the beginning of the path for the unique path of the greater way.

In addition, this same work states:

A certain attitude grows up in the bottom of one's heart; a totally genuine state of mind where you wish to free every living being from suffering. This very state of mind is what we call "holy great compassion," or "great compassion."

As soon as this one thing has grown in your heart, then we speak of you with the words "greater way." This state of mind is moreover the starting point of the unique path, and a special cause for achieving omniscience.

श्चेट्र हे के द्रांचिया पाके द्रांदे त्या या द्राया त्या या प्राया व्याप्य हे के द्रांद्र त्या या है के द्राया व्याप्य व्याप्य है के द्राया व्याप्य व्याप्य है के द्राया व्याप्य व्याप्य व्याप्य है के द्राया व्याप्य व्याप्य

Great compassion therefore is explained as being the starting point for the path of the greater way; and holy great compassion and great compassion are said to be two different words for the same thing.

याक्षेत्र स्वाराणीका तुः ने दें त्याका वर्षेत्र प्यारा विद्या प्रारा विद्या वि

यायर र्ल्य त्या देवे या देवा या प्रश्ति वा स्थित हो त्या के स्था विषय स्या विषय स्था विषय स्या विषय स्था विषय स्था

In the *Greater Steps of the Path*, the *Sutra Requested by Ocean of Understanding* is first quoted. Then Lord Tsongkapa goes on to describe the example of a family person with an especially beloved son who suddenly falls into a great pit of filth. Even practitioners of the Listener and Self-Made Buddha types possess a kind of compassion which is similar to the one that the boy's mother and different relations feel, where they wish to pull him out of the pit. Only a bodhisattva though, he says, possesses the kind of compassion which is like the concern felt by the boy's father.

केन राज्य स्वर्त्त स्वर्त स्वर्त्त स्वर्त स्वर्त्त स्वर्त स्वर्त्त स्वर्त स्वर्त्त स्वर्त्त स्वर्त्त स्वर्त्त स्वर्त्त स्वर्त्त स्वर्त्त

Judging from this description, our own monastery's textbooks appear to be correct on this point. This is because compassion which is like the mother's love for his son is had by Listeners and Self-Made Buddhas as well, and that in itself satisfies entirely the definition of great compassion.

द्र्याम्। श्रुट्टियेश्र्य्यप्राचेश्यित्यर्थाययः भ्रीट्ट्यं स्थायः स्यायः स्थायः स्थाय

We should note though that prior to developing compassion one must go through the steps of "beautiful" love, which cherishes and values its object; as well as wanting to repay kindness, recalling kindness, realizing that they have been your mother, and so on.

क्रमः म्हारा के स्वार्थेन क्षेत्र स्वार्थन स्वार्य स्वार्थन स्वार्य स्वार्य स्वार्य स्वार्य स्वार्य स्वार्य स्वार्य स्वार्य स्वार्य स्वार्

Whether or not Listeners and Self-Made Buddhas meditate on these various steps is something we would have to investigate.

15 Disproving Arguments that Personal Perfection is Impossible

याक्षेत्रायाने स्थाया स्थार प्राया स्थार प्राया स्थाय स्थाय

Here secondly is the part where we disprove arguments that the perfected thought even exists. First we will present the arguments themselves, and then show how we disprove them.

दर्भाकी स्वाप्त क्षेत्र त्या विकाल विकाल

The first of these two is indicated in two lines of the root text:

Suppose you say that, because of the fact that the mind

Is something that relies on the body, there is no achieving by practice.

ह्येर। लूब-बुब-त्र-प्रा-क्री-क्री-प्र-हि-ब्री-प्र-टी-क्री-प्र-त्र-क्री-प्र-हि-ब्र-प्र-हि-क्र-प्र-क्र-प्र-हि-क्र-प्

Those of the Charvaka School say:

Your statement that a person practices compassion over the length of many lifetimes, and then turns into a person who is totally correct, is wrong. This is because there are no past or future lives, and awareness in the mind is something that relies on the body.

र्राप्ता करार्रा श्रेंबायते वुषायासूर्य धेरार्से खुषायी धेर्य के कि स्वाया स्वया स्वाया स्वाया स्वया स्वाया स्वया स्वाया स्वया स्वया

र्-लेशन्वर-र्वे। दर्चशन्वर-र्वे।

They say that there are three ways in which the mind relies on the body. First of all they say the mind is a quality of the body, similar to alcohol and the ability to make someone drunk. Secondly mind is part of the nature of the body, as with a wall and a design on the wall. Lastly the mind is a result of the body, in the way of a lamp and its light.

And they say that, because the mind relies on the body, the awareness in the mind dies when the body dies.

16 Proving Other Lifetimes through the Elimination of Other Possibilities

<u>्र</u> । वर तर्रेट इससाया ह्रीट सूर माठेसाय हेन स्वार्य तमाय हिना तसा।

The following selection is taken from A Number of Necessities, which Those Who Seek for Freedom should Cherish like the Heart in their Breast (Thar-'dod rnams la snying ltar gces-pa'i nyer-mkho 'ga'-zhig).

यायशः त्युचः ग्रीः कर् स्थः यर् द्रः धोरः ग्रीः सुदः सेवाः वाया

We begin with an excerpt taken from Clearing Away Darkness of the Mind about the Seven Books of Valid Perception, a text composed by Kedrup Je.

श्चेश्यातुःश्चेश्यायायोः रेवायादे त्यासुः स्रोद्या रेखायवायः धेरायसः वार्देदः त्या

Suppose you say that the mind of a person who was just born has no cause. You are disproven by the fact that this mind is variable.

याः स्वान्य स्वान्य स्वान्य स्वान्य व्यक्षः तुः नृत्र स्वान्य स्वान्य

Suppose thus that this mind does have a cause. Is this cause unchanging or changing? If it were an unchanging thing that could perform some function, then there would be no possibility that it did not apply in every place and at every time; and so there would be no possibility of its having a fixed relationship where it came and went according to its result.

Suppose then that the latter were true, [and that the cause of this mind were changing.] It would be incorrect to say that this mind could arise from any working thing other than matter or mind, and so it must come from one or the other of these two.

Suppose you say that matter provides the material cause for this mind. Is it the kind of matter which involves the powers of sense, or is it matter outside of them?

Suppose you say it's the first of the two. Is this cause one where all the various sense powers must come together, or is any one or combination of them enough? If the first is the case, then mental consciousness would fail to arise if the sense power of the eye were absent. If the latter is the case, then one's thoughts would have to be able to capture visible objects with the same kind of clarity that the consciousness of the eye does.

ग्रीशः मुद्रा द्राया स्वरं स्

Suppose you say that it's outer matter which provides the material cause. Is it matter in the sense of some substance which is a whole, or is it atoms? Suppose you say it's the first. The substance which is a whole can only be something with parts or something without parts.

Suppose you say it's a whole with parts that provides the material cause. We deny you then with the same reasoning we used before: Is this cause one where all the various parts must come together, or is any one or combination enough?

श्रव्याः व्याः व्यः व्याः व्यः व्याः व्यः व्यः व्यः व्यः व्यः व्यः व्यः

Suppose you say that it's a substance which is a whole, and which has no parts, and which exists distinct from its details, which provides the material cause for the mind. Then when you covered your face with a piece of cloth all the other details of your body would have to be covered as well. If the other details didn't get covered then there would come to be two parts: one that was covered and one that wasn't. These two parts, the covered one and the uncovered one, would be something that applied to the details but not to the whole that had the details. This being the case, you would have to be able to see clearly the face of the whole even when the face as a detail was covered with the cloth.

देन्यह्नेष्ठः योक्त्रः योक्त्रः योक्त्रः योक्त्यः विष्ठ्यः यात्रः योक्ष्यः योक्त्यः य

This position is equally disproven by reasoning that treats other distinctions, such as moving one of your limbs or not, and turning to one side or not.

द्याचीशहराये गुर्जे रेराया गुर्जे व्यायाम् स्थाया द्याया स्थाया स्याया स्थाया स्याया स्थाया स्थाया

Suppose you say that atoms provide the material cause for the mind. If it's that the mind arises through each of the atoms, acting independently of each other, then many different mental consciousnesses would have to arise at the same time. If it's that the atoms must act all together in a group, then the mind could never arise if even a single atom were absent.

युवाया स्वयः वाल्यः वर्षोवाः पद्यः रेवायः पः देः द्वाः यः वर्षः व्याः व्याः यः क्रेरः योवः द्वीदः परः स्वयः वाल्यः वर्षोवाः पद्यः रेवायः पः देः द्वाः यः वर्षः व्याः व्याः वर्षः व्याः वर्षः व्याः वर्षः वर्षः व्या

This reasoning, where we use the process of eliminating all other possibilities, brings us to the conclusion that the material cause for mind is mind itself.

र्धियःतः सूर्यात्रः ग्रीः तीयः त्रियः व्याः त्राः स्त्रः व्याः त्राः स्त्रः स्त

The mind that acts as the cause must moreover either be one which is part of yourself or one which is part of someone else. Suppose you say that a mind which is part of someone else, of someone like your father or mother, acts as the direct material cause for this mind. The problem then arises that—where the father is a skilled artisan, or say foolish, or whatever—the son must always be this way as well.

रटःकुर्ग्गुःरेषायःश्रुःस्रावित्र्राकेरःयेत्रग्नुरःपरःवश्रुरःया

This leads us to conclude that it can only be a former mind which is part of our own stream of consciousness that provides the material cause [for our mind as it exists just after we are born.]

This means that the past history and future continuation of our minds are simply infinite; and that the existence of past and future lives can be clearly and correctly proven.

17 Master Dharmakirti's Proofs for the Existence of Other Lives

The following selection again is drawn from the Jewel of the True Thought.

...Here secondly is the detailed refutation [of the Charvaka system]. We begin by presenting proofs for the existence of past and future lives, and then refute attempted proofs that these lives do not exist.

|युष्यःक्षेत्रःवचवःविवाःयशःक्षेःस्रेत्।

Here then are the proofs. The root text states,

When a person goes to take his birth, The in-out breath, the powers, and the mind Are nothing not dependent on their type, Nor only something born from body alone;

विश्वःक्ष्यःस्त्रेरःसस्स्रसःस्र्रीरःयर। १५:उटःवयःस्रीरःसस्स्रसःस्र्रीरःयर।

|री:ब्रिया:स्री:यश्चरःयादःस्रेत्रःस| |यादःयोशःस्री:यशःसर्वस्यःश्चेत्रःस|

It would be absurd. The thing that you can see Has the ability to cross the line Without another thing that need be there Then isn't such that later doesn't cross.

|ग्राट:रु:र्ड्र-ग्रावित:त्य:श्रॅग्रश्य। |श्चे:र्च:श्चे:प्रत्याय:प्यट:शेन्। |शःश्चेंग्रशःक:रे:त्याय:प्यट:शेन्। |रे:ध्वेत्र:ब्रश्चार:उन्:शःर्चेद:पन्या

There then would never be any part of earth And such where there could never grow those beings Who come from heat and moisture and the rest, And so it all would be by nature seeds.

१२.स्रेर.र्यट.स्याम्य.रट.र्याम्य.ता १५.स्रेर.याद्या.ये.स्य्यंत्र.त्यंत्र.यंत्रेय ११.स्रेर.याद्या.ये.स्य्यंत्र.यंत्रेय ११.स्रेर.याद्या.ये.स्यंत्रम्यंत्रेय ११.स्रेर.याद्या.यं

So if the powers and such could ever occur Without depending each upon their type, Then all of them should change the same as one, For there exists no difference between them.

१८वटः इस्रश्चः रे रे व्यामार्वेदः व। १धीदः र्से व्यामार्वेदः स्पेदः स्राधीव।

If you hurt each one of all the powers, It isn't that the mind is also hurt. The fact that they too change whenever it Changes, this is something we can see.

।ने:धुरःर्स्चःम्बर्धःयःधःहेब। ।संकितःयःवे:महेबःयःवमय।

Thus the basis for the mind to stay Is mind itself, a number which it depends.

र्नि: मुंद्र स्थाय मुंद्र स्थाय स्याय स्थाय स्याय स्थाय स्य

Since they are the cause for all the various powers, These powers are something then that comes from mind.

विश्वाम्य । विष्य । विश्वाम्य । विश्वाम्य । विश्वाम्य । विश्वाम्य । विश्वाम्य

And if the same projecting ones are there, Later too it will become the same.

सुंद्र,योल्यू-,ययो.स्योका.स्यान्त्र, देवीयोका.दविट.देव. देटा. । देवट.स्. देटका.ता सुंद्र,योल्यू-, ययो.स्योका.स्यान्त्र, देवीयोका.दविट.देव. देटा. देटा.स्याना सुंद्र,योल्यू-, ययो.स्योका.स्यान्त्र, देवीयोका.दविट.देव. देटा. देटा.स्याना सुंद्र,योल्यू-, ययो.स्योका.स्यान्त्र, देवीयोका.दविट.देव. देटा. देवट.स्. देवट.स्. तो

Given this text, consider now an infant who has just taken birth: consider his breathing in and out, the clarity of his powers, the feeling of anxiety in his mind,

and so forth. When a person goes to take his birth, these are nothing such that they are not dependent on something of their own type which has come before, because the infant is now possessed of this in-out breath, and the clarity of his powers, anxiety in his mind, and so on.

Nor are these things only something born from the body, with its elements, alone; for they have come from something of their own type that came before them.

If this were not the case *it would be absurd*. Every one of the elements then would have to be a living being, for the mind is something that comes only from the elements.

There is a *thing that you can see has the ability to cross the line* into a new life *without another* single *thing,* without any extra cause, *that need be there.* This thing *then isn't such that later* it *doesn't cross* into another life.

बार्चर म्री. यर्था क्षेर. तथा राजा क्ष्यां व्यक्त स्था वर्षे । वर्षेर. यं स्था प्राप्त स्था वर्षे । वर्षेर. यं यं प्राप्त स्था क्ष्यां क्ष्या

Then too there would never be any part of earth and "such" (meaning any one of the other elements) where there could never grow those beings who come from heat and moisture and the rest, and so "it all" (that is, every case of the elements) would be by nature seeds. And that would be absurd.

चल्ने त्र पुर्व प्राप्त स्र्वा क्ष्या क्ष्या स्था व्या स्था व्या क्ष्या स्था व्या क्ष्या क्ष

So if the powers and the mind and such could ever occur just from the elements, without depending each upon something of their own type which came before them, then all of them (the elements) should change into a living being, in the same way as one of them had changed into a living being—[for there exists no difference between them.]

Even if you hurt each one of all the powers, it isn't always the case that the mind is also hurt. But suppose it, the mind, changes because it is hurt by feelings of grief or the like. It is something we can see then that they—the powers—change too. Therefore the mind is a very special basis for these powers; and it is something which depends on the mind itself, meaning former instances of its same type. Moreover, a number of cases of mental action, or karma, from one's past life are now the basis for the mind to stay. For these reasons then the mind is not something which has no basis of its own.

त्रवेरत्वेदान्ते मुं क्षेर्याय मुं स्वायाय मुं स्वायाय मुं स्वायाय मुं स्वायाय मुं स्वायाय मुं स्वायाय स्वयाय स्वय स्वयाय स्वया

These powers are something then that comes from mind, since they—a number of previous instances of mind—are the cause that projects the future occurrence of all the various powers. And later on, things like the mind at the moment of death too will become the same as these previous cases, crossing the line into later states of a similar type. This is because the same (meaning the same type of) projecting ones (that is, causes) are there.

स्रीयः वकार्यायात्वः र्ययाकाः वर्षे स्रीः यात्रः स्रायाकाः वर्षे द्वार्म्याकाः व्यक्षः स्रायाकाः विका स्रोत्यायाः रेत्राकाः वर्षे स्रीः यात्रः स्रीः स्रायाकाः स्रायाकाः वर्षे स्रायाकाः विकासः स्राय्योवाः रेत्रायाः स्रीः स्रीः वर्षे स्रीः वर्षे स्रायाः स्रीयायाः स्रोत्याकाः वर्षे स्रायाः स्रोत्याकाः विकासः

The root text and its commentary just given present different reasonings to prove the existence of past and future lives. This is because when you prove that the passing in and out of breath with an infant who has just been born (or any of the other examples) comes from something of the same type which occurred previously, one can understand that the "same type" refers to the inhaling and exhaling of the past life, and so on.

तीश्चरभ्रम् याक्ष्माचिद्याच्या सूच्याश्चर्यात्र विचा क्ष्या त्यात्र विचा क्ष्या याक्ष्या याक्ष्य याक्ष्या याक्ष्य याक्ष्या याक्ष्य याक्

Suppose you say that the powers and so forth of someone who has just now taken birth could occur only from the various elements. We can see that in one glass of water there grows one bug with a red head and a yellow body, and then another with a yellow head and a red body. Some creatures come out smaller, and others come out larger.

श्र्यात्राक्षः त्यात्रः श्रियाः क्ष्यात्रः श्र्यात्रः श्रियाः त्यातः श्रियाः त्यातः श्रियाः त्यातः श्रियाः त्य इत्रात्यातः यमुत्यातः श्रियात्रात्रात्रः त्यातः श्रियाः त्यातः श्रियाः त्यातः श्रियाः त्यातः श्रियाः श्रियः श्रिय

भ्री पर्यः स्वीर । रटा यो रेया शाय दा श्रूर शाया वर्षे शास्त्री रायर वर्षे द्वारा स्थाय । स्वीर प्राय्य । स्वीर प्राय । स्वीर

Among humans as well some come with larger bodies, and then some with smaller ones. Certain people come with a very sharp intellect, and others with one which is dull. Some children display a great amount of understanding and love and the like, while others show a tendency towards attachment and other bad thoughts. According to you, these and similar cases should be impossible, because beings take birth only through the elements, without having to depend on any earlier instance of a similar type.

यवीं राष्ट्री की भीषात्रात्र स्थार स्था स्थार स

Suppose again that creatures were born only from the elements. Then when any one element turned into a creature, all the elements would have to turn into creatures. This is because there would be no cause or condition that would make one of the two occur, and the other not occur.

यायः लेगान्येशः सुर्वे । धेरः सूर्वे । धेरः

Our own position is that a number of instances of mind in the past act as projecting causes, and from them occur our present powers and so on, which are such that they result from karma, through a time-lag. And since a number of instances of mind in the form of the mind at the moment of death will also provide a cause, for the powers and so forth that come later, we are able to establish that future lives exist.

र्रेतः श्रुम् रवर र्यः श्रुम् रेन्यः याम्बर्तः वाष्ट्रम् विष्यः याम्बर्तः वाष्ट्रम् विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विषयः विष्यः विष

ब्रिमा नियम् वा ध्येन्यायहिषायाः श्रूषाः श्रुषायाः निष्यायः निष्याय

For this reason, it is not always the case that the mind is affected when you hurt any one of the five sense powers. On the other hand, it is invariably the case that when the mind is affected by strong emotions of grief, or by various harmful influences, then it does hurt the physical powers. When for example the mind is affected by powerful feelings of fear, the sense power of the tongue can no longer taste something as delicious.

स्त्र विकास्तर के स्राप्त के स्त्र के

One may present the following argument:

What about a case where the power of the eye is damaged, and because of this the consciousness of the eye loses its ability to see its object? Isn't it common knowledge that you then undergo some feelings of distress, and that these affect the mind?

This though is no problem. It is true that such cases are possible, but it is not that mind is affected by the damage to the sense power. Rather, the damage to the eye power provides a general condition for a separate occurrence, the distress. The distress itself increases to a point to where the mind as well is affected.

म्त्रात्यायः क्षेत्राः म्यान्त्रम् स्त्रीयः स्त

It is not though the case that the mind is affected solely by the damage to the sense power of the eye. This is because there are instances where certain great beings have given away their very eyes, and yet still felt emotions of great happiness within their minds.

चिर्-तर-१९४ क्षेत्रम् । यर-१५ त्या अया प्रत्यक्ष प्रत्यक्

As such, the mind provides a very unique cause, a *sine qua non*, for a corresponding result: the sense powers and so on. The powers and the rest though do not provide this same kind of cause for any state of mind resulting from them.

र्नित्रम्थुरुष्त्र। द्येरःद्या प्रस्ते रेणायःचित्रक्षिण्यः भूति । द्वेरःद्या प्रस्ते । देवेरःद्या । देवेरःद्य

To summarize, let us consider the mind of someone who has just taken birth. A previous state of mind has come before it, because it (the one at birth) is a state of mind. It is, for example, like one's current state of mind. This is the reasoning for proving the existence of former lives.

द्वी: आञ्चीय: तयु: मुया: त्रांत्र त्री यः श्रांत्र त्री: म्या: प्रांत्र त्री: प्रांत्र त्री: म्या: प्रांत्र त्री: प्

Consider further the mind at the moment of death, for an ordinary person. It will cross the line into a later state of mind, because it is a state of mind where attachment is present. It is, for example, like one's state of mind from the day before. This is the reasoning for proving existence of future lives.

क्रियात्यात्वेत् स्वाप्त स्वाप भवाष्त्र स्वाप्त स्वाप

If one gets caught up in the wording, it might seem that we are asking you to consider a former state of mind, and arguing that a former state of mind has preceded it, since it is a state of mind. Or else it sounds like we are saying one should consider a later state of mind, and arguing that it will cross the line into a later state of mind, because it is state of mind where attachment is present. It would seem that we had accepted that all these reasons were true, and that all the necessities held. And it would seem as though one could never accept these arguments, for in each case elements were the same.

These proofs are similar to where Master Kamalashila proves past and future lives in his *Concise Commentary on Suchness*, for there he states:

A state of mind such that desire is present in it does have the ability to give birth to yet another state of mind, the one that we take on at birth. This is because the state of mind at death for an ordinary person is similar to states of mind on previous occasions where desire was present: it too has desire.

The text goes on to state that these are types of reasoning where the quality asserted and the quality accepted share a nature.

With both the reasonings presented above, you would have to perceive past and future lives if you perceived what the reasonings are trying to prove. Therefore it will be necessary for us to examine what object we can utilize as a starting point for perceiving past and future lives.

18 The Idea of a Material Cause: The Linchpin for Proving Future Lives

The following selection as well is drawn from Geshe Yeshe Wangchuk's Jewel of the True Thought.

याश्रुस्रायाः होरायो स्मर्क्ता होता विष्या होरायो होरायो होरायो होरायो होता हो। दे खुर्सायो होरायो होरायो होरायो हो। दे खुर्सायो होरायो होरायो होरायो हो। दे खुर्सायो होरायो होरायो होरायो हो।

Here is the third section, where we explain the definition of a material cause. We proceed in two steps, covering the definition of a material cause, and then demonstrating that there is no such cause between body and mind.

The first of these two is presented by the root text in the lines from "A material cause could never cause..." up to "...without a change in the clay."

The second is presented in the lines from "Anything that could bring about..." to "...Exactly like fire and melted copper."

Here then is the first:

A material cause could never cause What had it to come about Unless it were to change itself. Examples would be a pitcher or such Without a change in the clay.

तुम्यान्यं विश्वास्ति। क्षेत्रः योदार्दे विश्वास्ति विश्वासि विष्य विश्वासि विश्वासि

What we call a "material" cause is such that it could never cause "what had it" (meaning its result) to come about unless the very essence of this material cause were to undergo a change itself. So what we need for a material cause is something which, by its very nature, imparts—in a very immediate way—its own unique affect. Examples would be a ceramic pitcher or such, which could never occur without a change in the clay.

भिन्ने, यद्गत्यं अस्त्र स्त्र स्त्र

Here secondly is the demonstration that there is no such cause between body and mind. The root text at this point says:

Any thing that could bring about
Any other thing without a change
Could never be its material cause;
It'd be like a buffalo and cow or such,
And the mind and the body
Are just the same.
Here the cause is one together,
With the result that comes from it
The kind that stays together,
Exactly like fire and melted copper.

विदेश्याम् विद्यान्त्राची स्वाप्त्र विद्यान्त्र विद्यान्य विद्यान्त्र विद्यान्त्य विद्यान्त्र विद्यान्त्र विद्यान्त्र विद्यान्य विद्यान्त्य विद्यान्त्य विद्यान्त्य विद्यान्त्य विद्यान्त्य विद्यान्य विद्यान्त्य

Any particular thing acting as a cause that could bring about any other thing—that is, its result—without a change could never be its transforming cause; which is to say, its material cause. It would be, for example, like a buffalo and a cow or any other such thing.

And the mind and the body are just the same: they could never be for each other a material cause and the thing that the material cause produced. This is because they each come from their own material cause, and from each other only as a factor that is one together with them. They stay, for example, together—exactly like fire and melted copper.

The unusual Tibetan words here about the cows refer to a buffalo and to a milk cow.

[The idea being expressed is that, although a buffalo and a cow can interact and affect each other, and thus in a sense act as factors for certain details of each other's being as they coexist, they are not the kind of cause and effect for each other where one transforms into the other; that is, they are not the kind of cause and effect that seeds and their sprouts are, for example. Fire affects copper by melting it in an apparently simultaneous way, but does not itself turn into the melted copper.]

19 Selections on How Ignorant Desire Triggers Another Life

The first selection is from the Overview of Dependent Origination, by Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568), an eminent author of textbooks from Sera Mey Tibetan Monastery. The work constitutes ACIP electronic text S0014.

सद्यः सक्तः भेत्। यात्रारः दुःगुक् व्याः श्चेंदः चुत्रः ग्रीः यहे यात्रः यात्यः यात्रः यात्र

...The definition of that ignorance which constitutes the first of the twelve links in the chain of dependent origination is: "That view of the perishable assemblage [view of a "me" or "mine" which has its own nature] which inspires one to commit fresh cases of the relevant second link--that of immature karma."

त्रश्चा अक्षर्यः भेत्र । व्यक्षर्यः वितः ध्रम्यः व्यक्षः वित्रः व्यक्षः विश्वर्यः वित्रः वित्रः वितः व्यक्षः वि

...The definition of that immature karma which constitutes the second link in the chain of dependent origination is: "That impure movement of the mind which is of the type that is inspired freshly by the relevant first link, of ignorance."

यी:यां नेरायुर्यं प्रशेष्ट्रायं प्रते प्रशेष्ट्रायं प्रते प्रते

This particular immature karma can be divided into three types: merit, non-meritorious karma, and unshifting karma. Meritorious karma and unshifting karma are not mutually exclusive, for there does exist something which can be both basic virtue which is consistent with merit and also the causal form of balanced concentration.

द्रीयाशुक्षायीः क्रक्ष्याविदे विद्रायर प्येदादी दर्भ द्रोति स्वासीका यीति । स्वाद्येदि स्वासीका यीति । स्वाद्येदि । स्वाद्

यश्विमःयाधेश्वःयदःश्वेम। यश्वमःयाधेश्वःयदःश्वेम।

There are various typical examples of these three. The first would be the karma which projects as a karmic result the parts of a person who takes birth in one of the better forms of life in the desire realm. The second would be a karma which projects as a karmic result the parts of a person who takes birth in one of the three lives of misery. The third would be a karma which projects as a karmic result the parts of a person who takes birth in one of the higher two realms.

त्र्र्रायदेःश्रेश्रश्चात्त्र्यायायहेष्यश्चार्याःश्चेत्रायदेःहेष्यत्र्येयश्चीश्चात्र्यायः। प्रमुत्रायदेश्वेत्राय

...The definition of that craving which constitutes the eighth link in the chain of dependent origination is: "The mental function which, based on the link of feeling, desires of its own accord not to be separated from its object."

This particular craving can be divided into three types: desire craving, fear craving, and existence craving. Each of these three can be described in the following typical examples. The first is that craving where you desire not to be separated from an attractive object. The second is that craving where you desire to be separated from an unattractive object. The third is that craving wherein you crave the parts of your being at the time of your death, out of fear that you think you are going to stop.

श्रेन्याने क्षेत्रक्रेन क्षेत्र प्रदेश प्रवेश प्रतेष्ठ क्षेत्र । प्रतीया प्रतेष्ठ क्षेत्र प्रवेश क्षेत्र विश्व क्षेत्र प्रवेश क्षेत्र । प्रतीया क्षेत्र प्रवेश क्षेत्र विश्व क्षेत्र विष्य क्षेत्र विष्य क्षेत्र विष्य क्षेत्र विष्य क्षेत्र विष्य क्षेत्र विष्य क्षेत्र वि

The definition of that grasping which constitutes the ninth link in the chain of dependent origination is: "The strong desire that represents the craving of the previous link developed to an intense degree."

This particular grasping may be divided into four types: grasping to the desirable, grasping to views, grasping where you profess the existence of a self-nature, and grasping where you hold mistaken forms of morality and ascetic practices to be supreme.

The first of these is a kind of desire which is strongly attached to an attractive object. The second is a kind of desire which is strongly attached to bad views. The third is a kind of desire which is strongly attached to professing that a self-nature of a person exists. The fourth is a kind of desire which is strongly attached to bad ascetic practices.

न्यादेशःश्रीः विश्वश्वाद्याद्यात्रः स्त्राच्यात्रः विश्वश्वाद्यात्रः विश्वश्वश्वाद्यात्रः विश्वश्वश्वाद्यात्रः विश्वश्वश्वाद्यात्रः विश्वश्वश्वः विश्वश्वश्वः विश्वश्वश्वः विश्वश्वः विश्वः व

These two links possess certain typical characteristics. Among the three categories of being virtuous and so on, they are invariably ethically neutral. There are types of each which are eliminated by the path of seeing, and types of each which are eliminated by the path of habituation; both types are possible. These links are found with both normal beings and with realized beings, and are had by beings in all three realms.

The definition of that ripened karma which constitutes the tenth link of the chain of dependent origination is: "The movement of the mind which is in its essence an impure ripening where karma has become extremely potent due to its being triggered by the relevant links of craving and grasping."

* * * * * *

The second selection is from the Jewel of the True Thought. The verses are inserted from the original work by Master Dharmakirti, sometimes in shorter excerpts than in Geshe Wangchuk's text, to facilitate comparison with the corresponding commentary.

वित्र, केटा मुक्ति क्ष्य का सिर्व केट्टी केटटी केट्टी केट्टी केट्टी केटटी क

Suppose because he's free of the perishable view He would stop rebirth at the beginning of the path. Because the innate one's not yet eliminated. If it were, then how could there ever be a rebirth?

वह्नवाक्र्यामान्यः वात्रान्त्र्यामान्यः द्वीरः लेमः र्सेनः द्वी। इत्याक्रियामान्यः व्याप्त्राच्याम् व्याप्तः स्वीतः स्वाप्त्रः स्वाप्तः स्वाप्त्रः स्वाप्

Suppose someone makes the following argument: "Let's say that you are right, and that the view of the perishable assemblage [seeing some "me" or "mine" with a self-nature] is the very root of the cycle of rebirth. Well then, just after a person had been able to develop the **beginning** moments **of the path** of seeing, **he would** have **stopped** himself from every crossing again the line into a new **rebirth**. Why? **Because he's free then of the perishable view."**

कं.क्रेय.श्रीका.श्रेटका.या.लाट.श्रेटाद्वी.शा.श्री.या.वा.ला.ल्र्टाट्टा.श्रेटाट्टा । श्रा.लाय.ता.शा.लाय.ताम.वाला यहचा.कं.क्रेय.श्रुचा.श्रीशा.ता.शा.श्रेटशा.तादा.द्वीमा यहचा. ताय.व्री श्रीय.बियाया.क्र्या.व्यता यहचा.कं.श्रेटशा.तादा.श्रीय.ता.ता.ल्र्टाटी.श्रा.तादा.द्वी.

Our answer then would be as follows: "Consider a stream enterer [a person who has reached the path of seeing, and seen emptiness directly.] Isn't it rather the case that he has not yet reached a point where, because he has eliminated the perishable view, he need not take another rebirth? Because isn't it true that the innate one, the inborn perishable view, is not yet eliminated? And if it were eliminated, then how could there ever be a rebirth? In that case then he could of course never take another rebirth."

र्ते.चेर.हर्यालाच्यात्रास्त्

You could also answer: "Consider then a stream enterer who sees peace in that same life [that is, who reaches nirvana in the same life in which he reached the path of seeing]. How could there ever be a rebirth for someone like this? He is one of those people who is certain to eliminate the perishable view completely, and thereby achieve nirvana, in the same life that he reaches the path of seeing.

।श्रेश्रश्चर्याः श्रेशः व्याः श्रेशः । ।र.व. श्रेशः तत्रः श्चर्याः श्चरः । ।शः श्चरः श्वयाः श्वरः व्याः श्वरः । ।यरे व्यरः श्वरः व्याः व्यवः ।

That state of mind where a person thinks of "me," Where he wishes to himself "May I be happy," Or "May I never suffer any pain," This viewpoint of a person is the innate.

And suppose you say, "Perishable view only comes in one kind: the type where you consciously believe [in a "me" or "mine" which has its own nature]. Therefore it is not the cause for suffering existence." It is not true though that there exists no innate form of the perishable view. Think of that case where a person wishes a certain object, where he thinks to himself, "May I be happy," or "May I never suffer any pain." Without being influenced by any kind of intellectual belief, he holds to a "me," he thinks of a "me" who is independent, and who is not just a label applied to the various parts of himself. That particular state of mind is the viewpoint of a person which is the innate one.

|पर्नेपायर्द्रप्यकास्य मुन्नास्य । |पर्नेपायर्स्य प्राप्त स्याप्त स्था । |पर्नेपायं स्थित् प्राप्त स्था । |पर्नेपायं स्था स्याप्त स्था । |पर्नेपायं स्था स्था स्था ।

If they never thought they saw any kind of "me,"
If they had no attachment at all to some kind of "self,"
If they were free of this craving to a self-nature,
They'd never race on through desire for happiness.

लट स्रुट स्रु: सर सर्दे र पर स्नुवा पर वा र पर वा पर वा र पर स्रुट स्रु

And are you saying then that people like stream enterers [those who have seen emptiness directly but have not yet reached nirvana] have no attachment at all to some kind of "self"? You must be, because [according to you] they never think they see any kind of "me." If you agree, then you must be saying that they could never be the kind of people who race on to the next life through a desire for happiness [for a self-existent "me," and yet they are.] This would have to be the case, because they would be free of this craving to a self-nature.

क्रीया.स.भूष.स्र्रा । बुक्रायाश्वरका त्या यरया.त.श्रेर.स.भूर.सकायरया.य्या.यर्प.य.त्र्र्रा.सकात्तरःश्रेर.भर्ष्यःसरः क्रिया.कृषःत्वका रत्र्.बुक्षामञ्चरःय.भूर.सरःत्यावःत्तरःयर्याःत्राक्ष्यःस.भात्र्यः

The *Great Commentary* says: "Wherever a person never thinks they see any kind of "me," then they have no attachment at all to some kind of "self." And because they are free of this craving to a self-nature, then they can never race on again to a next life through a desire for "my-self's" happiness."

We should note at this point that it is incorrect to assert, as some have done, that the simple awareness of oneself constitutes the perishable view. This is proven by the fact that enemy destroyers and Buddhas do possess states of mind in which they think to themselves, "These are my robes," or "This is my wisdom bowl."

यस्यः ह्रास्यः विद्यान्त्रः विद्यान्तः विद्यानः विद्यान्तः विद्यान्यः विद्यानः विद्यानः विद्यान्तः विद्यान्तः विद्यान्तः विद्यान्तः

If you disagree that this could ever be the case, then you would have to say as well that there could never exist that failure in one's monastic vows where you

steal the robes or bowl or any similar article belonging to one of these beings. This would have to be the case, for these beings would according to you lack any state of mind where they considered something "mine." A lack of such a state should always mean that one could not steal from such beings, for the following distinction is correctly made: So long as the Teacher is still blessing the world with His presence, there can occur the failure of one's vows where he steals what rightfully belongs to the Teacher; and yet, after He pretends to pass into His final nirvana, such a failure can no longer occur.

दह्यायायश्चर्या विषयासुर्यायश्चर्यायये स्वर्यासुर्यायश्चर्या । वह्यायायश्चर्याय्येया विषयासुर्यायश्चर्यायये स्वर्यासुर्याच्याये ।

There are moreover those lines in *Entering [the Middle Way]*, which talk about being

* * * * * * *

Like the case where Buddhas, who are free of the view

Of the perishable assemblage, still speak of 'me' and 'my teaching'."

वित्वाः हुः क्वाश्वः स्वः क्षेत्रः स्वा वित्रः स्वेतः स्वाद्यः स्वाद्यः स्वा वित्रः स्वादः स्वाद्यः स्वा वित्रः स्वादः स्वाद्यः स्वा वित्रः स्वादः स्वादः

From the one cause of being attached to some self-nature, They conceive of what's not happiness as happiness, And as a result they dive into everything; Therefore craving's a basis for rebirth.

Consider now **craving.** It is the [aspect of the truth of the source of suffering we call] "factor." This is because it **is a basis** which contributes to a corresponding result; ie, another **rebirth.**

स्त्रीत्रात्ते क्षेत्रात्ते स्त्रात्ते क्षेत्रात्ते क्षेत्रात्ते क्षेत्रात्ते क्षेत्रात्ते क्षेत्रात्ते क्षेत्र त्यात्त्रम् स्त्रे स्त्रे स्त्रे स्त्रात्ते क्षेत्रात्ते क्षेत्रात्ते क्षेत्रात्ते क्षेत्रात्ते क्षेत्रात्ते क स्त्रे स्त्र

It is true that craving is this way, because those who have been brought down by the tendency to conceive of what's not happiness as being happiness dive as a result of this into "everything," which refers to unworthy things and goals. Neither is it true that this totally mistaken backwards conception of things is without its proper cause, for all this occurs from the one cause of being attached to some self-nature.

ভিষাধ্যস্থিত দুর্ব রমসাগ্রীসালার্থ দেয়। ক্রিমার্থ স্থ্রীত দুর্ব রমসাগ্রীসালার্থ দেয়।

Because of the fact that the Masters have said "Those free of attachment will never see birth."

ॻॖऀॱॺॣॕॖॖॖॖय़ॱॸॣ॔ॺॖॱॳॹऒॗॴॻऻऄऀ॔टॴय़य़ॖॱय़ॖऀॸऻ तरःश्चेटॴय़य़ॖॱटेयटःॻऻॗॴलटःशूट्रेतिःश्चरःश्चेत्याभाष्ट्र्यः पद्रःश्चेटः प्राच्येत्यः प्राच्येतः स्वीट्रात्यः स्वीट्यः स्वीट्रात्यः स्व

It is true that craving is a cause for a future rebirth, because of the fact that Masters of the past have said that "Enemy destroyers, those who are free of attachment, never again see a birth in some future life; this is due to the fact that they have eliminated craving in its entirety."

The Asian Classics Institute
Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Reading Nine: How Karma Works, Part One

On the Four Ancient Schools of Buddhism

The first selection is from the Schools of Philosophy (Grub-mtha'), written by Changkya Rolpay Dorje (1717-1786) and found at ACIP electronic text numbers \$50060-\$50063.

ततु.ताभा वितरिततु.रे.क्रेर.झैंच.तात् । बिश्व.चशिरश्र्। भे से ततु.ताभा वितरिततु.रे.क्रेर.झैंच.तात् । बिश्व.चशिरश्र्। वि.चंचा.झैं.ता.श्चाश्रः भे विश्व.चार्यात्रः वितर्भ के त्यांत्रः वित्रं वितर्भ वित्यंत्रः वित्रं वित्यंत्रः वित्यंत्रः वितर्भ वित्यंत्रः वित्यंत्रः वि

Here next are the Buddhist schools. They are the Detailists, the Sutrists, the Mind-Only School, and those of the Middle Way. The number of these schools is exactly four, no more or less, and this is proven by numerous statements from both the secret and the open scriptures. In particular, in proof of this number there is the following quotation from the *Commentary by Diamond Heart:*

Those of the Buddha are four; the Able One Had no intention of a fifth.

Master Aryadeva has said as well:

Those who assert that the teachings of the Buddha Consist of four schools have seen the way it is: These, for those who hope to practice, are precisely The paths explained by the Detailists and the rest.

तर्त्रक्षेत्रः र्। त्रिंद्रक्षेत्रः र्। त्रिंद्रक्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः त्रिंद्रक्षेत्रः क्षेत्रः कष्टेत्रः क्षेत्रः कष्टेत्रः क्षेत्रः कष्टेत्रः कष्टेत्रः कष्टेतः कष्टेतः कष्टेत्रः कष्टेतः कष

On the question of an evolution of these four schools, some people assert that the Detailist and Sutrist Schools started after the third council for assembling the scriptures. They say that the Middle-Way School began during the days of Master Nagarjuna, and that the Mind-Only started in the time of Arya Asanga. They also believe that, prior to these points in time, there was no concept of the four schools.

This idea is however incorrect, for we do see the concept of the four schools in works such as *Ocean of the Angels*; the *Secret Teaching of Lo Diamond, in Two Parts*; the *Secret Teaching of the Wheel of Time*; the *Secret Teaching of Diamond Arali*; and others as well.

2 About the Title of the Treasure House

The verses throughout the commentary below are from the Treasure House of Knowledge (Abhidharmakosha, Chos mngon-pa mdzod,), written by the Master Vasubandhu around 350 AD and found at ACIP electronic text number T4089. The commentary to the verses is from Illumination of the Path to Freedom, written by Gyalwa Gendun Drup, His Holiness the First Dalai Lama (1391-1474) and found at text number S5525.

भूत्रभूत्र अस्त्र स्वरे सहेत् मुह्म स्वरे सहेत् मुह्म स्वरे सहेत् सहेत् सहेत् सहेत् सहेत् सहेत् सहेत् सहेत् सह

In Sanskrit, the *Abhidharmakosha Karika*.
In Tibetan, the *Chu Ngunpay Dzu Kyi Tsikleur Jepa*.
[In English, The Treasure House of Knowledge, set in verse.]

याद्वा निष्पराखान्त्री व्याप्त्री क्ष्या प्राप्ति व्याप्त्री व्या

In Sanskrit, the title of this work is the Abhidharmakosha Karika. In Tibetan, this translates as Chu Ngunpay Dzu Kyi Tsikleur Jepa [or, in English, The Treasure House of Knowledge, set in verse.] Abhidharma refers to "knowledge," kosha to "treasure house," and karika to "set in verse."

यायकार्राष्ट्रायायक्षात्रात्माक्ष्यायायक्ष्याय्यायक्ष्याय्यायक्ष्याय्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष यक्षयायक्षयायक्ष्यायाः स्त्रीत् द्रिषायाश्च्यायोः स्वत्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष । यक्षयायक्ष्यायोः स्वत्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्यायक्ष्या

Now why do we bother mentioning the Sanskrit title of this commentary to the Buddha's words? We want to indicate that the work is of reputable origin. Buddhas of all three times, whether past or present or future, attain their enlightenment at the Seat of the Diamond, in India. So the Indian name is meant to show an origin in the seat of knowledge, India.

स्त्रियार स्वर्त्त्वा क्षुस्र वक्ष प्रदेश सं त्या यह वा स्वर् पर्वे र त्य त्या विद्या या विद्या स्वर प्रवे र त्य त्या क्षुस्य विद्या स्वर त्या क्षुस्य विद्या वि

A commentary is worth no more or less than it is, but if people think it comes from India they'll take the time to study and teach it, just because of the better source. It's just like the local merchants. If they hear some barley has come from the lowlands, right away they want to trade for it, because the source is a good one.

लट्ट्याक्षे द्वर्त्याक्षे व्यक्ष्याच्यक्ष्यक्ष्याच्यक्षय

A commentary may actually be excellent, but if you don't put some Sanskrit in it nobody wants to work with it. They think it's just Tibetan. Like local merchants who heard that some barley came from a highlands nook—nobody wants to touch it, whether it's really good or bad.

दश्यत्त्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्या प्रमा निष्मात्वे प्रत्यात्राच्यात्रच्यात्रच्याच्यात्रच्यात्यात्यात्रच्यात्रच्याच्यात्रच्यात्र

Mentioning the title in Sanskrit has the further purpose of starting a mental propensity for this excellent tongue. All Buddhas of the three times teach the Dharma in Sanskrit after their enlightenment. An acquaintance with just this small amount of the language acts as a mental seed, which will ripen into a nearly automatic fluency. Finally, it helps one comprehend the differences in word order between Tibetan and Sanskrit.

यायह्वायदेशकेन प्रमास्त्र श्री । स्मर्थन द्वाना स्वान्त स्वान स्वान्त स्वान स्वान्त स्वान स्वान्त स्वान्त स्वान्त स्वान्त स्वान्त स्वान्त स्वान स्वान्त स्वान्त स्वान्त स्वान्त स्वान्त स्वान्त स्वान्त स्वान स्वान्त स्वान्त स्वान्त स्वान्त स्वान्त स्वान्त स्वान्त स्वान स्वान्त स्वान स्वान्त स्व

Why do we mention the title at the very start? It facilitates locating the proper volume, and understanding its subject at a glance. Why put the Sanskrit and Tibetan side by side? So we may recall the kindness of the master translators, and strive to repay our debt to them.

We'll explain the actual import of the title later on; here first comes the obeisance of the translator.

3 The Eight Chapters of the Treasure House

द्येतः इसः यरः यिषयाः यो ययसः योटः दः यहूरः यीः यदः ह्रेदः यश्वरः यर्षे । प्रः र्यः । प्रः र्यः । प्रः यो । प्रः र्यः । प्रः र्यः यो । प्रः र्यः यो । प्रः र्यः विष्यः याः यो । प्रः र्यः यो । प्रः र्यः । प्रः र्यः । प्रः र्यः यो । प्रः र्यः यो । प्रः र्यः । प्रः र

...We now turn to the second part of our detailed treatment of the text's subject matter: an explication of caused phenomena. In this regard we examine the actual content of the text only after discussing its structure in three divisions: a listing of the eight chapters, a demonstration of their interrelation, and a description of the subject matter presented in each of the eight.

यीयान्त्रस्त्रस्त्रस्य वाद्यस्य वाद्यस

Master Purnavardhana presents the eight chapters of the *Treasure House* as follows:

Eight chapters were written to elucidate in detail what is indicated only briefly by the opening words of the texts: "All phenomena, stained or without stain." The first two of the chapters are devoted to a general treatment of stained and unstained phenomena.

A detailed presentation of stained phenomena is left to the next three chapters. The third, for example, relates (1) who it is that is so very afflicted, (2) where they live so very afflicted, and (3) how they are so very afflicted. It does so with respective presentations on (1) the five types of beings in the three realmsthe world of living beings; (2) the external world-the "vessel" which holds these beings, and (3) the four modes of birth and twelve links of dependent origination. The fourth and fifth chapters describe what it is that makes beings so very afflicted-stained deeds and the mental afflictions.

चनाः भेरः चुः चन्तः द्वाराः द्वाराः द्वाराः द्वाराः द्वाराः चन्तः विश्वराद्वाराः विश्वराद्वराद्वाराः विश्वराद्वारायः विश्वराद्वाराः विश्वराद्वाराः विश्वराद

The final three chapters give a detailed treatment of unstained phenomena. Chapter Six covers *who* it is, what kind of person, that is purified; *where* it is, the place, that he is purified; and *how* it is, by what stages of realization, that he is purified. Chapter Seven concerns *what* it is that makes the person pure: as sutra says, "Affliction is something wisdom must destroy." Chapter Eight concerns meditation--that which provides a base for wisdom to rely on--for as sutra states again, "The mind in meditation gleans pure reality."

[क्रॅंबरकी:क्रॅंचर्रावर्शनक्षित्र, च्रिक्ष्याक्ष्याच्यात्र, क्रिक्ष्याच्यात्र, क्रिक्ष्याच्यात्र, च्रिक्ष्याच्य इ.शह्य क्रिक्ष्याचेश्वर विश्वर विश्वर क्रिक्ष्य क्रिक्ष्य क्रिक्ष्य क्रिक्ष्य क्रिक्ष्य क्रिक्ष्य क्रिक्ष्य क्र क्षेत्रः यात्रक्षः न्दः सं याष्ट्रक्षः विष्यः प्रत्यः स्त्रेत् । व्यक्षः युः योष्ट्रक्षः यात्रेक्षः यात्रेक्य

Other masters of the past have outlined the eight in the following way:

The work is presented in eight chapters in order to address three points: objects, activity, and result. In general, all *objects* may be divided into two types: apparent reality and actual reality. The first two chapters are devoted to apparent reality; the third, fourth, and fifth deal with actual reality--the four truths. The sixth chapter explains the different types of realization, whose sphere of *activity* is actual reality. The *result* which is attained, wisdom, as well as other personal attributes associated with it are treated in the final two chapters.

प्राचान्त्रस्य के प्राचित्र प्राचित

As for the interrelation of these chapters, the first presents the general subject matter addressed by the works on knowledge: stained and unstained phenomena. The first chapter makes but a mere mention of the powers and of the way in which caused phenomena arise; thus the following chapter, the second, is devoted to a more detailed treatment of these two points. The subject of the three realms, given only passing mention in these opening chapters, is therefore explored in the third. Some believe that the three realms

thus presented are creations of some god, such as the one they call "Powerful"; the following, fourth chapter therefore disproves this idea and shows that the real source is deeds.

The message of the next chapter, the fifth, is that the motivating force behind the deeds outlined in Chapter Four is the widespread mental afflictions. The sixth chapter is devoted to demonstrating a path by which we may eliminate these afflictions, so naturally comes after their presentation. The seventh chapter provides additional detail about the types of knowledge mentioned in the sixth; the eighth, lastly, completes the interrelationship of the chapters by enlarging upon the qualities which the Buddha possesses in common with advanced beings at lower stages--these qualities and those unique to the Buddha having first appeared in Chapter Seven.

|माशुभ्रामान्ने,मानुदानी,क्रमान्द्रायशान्त्रामान्यान्या

The third point we have promised, a description of the subject matter presented in each of the eight chapters, will be understood from the words of the Master's work itself.

4 What is Abhidharma?

यवर्याः मुंच मुंच प्रत्या । प्रत्यां यवर्षा प्रदेश प्रत्या । वर्ष्या प्रत्या । वर्ष्या प्रत्या । वर्ष्या । प्रत्या । वर्ष्या । प्रत्या । वर्ष्या । वर्ष्य । वर्ष्या । वर्ष्य । वर्ष । वर्ष्य । वर्ष । वर्ष । वर्ष्य । वर्ष्य । वर्ष्य । वर्ष । वर्ष ।

Having thus covered the pledge to compose the work with its preliminary eulogy, we shall present the actual explanation of the work's title, the first subject treated once the author has inspired himself for the work. The word "knowledge" will be explained first, both by itself and, incidentally, with regard to its accessories. Then we will speak of the expression "treasure house."

किंशासरेंद्रावेशास्याद्वीत्रोत्रहेशाववरायस्य

Knowledge is unstained wisdom, and its accessories.

[I.5]

यद्यान्यात्रेत्र क्ष्यां वर्षेत्र यहित्यो प्रमुद्य पर्वेद्य प्रमाण्य । विद्या प्रमुद्य पर्वेद्य प्रमुद्य प्रमु

Master Vasubandhu has promised "To write this commentary, the *Treasure House of Knowledge.*" But what does he mean by "knowledge"? There are two types of such knowledge; we may describe the first in the form of a logical statement:

यालीय हो। देश्याचीर प्रतियास याचीय स्ति स्वर्ध स्ति स्वर्ध स्वर्य स्वर्ध स्वर्ध स्वर्ध स्वर्ध स्वर्ध स्वर्ध स्वर्ध स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्ध स्वर्ध स्वर्ध स्वर्ध स्वर्ध स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्य स्वर्ध स्वर्य स्वर्

Consider the following three paths without stain: those of seeing, habituation, and no further learning.

They are actual knowledge, because

They constitute unstained wisdom and its accessories.

यान्त्रेश्वायायान्त्रेश र्वे प्रति । त्रि प्रति । प्रति । प्रति प्रति । प्

Now the second portion of knowledge, its accessories, may further be addressed in two divisions of real accessories to knowledge and merely nominal accessories to knowledge. Real accessories to knowledge may be

considered in terms of the level upon which they rely, the meaning of reliance in the present context, and an investigation into how many heaps knowledge has, if you also count all which stand in attendance to it.

स्थित चुर्रा से प्राप्त का वित्र प्राप्त का विकास मित्र स्था विकास स्या विकास स्था विका

On what levels do the three mentioned paths rely? The path of seeing may rely on any of the six levels of concentration. This is because the final stage of the path of preparation, known as "ultimate phenomenon," may itself rely upon any of these six levels; and the path of seeing always relies upon the same level as the stage of the ultimate phenomenon. As the scripture states, "Same level as ultimate phenomenon." Scripture also confirms our assertion that the ultimate-phenomenon stage can rely on any of the six levels:

Meditative at beyond no leisure, Extraordinary concentration level too.

5
Nominal Accessories to Knowledge

।रे.ब्रॅच.ये.ब्रैर.योट.रेट.चर्चेष.येर्श्यायोट.।

Those used to achieve it, and the commentaries.

[I.6]

यम्रमःभ्रम्भाग्यम् न्यायदेःभ्रमः स्यायायस्य यादः स्यायदेः भ्रम्भः स्वायाः विष्यायाः स्यायाः स्यायाः स्यायाः स्

स्त्रीयान्त्रा देः इस्यान्त्रेत् प्रत्यान्त्रेत् । विस्यान्त्रेत् । विस्य

These are a number of accessories to knowledge which are merely nominal. Those include first the wisdoms of learning, contemplation, and meditation, which are practiced in order "to achieve it"--actual knowledge. Second there is that amount of wisdom with which one is born. Finally there are the classical commentaries which take these very types of wisdom as their subject matter. These include *The Practice of Wisdom* and similar works.

Let us use the form of a logical statement:

Consider the accessories to knowledge just mentioned.

They may be given the name "knowledge," because

They constitute the means or cause of one's achieving actual knowledge.

यम्बार्थः त्रांश्वरः त्रांश्वरः त्रांश्वरः त्रां विश्वर्यः त्रां त्रां त्रां त्रां त्रां त्रां त्रां त्रां त्र स्रम्भ त्रां त स्रम्भ त्रां त

What is the actual process of causation here? Untainted wisdom springs from meditative wisdom, which comes from contemplative wisdom, which derives from the wisdom of learning--all dependent upon the wisdom with which one was born.

Calling these accessories "knowledge" serves a specific purpose: the author is trying to tell us that they must be relied upon as methods, or causes, for achieving real knowledge. In actual point of fact they could never *be* knowledge, since they are stained.

6 The Meaning of the Name of the Book

मह्यास्त्र म्ह्र्यास्त्र स्त्र स्त्

Where does the word "knowledge" [Sanskrit: *abhidharma*] come from? A phenomenon [*dharma*] is that which possesses [*dhṛ*] a nature. And knowledge brings to [*abhi*] you, or leads you to [*abhi*] that highest of all existing phenomena: nirvana.

বিষ্ট্রীর বিশ্ব প্রের প্রান্তর প্রির করা বিষ্ট্রীর প্রান্তর প

"Treasure house" of knowledge because they all fit here In its points, or since they are its home.

[I.7-8]

र्तिश्वास्त्राच्छ्यात्राच्यात्रच्यात्राच्यात्रच्यात्य

Master Vasubandhu has stated: "I shall write this commentary, *The Treasure House of Knowledge*." Just how is it a **treasure house of knowledge**? The very most prized points of the Seven Works on Knowledge **all fit here in the points**, in the subject matter, of the Master's commentary. The scabbard in which you sheathe a sword, for example, is called the "scabbard of the sword," and the place where you deposit your riches is termed the "treasure house of riches."

दे.ज.र.ज.चीदुःवियश्राक्षश्चर्यद्भात्त्रात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्रात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्या वर्षद्भावत्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र दे.ज.र.ज.चीदुःवियश्राक्षश्चर्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्यात्त्र्य

You could also say that the Seven works on Knowledge are themselves the "treasure house," and that they are the home, or source, for the present work. The expression "scabbard of the sword," for example, can just as well indicate the place from where the sword was drawn.

|गशुअ:य:८मेंशय:र्सेन.८.वर्मे.यश.सेंन.तश्याश्रीरश्रायर.सेंयाय.से

Next comes a demonstration that the teachings on knowledge are the word of the Teacher, preceded by a statement of purpose.

7 Why Study Higher Knowledge?

क्रिंशः इस्रयः प्रचान्तः इस्रयः विद्यान्ते विद्यान्ते विद्याः विद्यान्ते विद्याने विद्याने

There's no way to put the mental afflictions to rest without an Ultimate analysis of every existing phenomenon, and this Affliction is what keeps the world adrift here in the ocean of Life. Thus the Teacher has spoken it, they say.

[I.9-12]

रयःश्रद्भःयःयवदःयःयःद्रश्रस्थःयःभ्र्यःयःश्रिःयरःव्येःयरःयःप्यःव्यव्यःश्रदःय। क्र्यःश्रद्भः क्रिंश्यःयःव्यवदःयःयःविदःयःयःद्रश्रिःयरःव्येःयरःव्यःयःव्यव्यःश्रदःय। क्रिंश्यःयः

ब्रिमा स्थान्तिर तह्न्याः हेत्र स्थान्त्रीत्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्य स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्य स्थान्त्र स्थान्य

Giving an explanation of knowledge has the following purpose. Without wisdom which analyzes every phenomenon in an ultimate way, there is no way of putting to rest all that the mental afflictions imply. And this affliction is what keeps those of the world adrift here in the ocean of life. It is therefore necessary to plant, in students' minds, wisdom which can make this ultimate analysis of phenomena. Thus the explanation.

The Meaning of the Name of the Abhidharma School

श्चिश्यामान्नकेद्रः तीयात्मान्नकेद्राचिश्वान्ति । यक्षेत्रः यक्षित्रः यक्षित

"Now why is the other school," one might continue, "known as the `Detailists'?" One may say that they are "Detailists" because they devote their study exclusively to the classical commentary known as *Detailed Exposition*, or else because they understand the *Exposition's* meaning. The school itself may be further divided into a number of groups. Those who reside in Kashmir are known as the "Kashmiris," while those who live in the western part of the same land are known as the "Westerners." Detailists in areas other than Kashmir, those in central India and so forth, are referred to collectively as those "Under the Sun."

9 The Qualities of an Authentic Buddhist Book

वि'र्या क्रिंश स्थ्या स्वाप्त हैं स्था विद्या है स्थ्या है स्थ्य है स्थ्या है स्थ्या

Now the lines beginning with "There's no way to put the mental afflictions to rest..." also indicate that Master Vasubandhu's commentary possesses the four requisite attributes of a reputable work. Again we may use the form of a logical statement:

Consider the act of making a statement of purpose, and of a relation of the text to that purpose, here at the beginning of the commentary.

It has a purpose of its own, because

It conveys to disciples the fact that the commentary possesses the four attributes of a reputable work. Once they realize that these attributes are present, disciples will be inspired to study the text.

वर्षेत्रास्त्री । प्यत्त्र्यं । प्यत्त्र्यं । प्यत्त्र्यः वर्षेत्रः वर्येत्रः वर्षेत्रः वर्येत्रः वर्येत्रः वर्षेत्रः वर्षेत्रः वर्षेत्रः वर्षेत्

Here are the four attributes:

- 1) The *subject matter* of the text concerns stained and unstained types of phenomena. It is indicated in the verse with the words "every existing phenomenon."
- 2) The *purpose* is to utilize this subject matter to plant, in students' minds, that wisdom which analyzes phenomena in an ultimate way. It is indicated by the words "ultimate analysis."
- 3) The *ultimate goal* is to have these students achieve nirvana, both with and without anything remaining. It is indicated indirectly by the entire phrase running from "There's no way..." up to "...without," and on from "this affliction..." up to the word "Thus."
- 4) A *relation* exists in that the purpose must be achieved through the subject matter of the work, and the ultimate goal through this very purpose.

One may also state the relation as being between the subject matter of the work (that is, all existing phenomena) and the means by which this subject matter is expressed (i.e., the commentary itself).

10 What Causes Worlds

|यशयायशयहैवार्हेन्सूर्स्टवाशस्त्रीय|

Deeds cause the multitude of worlds.

[IX.1]

र्युवाःश्याश्राध्याश्राध्याश्राध्याश्राध्या । विश्वायविदःयवेश्वी । देशावयावःश्चीःयःदरः। द्वरः स्वाधःश्चित्रःयःश्चित्रःयःश्चित्रः विश्वाः विश्वाःयविदःयःश्चित्रः। द्वरः स्वाधःश्चित्रःयःश्चित्रः। द्वरः स्वाधःश्चित्रः। द्वरः विश्वाः विश्वाःयविदःयविदःश्चित्रः। द्वरः

One may begin with the following question: "You have just described a multitude of worlds—both the great vessels of the outer worlds and the living beings they contain. Where do they all come from?" They do not come from no cause at all, and they do not come from causes that are inconsistent with their own nature. This is because they stay for some time, then go away; and as the root text said itself, "Not an almighty one or the like, because of stages and such."

What then *does* cause them? It is the past **deeds** of living beings that **cause** all **the multitude of worlds**--both the places and the people.

The exposition that follows now on deeds is divided into two parts: first on the basic nature of deeds, and secondly on listings from sutra on the different types of deeds. The former is itself presented first in a brief introduction and then in a more detailed treatment.

11 Introduction to Deeds

१२.४.४४४.४.५.२८.५४.५४। १४४४.५.७८.७.५५.५ १८४.५३८.५४.२८.८४.१ १८.८४.५४.५८.८४। १८.८४.४४.४५.४४.४४।

They're movement of the mind and what it brings. Mental movement is a deed of thought; What it causes, deeds of body and speech. These are either communicating or not.

[IV.2-5]

यश्चायश्चित्रः स्वर्भः क्रियाशः स्वर्भः विश्वायवितः स्वर्भः यश्चायः विश्वायवितः स्वर्भः यश्चित्रः स्वर्भः स्वरंभः स्व

"In the line above," one might continue, "you said that `deeds cause the multitude of worlds.' Just how many types of deeds are there?" **They**--deeds--are of two different types: deeds consisting of movement of the mind, and the deeds that it brings--those that the mind motivates.

One may ask about each of their basic natures. **Mental movement is a deed of the thought,** for it consists of a deed linked with consciousness of the thought. **What it causes**--that is, deeds motivated by the mind--are of two kinds: these are **deeds of** the **body and** deeds of **speech. These** two themselves can be further divided into two types each: they **are either** what we call **"communicating" or not.**

र्याचिरः साधिरः पदेः प्रचे पद्। र्याचिरः साधिरः स्वे पदेः प्रचे पदे।

Our more detailed treatment of these points continues in three steps: the definition of a deed, typical features of the three types of deeds in general, and different divisions of non-communicating types of deeds.

प्रमाणीः इस्रायमः मेवान्तेनः प्रमाणीः इस्रायमः मेवान्तेनः स्याप्तमः सेवान्तेनः स्याप्तमः सेवान्तेनः स्याप्तमः सेवान्तेनः स्याप्तमः स्वान्तेनः स्याप्तमः सेवान्तेनः स्याप्तमः स्वान्तेनः स्याप्तमः स्वान्तेनः स्याप्तमः स्वान्तेनः स्याप्तमः स्वान्तेनः स्याप्तमः स्वान्तेनः स्वान्

In discussing the definition of a deed we will cover first the communicating, and then the non-communicating types. The former will be described first for those of the body, and then for those of speech.

12 Communicating Deeds of the Body

|त्युब्राः क्रुब्राः के व्याचीतः द्वीत्यवः खुः वर्देत्।

Body communicating held to be shape.

[IV.6]

"You mentioned," one might start, "a line just now saying `these are either communicating or not.' Can you describe the types of bodily deeds that are said to be `communicating'?" **Communicating** deeds of the **body** are **held** in the present school **to be** the **shape** that the physical body takes under motivation by movements of the mind present for the duration of specific actions such as prostrating oneself before a holy object or taking the life of a sentient being.

13 Non-Communicating Form

|ग्रायेट्य:५८:शेस्य:से५:य:ये:यरः। |५गो:५८:से:५गो:ह्य:यद्वेय:ग्राटः। |यद्युट:व:के:इस्यःस्तुर:नुय:य। |५:दे:इस्र:२ग:नु५:सेद:वर्ह्ऽ।

Even during distraction, while mind is stopped, Virtue or not, continuing after, Taking the great elements as its causes, This form we say does not communicate.

[I.41-4]

|याशुक्रायाः इक्षायमः मैयाः चुन् काः धोदः या चुयाकाः चत्रनः या देवाः चीनः क्षेत्रः विकास्य विकास विकास विकास व

Someone may begin:

What about the line above that ends with the words "...and non-communicating"? What do you mean by "non-communicating form"?

र्रा श्रेमश्रास्य क्षेत्रया प्रमानिक विषय क्षेत्रया कष्टिक क्षेत्रया क्षेत्रया क्षेत्रया क्षेत्रया कष्टिक क्षेत्रया कष्टिक क्षेत्रया क्षेत्रया क्षेत्रया कष्टिक क्षेत्रया क्षेत्रया क्षेत्रया क्षेत्रया कष्टिक क्षेत्रया क्षेत्रया कष्टिक क्षेत्रय

This form which **does not communicate** possesses five distinctive features. The first is a feature of period: this type of form is present **even during** periods when one is **distracted**, or **while** one is engaged in a controlled meditation where **mind is stopped**.

दश्यात्वीरायाक्ष्यात्रात्तात्रात्तात्रात्तात्रात्तात्रात्तात्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्र यत्रात्त्

This much is also true of the eye and so on, so that we must mention a feature of essence: this form is either **virtuous or not**. The description so far could apply to communicating form as well, so a feature of time is included: non-communicating form **continues** on **after** a deed, in a perfect stream. As much could also be said of virtuous and non-virtuous holds, and thus we note that this form **takes the great elements as its causes**.

विश्वासक्तरक्ष्या । प्यतःश्चास्य प्रमानह्ति। विश्वासक्तरक्ष्य प्रमान । प्रमान । विश्वासक्तरक्ष्य विश्वासक्तरक्षय । विश्वासक्षय । विश्वसक्षय । विश्वसक्यय । विश्वसक्षय ।

The Kashmiri Sanghabhadra [?] attacks this definition with the following verse:

It's incomplete, contradicts classical Commentary, one then is not, One not then is. "Even's" superfluous, A feature not mentioned should be.

He explains his criticism as follows:

Let's consider some non-communicating form at the first instant of its existence. According to you, it could never be non-communicating form, because it is *incomplete*—it lacks the feature of continuing on in a perfect stream. Consider this form again. According to you, it could also never be a substantial thing, because it's a stream. And if you go ahead and agree that it is not substantial, you *contradict* the *classical commentaries* which explain that it is.

श्रम्भन्द्रभ्यात्रः स्वान्त्रभ्यात्रः स्वान्तः स्व

Consider further the non-communicating form that is created by single-pointed concentration. If your definition is correct, *then it is not* non-communicating form. This is because it does not exist during particular periods when one is distracted, or while mind is stopped; rather, it is present during periods when one is not distracted, and when the mind is functioning.

चिर्यम् चीर्यक्षाम् चीक्षाम् चिर्यम् चिर्यम् चीक्षाम् चीक्षाम् चिर्यम् चिर्

Take too what is *not* this kind of form at all: form which does communicate intent. If you are right *then* it *is* form which doesn't communicate intent, because it is present during periods without distraction, and with a functioning mind. Moreover, the word "even" is superfluous: when you state that this type of form is there when the mind is distracted, everyone understands that it is also present at times when the mind is functioning. You have, finally, also made the mistake of *not mentioning a feature* which should have been: the fact that this type of form is invisible and ineffable.

दर्वे स्वास्त्री । विकासे द्वा का स्वास्त्र स

Sanghabhadra [?] then presents an alternative definition, in the following verse of his own:

Form different from the one You made: during thought and also Not, specified, ineffable, This does "not communicate."

त्र्री र्या होत्यार ने स्वा त्रीत्यार क्षेत्र क्षेत

Both of the above systems, nonetheless, amount to the same inconsistency. If you establish something as non-communicating form because it relates to periods when the mind is not distracted, or functioning, then form which does communicate intent must also not communicate it. And if on the other hand you establish something as non-communicating because it relates to periods where the mind is stopped, then the two restraints which arise from single-pointed concentration could never be non-communicating.

14 Virtue and Other Types

יישדיטן

निस्यत्यत्ते द्वान्त्र न्याः स्वान्त्र स्वान्

...Freedom

Is the ultimate virtue. The roots as well as Shame and a conscience are so in themselves. Those that are linked with them, by a mental link; Actions and the like, by motivation. Their opposites, non-virtue. The ultimate In the ethically neutral, those described.

[IV.30b-6]

One may ask whether virtue and the rest are established only on the basis of the motivation involved. They are not; in fact, there are four different divisions, beginning with what we call "ultimate" virtue. How do we describe them?

वस्तिम्बर्भ्यात्रम् न्याये देव्यात्रम् न्याये क्षेत्रम्य स्वर्ण्यात्रम् न्याये स्वर्ण्यात्रम् स्वर्णे स्वर्ये स्वर्णे स्वर्णे

First consider **freedom**--nirvana. It **is the ultimate virtue**, for it is the highest state of happiness, free of every single suffering. It's like a totally healthy person. Next consider **the** three **roots** of virtue, **as well as** a sense of **shame and a conscience.** They are virtue by nature, for they are virtue **in** and of **themselves**, without relying on anything else. They are like medicinal herbs.

या तस्र्रायत् श्रुप्तायः श्रुप्तायः श्रुप्तायः विष्ठाः विष्ठा

Still further let us take **those** instances of mind and mental functions **that** are joined in a mental **link with them**--with these virtues. They are **"mental-link"** virtue, for we establish them as virtue **by** the fact that they share **a mental link** with virtue. They are, for example, like the liquid in which you mix your medicinal herbs.

देस्न्यते श्रुवः न्युकः न्युक्तः विद्यात् । युवः श्रुवः न्याः विद्याः विद्य

Next consider physical and verbal **actions and the like-**-the things that are motivated by the mental elements just described. They are what we call "motivational" virtue, for they are considered virtue **by** reason of the virtuous **motivation** involved with them. We can compare them to the milk that a mother produces after she has drunk the liquid mixed with the medicinal herbs described.

The opposites of each of the above are what we call "non-virtue"; the process is as follows. First take the cycle of life. It is the ultimate non-virtue, for it is the highest form of unhappiness--total bondage in suffering. It is like an illness.

Next consider the three root non-virtues, as well as shamelessness and the lack of a conscience. They are non-virtue by nature, for they are non-virtue in and of themselves, without relying on anything else. They are like poisonous herbs.

श्रायस्ति। सर्वेत्रायः श्रिष्ठाः स्वायः यहित्यः यविष्ठाः स्वायः स्वयः स्

Then consider instances of mind and mental functions which share a mental link with these non-virtues. They are "mental-link" non-virtue, for we establish them as non-virtue because they share a mental link with non-virtue. These we can compare to a liquid in which the poisonous herbs were mixed.

इत्तान्त्रीयात्र्यत्वात्त्र्यत्यात्र्यः व्यान्त्रात्त्रः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्तः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्तः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्त्रः व्यान्तः व्यान्तः

Let's next take the deeds of body and speech motivated by the mental elements described. These are "motivational" non-virtue, for we establish them as non-virtue through the non-virtuous motivation involved. These types resemble the milk that a mother gives after she has drunk the liquid mixed with the poisonous herbs.

The ultimate in the things which are ethically neutral consist of those instances we have described previously: non-analytic cessations and unproduced space.

15 The Definition of the Three Types of Karma

The following brief definition of the three types of karma is found in the Treasure House of Chim, a commentary upon the Treasure House of Wisdom by Chim Jampeyang (c. 1280) found at S6954.

न्योःयःन्दः। धेनःनुःर्देदःश्चेर्द्दःश्चेन्द्रःगिन्नः याद्वेशःयशःयात्वनःयदेःयशः वेशन्योःश्चेः न्योःयश्यात्वनःयःखुदःशःयश्चनःधेनःर्वे।

Sutra describes three kinds of karma: virtuous karma, non-virtuous karma, and neutral karma. Virtue is that karma which, in the short term, brings you a karmic ripening which is desirable (that is, a feeling of pleasure), and ultimately protects you from suffering (that is, helps you achieve nirvana). Non-virtue is that karma which brings you a karmic ripening which is undesirable (that is, a feeling of pain). A neutral deed, something neither virtuous nor non-virtuous, is that karma which brings you something which is neither desirable nor undesirable.

We return next to the commentary of His Holiness the First Dalai Lama:

16 Deeds according to Result

|पर्सेद्र'त्रस्य पर्सेद्र'त्रस्य स्थितः स्थितः । |पर्दे पर्सेद्र' त्रस्य स्थितः स्थितः ।

Merit, non-merit, those which are unshifting; The three including those which lead to pleasure.

[IV.179-80]

Now deeds may be divided into three different types: deeds which represent merit, non-merit, or those which are unshifting. They can also be divided into a different set of three: the three including those which lead to an experience of pleasure and so on.

Our more detailed treatment of these points will proceed in two steps: first a presentation of merit and the rest; secondly, a description of the mentioned pleasure and so on.

17 Merit, Non-Merit, and Unshifting Deeds

विश्वीत्रम्थाः श्रीत्रः श्रीत्रः विश्वीत्रः विश्वात्रः विश्वात्रः विश्वात्रः विश्वात्रः विश्वात्रः विश्वात्रः व विष्ठात्रः विष्ठात्रः विश्वात्रः विश्वात्रः विश्वात्रः विश्वात्रः विश्वात्रः विश्वात्रः विश्वात्रः विश्वात्रः व विश्वात्रः व

Merit, virtuous deeds of the realm of desire. The ones that come from the above, unshifting. They're unshifting for the reason that The deeds involved ripen at their levels.

[IV.181-4]

One might start with the following question: "Just how do you describe merit and the other types of deeds you mentioned?" Deeds that we call "merit" are the virtuous deeds of the realm of desire. What we call "unshifting" deeds are the ones that come from those realms above; that is, from the form and formless realms.

वित्याद्यात्यात्वात्यात्वे क्षेत्रवात्यात्वे वर्षकाचान्त्रवाशुक्षायाक्षक्षात्यात्वे वर्षकाचान्त्रवाशुक्षायाक्ष

द्यर प्रतिर पार्च हिर हे तहें द्र हो क्षेत्र हो का प्रति का प्रति का विषय का महिर का विषय का

"Isn't it contradictory," one may object, "for you to describe deeds of the upper realms as unshifting, when those of the third and lower levels of concentration are explained as shifting types?" There is no contradiction. The levels of concentration from the third on down are explained as "shifting" or "affected" only with reference to their being affected by the various problems that prevent one from perfecting single-pointed concentration. The point in calling deeds of the upper realms "unshifting" is in reference, rather, to the fact that they do not shift direction when they ripen.

These deeds are called "unshifting" for the reason that a ripening of deeds which is meant to occur at "their" level--at the levels of the form and formless realms--will never occur at any other level. The point is thus that the ripening is an **unshifting** one.

यःश्रंश्वारात्यश्चीरायः विश्वात्त्रः विश्वात्त्यः विश्वात्त्रः विश्वात्त्रः विश्वात्त्रः विश्वात्त्रः विश्वात्यः विश्वात्त्रः विश्वात्त्रः विश्वात्त्रः विश्वात्त्रः विश्वात्त्यः विश्वात्त्रः विश्वात्त्रः विश्वात्त्रः विश्वात्त्रः विश्वात्त्रः विश्वात्त्रः विश्वात्त्रः विश्वात्यः विश्वात्यः विश्वात्तः विश्वात्त्यः विश्वात्तः विश्वात्तः विश्वात्तः विश्वात्तः विश्वात्य

Deeds of the desire realm, on the other hand, are shifting--someone meant to be born as a pleasure being can, through the effect of certain factors, take birth as one of the other types of beings. There was for example the case of the Brahmin who because of his generosity was to be born as a pleasure being. But he caught sight of an especially majestic elephant and thought to himself how wonderful it would be if he could obtain one. As a result, he took birth as the elephant known as Son of the Protector.

यावयः तीयाश्चा । यदः स्त्री । यदः स्त्री । यदः स्त्रीयाश्चा । यदः स्त्रीयाश्ची । यदः स्त

Next we consider deeds involving a sensation of pleasure and so on. We proceed in three steps concerning (1) definitive examples of each of the deeds leading to specific types of experiences, (2) the various divisions of experience, and (3) the correlation between specific sensations and the deeds they result from. Definitive examples are discussed in terms of both positions accepted by the present school and those accepted by others.

18 Experiences that Ripen from Past Deeds

These are either definite or not;
The definite's three types because of those
Experienced as something seen and such.
Some claim that the kinds of deeds are five,
Others that the combinations are four.
Three of them act to project a discrete being.

[IV.197-202]

 प्टे.ह्य.तयु.जया.र्थेय.त्यचीय्याल्ट्रे.तयु.क्षेत्र। लट.क्षे.भात्तय.कट्र.जा.श्रेट्र.चर.वर्चीर.च.जय्यीट्याचीवय.जा.श्रेट्र.वर्चीर.च्ची.जया च्ची.जया क्र्.क्षे.भारतयीय्याचीय्याचीय्याचीय्याचीय्याचीय्याचीय्याचीय्याचीय्याचीय्याचीय्याचीय्याचीय्याचीय्याचीय्य

Now there are three types of deeds which lead to a future experience through a process of ripening. These types of deeds themselves are grouped into two: they are either definite, or not. The "definite" group is of three different types, because it includes (1) those deeds with results that are experienced as "something seen"--that is, deeds which ripen into an experience in this very life; (2) deeds with results that are experienced after one's rebirth--that is, in the very next life; and (3) deeds with results that are experienced in "some other" life--which is to say, in any life after the next.

स्वर्यात्वराष्ट्रस्य प्राप्त होत्या होत्या स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्ध स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर्थ स्वर

Some people claim that the kinds of deeds are five: they arrive at this figure by dividing indefinite types of deeds into (1) those which will definitely ripen but at an indefinite time, and (2) those where neither ripening itself nor its timing is definite.

द्याया यद्विमानाः स्थायाः यद्वा यद्विमानाः यद्विमानः यद्विमानाः यद्विमानः यद

Others--namely, the Exemplist group in the Sutrist school--claim that the possible combinations which hold true in this regard are four. They say there are (1) deeds which are definite to ripen but at no definite time, (2) deeds which should ripen at a definite time but which are not definite to ripen at all, (3) deeds which are definite in both respects, and (4) deeds which are definite in neither respect.

च्ची-तयुःसीटःसुनुःसीन्त्रःसुन्यःस्थान्यःस्थान्यःस्थितः यश्चितः। यश्चित्रःस्थाःस्थान्यःस्थाःस्थाःस्थाःस्थाःस्थाः सरःचीनःग्री। अज्ञूटःक्ष्यःतःश्चीटःत्यीरःचीःलश्चाग्रीशःसुशःश्चितःश्चःत्राद्येतःस्थाः स्थाःस्थाःस्थाःस्थाःस्थाः

One may ask which of these deeds projects a discrete being in the future. **Three of them act to project a discrete being,** but deeds with results that you see in this very life do not. This is because they ripen upon the very same stream of heaps which performed the original deed.

Next we examine the number of different deeds that can be projected with different realms and types of beings.

19 Deeds that Definitely Ripen

विद्यास्त्रीत्रः स्वान्यः स्व

Those are definite which involve fierce
Mental affliction or faith, an object of special
Qualities, anything done on a
Continual basis, killing father or mother.
Deeds with results which are something seen,
Due to features of the object or thought;
Anything which was something certain to ripen,
Where completely free of the level's desire.

[IV.213-20]

"Just what," one may ask, "do you mean when you mention types of deeds that are certain to ripen?" **Those** deeds **are definite** (will definitely ripen into a future experience) **which involve** any of the following:

- 1) fierce emotions, of either mental affliction or faith;
- 2) **an object of special qualities**--that is, deeds performed with respect to the Gems;
- 3) anything done on a continual basis; and
- 4) **killing** one's **father or mother**, even when this is done with meritorious intent.

१२.द्रे.श्रव्रःक्ष्यःवर्षयायः त्रुप्ता । विद्यायप्तरः द्युरः यः प्रवरः क्षेत्रः क्ष्यः वर्ष्यः वर्षः वर्षः वर्ष

"In the lines above," one may continue, "you mentioned that `one is the type with results that you see.' Can you describe this further?" **Deeds with results which are something seen** in the same life are this way **due to** special **features of the object or thought** involved.

श्चर्यास्य स्थान्त्र स्था

A case of a deed which, because of the special features of the object involved, turned into the type that gives a result in the very same life would be as follows. In one of his former lives, our Teacher was once a certain monk who had mastered all three sections of the canon. There had been a steady increase in quarreling among the community of monks. One monk--who had himself committed the sections of the canon to memory--managed to bring the different sides to an agreement. This angered the other monk (the one who was a master of the canon), who made the sarcastic statement that "A woman has settled a women's quarrel." Because of this deed the monk turned into a woman in that very life, and took five hundred births thereafter as a woman as well.

चिश्रात्त्राष्ट्र, देश्वेट, त्यात्राष्ट्र व्यक्ष्यात्येत्र त्यात्र स्त्रीत्र विद्रां चित्र प्रत्यात्र व्यक्षात्य त्यक्षात्य त्यक्षात्य विद्रात्य विद्रात्य

An instance of a deed which, because of special features of the thought involved, turns into the type that gives a result that you see in this very life would be as follows. King Kanaka had a certain eunuch by the name of "Longwa." He met someone driving a herd of five hundred cattle and asked the man what he planned to do. "We're going to castrate them," was the reply. Overcome with compassion, Longwa managed to save all the cattle from their fate: as a result, his own organ was restored in the very same life.

प्राचाराध्येष्ठ, त्यार्ट्स क्ष्या व्यव्या ची त्या ची त्या त्या क्ष्या व्याचाराध्येष्ठ स्था व्यव्या ची त्या व्य

Aside from the above, anything which was something certain to ripen at any particular level can also constitute a deed which gives a result that you see in the very same life, in cases where the person has become completely free of any desire for this level.

20
Objects with Very Special Features

विर्यक्षः यी. वस्त्राचि स्त्रीत्रः वर्ष्याः वर्षाः वर्यः वर्षाः वर्षाः वर्षाः वर्षाः वर्षः वर्षाः वर्षाः वर्षाः वर्षः वर्षाः वर्षाः व

Help or harm to any of the following Leads to quick experience of a result: Anyone coming out of cessation or love, No affliction, seeing, result of destroying.

[IV.221-4]

श्री चर्झेश्रा तर् से में ।

यश्री मार्थ से मार्य से मार्थ से मार

One may ask about the features that make an object special. Help or harm which you perform towards anyone who has just come out of cessation leads to a quick experience of a result, for it is almost as if such a person has just come back from nirvana. Help and harm too towards anyone who has just come out of a meditation on immeasurable love or a state of one-pointed concentration where he has no affliction at all also leads to the speedy experience of a result. This is because such persons are helping every living being; they are involved with a willingness to accept the ultimate personal responsibility, free of any affliction; and they are totally imbued with an immeasurable kind of merit, very sharp and clear.

Help or harm done towards a person who has just come out of the path of **seeing** is another example of a deed that leads to a quick result. This is true because this person has just attained, for the first time, an unstained state where he has gotten rid of every undesirable object eliminated by the path of seeing.

यात्रम् साम्ने साम्रे साम्रे

Finally, beneficial or harmful acts towards a person who has just come out of the state where he achieved the **result of destroying** the enemy also lead to the quick experience of a result. The reason here is that the person has just achieved, for the first time, the unstained state where he has gotten rid of every undesirable object eliminated by the path of habituation.

चयाः में . चर्त्र त्यां व्याः में . चर्त्र चर्त्र . चर्त्र चर्त्य चर्त्र चर्त्य चर्त्र चर्त्य चर्त्य चर्त्य चर्त्र चर्त्र च

Help or harm performed towards those who have just come out of a state where they have achieved one of the two results--where they need either return or not return to the realm of desire--does not though lead to a speedy result. First of all, their "new" condition of having reached an unstained state free of the objects eliminated by the path of seeing has by this time become somewhat old. Secondly, they have yet to reach the unstained state where they have just managed, for the first time, to rid themselves of the objects stopped by the path of habituation.

We turn now to the third and final step in our discussion of deeds involving a sensation of pleasure and so on. This is a presentation of the correlation between specific sensations and the deeds from which they result. Following the actual presentation we will go into some detail on the subject of mental illness.

21 Je Tsongkapa on the Consequences of Karma

The following selection is from the Great Book on the Steps of the Path, composed by Lord Tsongkapa (1357-1419) and found at S5392:

Here is the third section, a presentation on the consequences of the various kinds of bad deeds. We proceed in three parts, beginning with what are called the "ripened" consequences.

यश्याविरः यश्चिरः यश्चः यश्चिरः यश्चः यश्चिरः यश्चः यश्चिरः यश्चः यश्चः यश्चः यश्चः यश्चः यश्चः यश्चः यश्च

Now each one of the ten paths of karma can itself be divided into three kinds—lesser, medium, and greater—depending on the intensity of the three poisons. The *Main Stage of Levels* states that, from the ten greater instances of killing and the rest, one is born into the hells. It says that from medium instances of each of the ten you take birth as an insatiable spirit; and from the ten lesser instances, you are born as an animal.

The *Sutra* on the *Ten Levels* however states the consequences of two of the kinds of instances, the lesser and the medium, in reverse of this.

ल्ट्यार्झे्ट्रग्रीश्रास्ट्यायात्त्री त्याय्यंत्यायात्ये्ट्यायात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रा विष्ण्यव्यास्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्ते विष्णात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त्रात्त

The "consistent" consequences are as follows. Even if you do manage to escape the realms of misery and take birth as a human, the following respective results occur to you:

- 1) Your life is short.
- 2) You don't have enough to live on.
- 3) You have problems keeping your partner from others.
- 4) People don't believe what you say, even when you're telling the truth.
- 5) You lose friends easily.
- 6) You hear things as bad sounds.
- 7) No one listens to you.
- 8) Your personality is dominated by desire.
- 9) Your personality is dominated by anger.
- 10) Your personality is dominated by stupidity.

द्यान्तर्वः क्षेट्याण्यः श्रीः व्यन्तः वर्षः वरः वर्षः वर्षः वर्षः वर्षः वर्षः वर्षः वर्ष

The Chapter on the True and the Sutra on the Ten Levels state that there are two such consequences for each of the ones given here; even if you do manage to take birth as a human,

- 1) Your life is short, and you get sick easily.
- 2) You don't have enough to live on, and what you do have is all just common property with others.
- 3) The people who work around you are "inconsistent," which here means unreliable, and you find yourself having a lot of competition for your partner.
- 4) No one believes what you say, even when you are speaking the truth, and others are always deceiving you.
- 5) The people around you are always fighting against one another, and have an undesirable character.
- 6) You hear many unpleasant things, and when others talk to you it always seems to you as if they want to start a fight.
- 7) No one respects what you say—no one thinks that what you say has any particular value, and you are afflicted with a lack of confidence.
- 8) Your personality is dominated by desire, and you are never satisfied with what you have.
- 9) You are always finding yourself without help, or never find the help you need; and you are always hurting others, or always being hurt by others.
- 10) You become a person who keeps harmful views, or a deceitful person.

ব্রংঘর্রিংমার্ক্সমার্ব্র্সমার্ক্সমার্ক্সমার্ক্সমার্ক্সমার্ক্সমার্ক্সমার্ক্সমার্ক্সমার্ক্সমার্ক্সমার্ক্সমার্ক্সমার্ক্সমার্ক্সমার্ক্সমার্ক্সমার্ক্সমার্ব্রমার্ক্সমার

Great lamas of the past have expressed the position that it is a consequence of consistent *action* where as a karmic result of killing you become someone who takes pleasure in killing and the rest. It is a consequence of consistent *experience* then when you have to undergo the results just listed.

ख्यं स्वाः क्षेत्रः अः अः अः नद्द्यः व्याः व्यः व्याः व्याः

Next is what we call the "environmental" or "dominant" consequence. Here for example the consequence of killing expresses itself in the outer world around you. Food, drink, medicine, the crops in the fields, and other such things have very little power; they are always inferior; they have little nutrition or potency; they are hard to digest, and they cause disease in you. Because of this the majority of the living beings around you die before reaching the end of a full life.

Because you have stolen, then the crops are few and far between; the crops have no power to remove hunger; they spoil; they never come up; dry spells stay on too long; it rains too much; the crops dry up, or die off.

र्यवाग्वाधिमञ्जीहो। यत्यम् वार्षे प्रत्यास्य प्रतः श्विष् श्विष प्रतः स्वार्थः प्रतः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः स्वर्थः स्वर्यः स्वर्यः

Because you have done wrong sex, you live in a place where there is piss and shit all around, and mud and dirt and filth, and everything stinks, and everywhere seems unpleasant and distasteful.

र्यः प्रदेशक्ष्में स्वरं स्वर

Because you have lied, you live in a world where, when you undertake farming or some work in cooperation with other people, in the end the work fails to prosper, and the people can't work well together, and for the most part everyone is cheating one another, and is afraid, and where there are many things to be afraid of.

द्रायदे त्री शस्त्रीयाश्चायत् । यत् त्रीयाश्चायत् । यत् । यहे व्यायात् । यहे व्य

Because you have split people up with your talk, the very ground in the place you live is all uneven, covered with crags and gullies, full of highs and lows, so that you can travel only with difficulty, and where you are always afraid, and there are many things to be afraid of.

दह्मश्रायदे कुं शर सं्ट्रियश स्ट्रिय स्ट्रिय

Because you have spoken harsh words, the ground where you live is covered with obstacles like the trunks of fallen trees, and thorns, and stones, and clods of dirt, and lots of sharp broken pieces of glass; it's rough, and dreary; no streams, or lakes, or springs of water; the whole earth is parched, poisoned with salt and borax, burning hot, useless, threatening; a place where there are many things to fear.

Because you have talked meaninglessly, fruits refuse to grow on the trees, or they start to grow at the wrong times, never at the right times, and seem ripe when they're still not ripe, or their roots are frail, or they can't stay long; there are no places to take your leisure, no parks, no glades, no pools of cool water, and many things around to make you afraid.

Because you have coveted what others have, then each and every good thing you ever manage to find starts to get worse, and less and less, never more, each one of them, with the passing of each of the four seasons, and in every month, and even day by day.

मुद्दार्था अर्थान्य प्रमास्त्र प

Because you have wished bad things on others, you live in a world of chaos, where diseases spread, and evil is everywhere, and plague, and conflict, and fear from the armies of other nations; where there are many lions or leopards or other dangerous animals; where there are everywhere venomous snakes or scorpions or poison biting worms; you live surrounded by harmful spirits, and thieves or muggers, and the like.

यदी-यर-क्रूट-य-द्रिश-दें और प्री-विद्र्य-देन-क्रुव-य-द्र्य-य-देन-क्रुव-य-द्र्य-य-व-द्र्य-य-द्र्य-य-द्र्य-य-द्र्य-य-द्र्य-य-द्र्य-य-द्र्य-य-द्र्य-य-द्र्य-य-द्र्य-य-द्र्य-य-व-

Because you have held wrong views, then you live in a world where the single highest source of happiness is steadily disappearing from the earth; a world where people think that things that are unclean and things that are suffering are actually nice, and happiness; a world where there is no place to go, no one to help, nothing to protect you.

The Mind-Only School on How Mental Seeds Cause our Perceptions

The selections below are taken from the Illumination of the True Thought, found at S5408 and written by Lord Tsongkapa:

त्र।

पहिंद्राया विश्व विष्य विश्व विश्व विश्व विश्व विश्व विश्व विश्व विश्व विश्व विश्व

... The second part has two sections of its own: stating the position of the other school, and then denying this position. Here is the first.

This is how the presentation was made. Then those of the Mind-Only School come back, considering and then presenting a position which by itself reflects the primary belief of their entire system.

यर त्यींर बुटा ता क्ष्मात्र्यात्रत्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्रत्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्र्यात्यात्य

They speak first of the mental seed, the energy, from which the "mind of the eye" (which refers to the consciousness of the eye) comes forth. Another case of consciousness, as it is in the process of stopping, in the next moment plants this mental seed in the foundation consciousness. When this seed ripens later, it produces that consciousness of the eye, one which takes after the earlier one.

सदःश्रेताःचाःक्रेयाःचाःक्रियःचाःश्रेतःक्रेतःचाःचाःक्रियःचाःचाःक्रियःचाःक्रेयःचाःक्राःचाःक्रेयःचाःक्रियःचाःचाःक्रियःचाःक्रियःचाःक्रियःचाःक्रियःचाःक्रियःचाःचित्रवःचाःच्याःचाःक्रियःचाःचित्रवःचाःचित्रवःचाःचित्रवःचाःचित्रवःचाःचित्रवःचाःचित्रवःचाःचित्रवःचाःचित्रवःचाःचित्रवःचाःचित्रवःचाःचित्रवःचाःचित्रवःचाःचित्रवःचित्रवःचित्रवःच्याःचित्रवःचित्रवःच्याःचित्रवःचित्रवःचित्रवःचित्रवःच्याःचित्रवःचःचित्रवःचःचित्रवःचःचित्रवःचःचित्रव

Consider now this energy as it exists immediately before producing the consciousness of the eye related to it; consider the energy which acts as the immediate basis for this eye consciousness. Normal people, out of ignorance, conceive of this as the physical faculty of the eye. In truth though a power of the eye which is something separate from consciousness is something that doesn't even exist. This same explanation applies to all the remaining physical faculties.

र्रे.श्रम् क्षेत्रःश्चे.यद्रःश्चे.यय्।क्ष्याश्चर्रः देवःश्चेत्रःश्चेतः श्वेतः श्वेतः श्वेतः श्वेतः श्वेतः श्वे १५.जःश्वेतः क्षेत्रः श्चे.यद्रःश्चेत्रः श्चेतः श्वेतः श्वेतः श्वेतः श्वेतः श्वेतः श्वेतः श्वेतः श्वेतः श्वेतः

Here the cause behind the consciousness of the eye, the mental seed, is the primary factor behind it. The faculty of the eye is the component of the body that provides a contributing circumstance.

Here when the physical faculty of the eye is presented as the direct cause of the consciousness of the eye, the real intent is to refer to the situation where the mental seed which produces the eye consciousness is ripening. They are not talking here of what we normally think of as the physical faculty of the eye.

यक्षित्यः द्वरः स्वाव्यकः उद्दे सूरः यः भ्रेयः द्वरः स्वाकः स्वाव्यकः स्वव्यवव्यवव्यवव्यवव्यवव्यवव्यवव्यव

Regarding this the text called Middle and Extremes states,

The combination of the objects and the person,
The base consciousness, is a consciousness that appears;
In reality this is not the being.

Here the word "objects" refers to form and the rest, and "the person" refers to the five faculties; the lines are describing a consciousness that arises and which appears to be them, but which is actually foundation consciousness. Master Stiramati also explains the physical faculties as the object of foundation consciousness. The point then is that those of the Mind-Only School who accept the idea of a foundation consciousness believe that the physical faculties of the eye and so on are actually the condition of the foundation consciousness appearing as the physical faculties.

विश्वायम् देवः यालवः तदः क्षेः द्वायम् अवः यादः क्षेः व्यायम् विश्वायम् विश

Once they have demonstrated that there is no such thing as physical faculties of the eye and so on that could ever be anything separate from consciousness itself, then they must show how form as well is nothing other than consciousness. To do this they give the following description. Consider now the five types of consciousness that, according to general belief, arise from the five physical faculties. It is not that there are any outside physical objects such as the color blue and so on which the consciousness has to grasp to. Rather, blue and the rest are only an appearance which occurs through the ripening of the very mental seed which was planted in the foundation consciousness and from which consciousness itself has arisen. Not realizing this fact, people look at the mind appearing as blue or whatever and accept or interpret these appearances as being outer objects.

23 How the Middle-Way School Says the Mental Seeds of Karma Work

दैर.चक्र.चिक्ष.दे,चोर.लुचे,ची वि.लूट.चच्च.क्याक्ष.वहूची.तदु.चच्च.कु.चीच्य.चच्च. स्त्रां स्त्रां स्त्रीय.त्यक्षा क्र्याक्ष.कु.च्यां क्ष्यां स्त्रां त्यां क्रयां स्त्रां त्यां क्रयां स्त्रां त्यां क्रयां स्त्रां त्यां क्रयां स्त्रां त्यां क्ष्यां स्त्रां त्यां स्त्रां स्त्रां स्त्रां त्यां क्ष्यां स्त्रां स्त्रा

Here is the second part [of a different] discussion [about where the Madhyamika school believes the mental seeds from karma are planted, since they do not accept the concept of foundation consciousness]. One may begin with the following question:

Suppose you deny then the existence of a foundation consciousness. Nonetheless you must accept that mental seeds from virtue or non-virtue do get planted, and that consequences do arise from the ripening of these mental seeds. After all, the autocommentary to *Entering the Middle Way* does state that "For time without beginning, in the suffering cycle of life, the mental seeds for things have been planted, and have then ripened, and have then been interpreted by people as the things themselves." There are as well many other quotations which mention the same thing. And it would be incorrect to say that there existed no basis or place where these mental seeds were planted. What then, according to your view, provides this place for the seeds to be planted?

दश्यान्नात्यःयिन्नात्यःयोन्नात्यःयोन्नात्यःयोन्नात्याः क्रम्यायोः योन्नात्यः स्थात्यः स्थात्यः स्थात्यः स्थात्य इ.स्थात्यात्यः योन्नात्यात्यः योन्नात्यः योन्नात्यः योन्नात्यः स्थात्यः स्थात्यः स्थात्यः स्थात्यः स्थात्यः स

ने प्रवित्र नु खुवार पर्ने र गुद्द पर्वे न स्थान र स्थान स्

According to those who accept the idea of a foundation consciousness, the thing called "afflicted mind" focuses on foundation consciousness and holds it to be "me"; they say that this foundation consciousness then is the place where the mental seeds stay. In our [Madhyamika] school too we have a similar concept; we say that the base which is stained with the mental seed is exactly that thing that you focus on with your simple, natural awareness of yourself and call "me."

राक्षेर.यो टे.लट.इश.टचीट.चट्ट.चची.कचीश.झॅ.चट्ट.चिट्टर वीट्ट.ट्री तथा श्रुश्व.ची ट.श्रुश.टे.श्रुट.श्रुशश्चर.चेश.चेश.ला.च्ट्टेय.येश.चटेचीश.तट्ट.केंट.लुश. तथा श्रुश्व.ची ट.श्रुश.टे.श्रुट.श्रुशश्चर.चेश.लोश.ला.च्ट्टेय.येश.चटेचीश.तट्ट.केंट.लुश. वि.चं.व्हचा.वचील.लब्ही श्रुश.लची.चचीश.क्चीश.क्चीश.क्चीश.क्ची.चिट्टर.चिट्टर.चिट्टर.

One may ask the following:

The autocommentary to *Entering the Middle Way* states that the stream of the mind is the basis where the mental seeds are planted. How does this fit into what you have just said?

The very thing we call the simple "me" is something which results from a label being applied to the *mind*, or consciousness. It also goes on in a *stream*. From this point of view then we can also refer to it as the "stream of the mind." And even if what you mean by a "stream" is the continuation of later, similar instances of mind itself, you can say that it too is the basis which is stained by mental seeds of particular occasions.

Here is how the mental seed for ignorance works. The autocommentary to *Entering the Middle Way* says,

That thing which tends to stop, and yet still stain, and then continue on in the flow of the mind is what we refer to as a 'mental seed.' The expressions 'continuity' and 'habit' and 'root' and 'mental seed' for the state of mental affliction all refer to the same thing. This is something that Listeners and Self-Made "Buddhas" are unable to eliminate even though they may already have eliminated the state of mental affliction itself through using the unstained path. It's similar to what happens with sesame butter or flowers; you may already remove these things from the scene, but the vase in which the flowers were, or the piece of cloth that the butter stained, still retain some subtle trace of them due to the previous contact.

How then could there be any sense to saying that there is another basis, a second one, on top of the one mentioned here, where other types of mental seeds, like those of virtuous deeds and non-virtuous deeds and the rest, are planted?

प्राचित्रभाष्ट्रात्त्रभाष्ट्य

यगुर-रे-क्षुक्षका क्रुंब-कोर-रे-रेवे-के-र-र्षक्ष-लेग-क्षेक्ष-क्षर-गी-प्रमाय-प्रवाधिक्र-यगुर-रे-क्षुक्ष-को क्षुंब-कोर-रे-रेवे-के-र-र्षक्ष-लेग-क्षेक्ष-क्षर-गी-प्रमाय-प्रवाधिक्र-र

One might wonder about something else:

Let's talk about the period while you are in the "uninterrupted" stage of the path of seeing [the actual direct perception of emptiness]. I can accept that at this point the negative thoughts eliminated by this path are no longer present, but we would have to say that the negative things eliminated by the path of habituation are still there, in a dormant way. At this particular point in time, the consciousness of the mind is unstained, unaffected by the mental seed which causes the mistaken state of mind where the appearance and actuality of things are different from one another. As such none of these things could lie dormant here, due to its very quality at the time. There is no consciousness of the senses that could act as the basis for those mental seeds, and it would be improper to say that physical form could ever provide such a basis either. According to you, moreover, there's no foundation consciousness. I would have to think then that there is no basis at all where these dormant things could stay.

And yet there is no such problem, for at this point in time it is the simple "me" which is providing the basis for the dormant things eliminated by the path of habituation to stay. You can apply this reasoning as well to all the other cases involving things to be eliminated, and the antidotes which eliminate them.

24

The Middle-Way School on the Question of Where the Seeds of Karma Stay until They Give their Result

Here is the second point [of still another discussion]. One may ask the following:

Those who believe that entities have no natural existence [meaning the Madhyamika Prasangika (or Consequence) School] do not accept the concepts of a foundation consciousness and the like; how then is it that they can still assert that all the workings of karma and its consequences are totally right and proper?

त्रच्याची, त्रचीता त्राच्या त्र्या त्राच्या त्र्या त्राच्या त्राच

All the Buddhist schools, whether higher schools or lower schools, accept the principle that the consequences of pleasure and pain and so on arise from virtuous and non-virtuous karma or actions, even though the original karma and its eventual consequences may be separated by a very long period of time. The problem though is that, if the karma stays around during the entire period up to the point at which it gives its consequence, it would have to be unchanging. An unchanging thing though is incapable of affecting anything, and so you could never have a relationship where karma gave rise to any consequence.

श्चित्राच्यात्राक्षात्राक्ष्म्यात्र्वेषाः त्युक्षात्राक्ष्म्यात्र्वेषाः त्युक्षात्राक्ष्म्यात्र्वेषाः त्युक्षात्राक्ष्म्यात्र्वेषाः त्युक्षात्राक्ष्म्यात्रेष्यः त्युक्षात्राक्ष्म्यात्रेष्यः त्युक्षात्राक्ष्म्यात्रेष्यः त्युक्षात्राक्ष्म्यात्रेष्यः त्युक्षात्राक्ष्म्यात्रेष्यः त्युक्षात्रात्रेष्यः त्युक्षात्रात्रेष्यः त्युक्षात्रात्रेष्यः त्युक्षात्रात्रेष्यः त्युक्षात्रात्रेष्यः त्युक्षात्रात्रेष्यः त्युक्षात्रात्रेष्यः त्युक्षात्रेष्यः त्युक्षः त्युक्

From the moment after you complete a karma or deed, that deed is finished and gone. During the entire period from that point up to the point at which the consequence actually occurs, the deed no longer exists. A deed which is already gone is no longer a thing that can have any affect on anything. How then does a deed or karma ever produce any kind of consequence? Here is how we explain this problem:

यावन्द्रिः श्रीरः तदः स्वरः श्रीरः विवान्त्राः स्वरः स्वरः

Let's consider the deed or karma as it exists up to the point right after the moment in which the deed is completed; that is, let's consider the deed as it approaches its end. The energy of the deed has to be stored somewhere, and so some thinkers have invented the idea of some kind of foundation consciousness for it to stay. Others have said that there is something which is changing but neither mental nor physical, something they call "the fact of not just going away"; they say it is something that exists separately from the two types of deeds [virtue and non-virtue], and that it resembles the document written up for a loan that has to be repaid. Still others have invented the idea that there is another changing thing which is neither mental nor physical, again different from the two kinds of deeds themselves, something they call a "hold."

Others finally have invented the idea of a stream of consciousness which is stained with the mental seed of the deed. This then is why, they say, that it is no contradiction for the deed to produce its consequence later, even after a very long time. The deed or karma plants a mental seed in the foundation consciousness, and so the mental seed is the result of the deed. This mental

seed continues on in a stream of similar forms until eventually it produces the consequence. Thus, they say, the consequence of the original karma is something that is produced indirectly, via a medium. This same type of idea applies to the other three positions expressed.

र्रेश्चें, चटु, लट, ट्र्ट्रें, तालुब, ता, ट्र्य्र्। श्रीच, त्या, व्याश्चिम्या, व्याश्चिम्या, व्याप्त, व्याप्त,

The first of these positions belongs to a certain group within the Mind-Only School. The second position is explained by Master Avalokitavrata to be that of the Detailist School—of a certain section other than the Kashmiri Detailists. The third position also belongs to a specific group within the Detailist School. It is not completely clear where the fourth position belongs, but since it is consistent with the ninth chapter of the autocommentary to the *Treasure House of Knowledge (Abhidharmakosha)*, it would appear to be an alternate belief of the Sutrists and the Kashmiri Detailists.

च्रीय.त्रम् त्रीय । ने.क्षेम् य. व्रीयाय. त्रीयाय. त्रीय. त्रीयाय. त्रीय. त्रीयाय. त्रीय. त्रीय.

Although the Kashmiris do accept the idea of a "hold," they do not assert that a hold could be produced by the two types of karma as something retained by the hold. The position here though belongs to someone who does assert this, and this is the point of the phrase "according to someone."

According to someone now of the Madhyamika Consequence school, the deed or karma is not something which arises in and of itself, and so, for this very reason, neither is it something which finishes through any nature of its own. Nonetheless it is no contradiction to say that something which never finishes through any nature of its own can still produce a consequence. As such a consequence can come from a deed even if we never accept the idea of a foundation consciousness or the like.

You must understand then that this is why the two kinds of karma can already have finished in the mental continuum of any given sentient being, and yet still after a long time—even after the passing of many millions of years—these deeds can nonetheless produce their consequences "perfectly," which is to say, without any confusion. [That is, good deeds lead to pleasure, and bad deeds lead to pain, and there is never any case where this law somehow goes wrong, and good deeds lead to pain, or bad deeds to pleasure.]

Given all this, the connection between deeds and their consequences is, in this school, purely and totally correct.

The point of all this is that all four of the positions above, as they attempt to answer the problem raised, do so from a viewpoint of accepting that a deed

has a beginning that exists by definition and an ending too that exists by definition. They are agreeing as well that the later condition of the deed's having ended is something that exists by definition. The Master [Chandrakirti] is stating that it is improper to answer the problem raised above by saying that, "Even though the ending of the deed is that way, it's no problem, because we believe in foundation consciousness." He is denying all these positions, for the reason that there simply doesn't even exist any beginning or ending of a deed that could occur through any nature of its own.

विश्वास्त्रः द्रेश्वं।

विश्वास्त्रः द्रेश्वं।

विश्वास्त्रः द्रेश्वं।

विश्वास्त्रः द्रेश्वं।

विश्वास्त्रः द्रेश्वं।

विश्वास्त्रः द्रेश्वं।

विश्वास्त्रः विश

The Master, to demonstrate how this way of answering reflects exactly the position of the Arya [Nagarjuna], quotes the following statement from the *Root Text on Wisdom:*

Because the karma never begins, Because it has no nature of its own, And since it has never even begun, Neither then can it simply go away.

The lines are saying that, because there is no such thing as a karma that exists through its own nature, no such karma could ever have a beginning that came in and of itself. Because of this, it is completely impossible for a karma ever to end by any nature of its own. It is illogical to think of the subsequent condition of the deed's having ended and invent some idea of something that can never just go away.

25

What the Middle-Way School Means When it Says Things are Just the Results of Projection

ह्र्यानवुन्धान्यक्षणा क्र्याम्बर्धान्यक्षणान्यः योश्चर्यान्यविष्णान्यः स्वान्यक्षणान्यः योश्वर्यान्यः योश्वर्यान्यः योश्वर्यान्यः योश्वर्यान्यः योश्वर्यान्यः योश्वर्यान्यः योश्वर्यान्यः योश्वर्यान्यः योश्वरः योश्व

This section [still another one] has two parts to it. First we will show how it is that objects are established through the process of projecting, and then describe what it is to grasp to true existence, wherein one holds things as existing in the opposite way. Here is the first.

The Sutra Requested by Upali includes the following lines:

A splash of pleasing flowers open their petals, Golden palaces blaze in breathtaking beauty; Look for their maker, but you'll never find him, For all of these are built of projections—The world is an invention of projections.

The verse is describing how objects are established through the process of projection, and there are as well many other statements of the Buddha that describe how every single object in the universe is nothing more than a creation of projections.

The Sixty Verses on Reasoning say as well,

The world is something that ignorance causes; Why? For the Buddhas say it is so. And why then would it be wrong to say That this world is only projections.

The meaning of this verse, according to the commentary, is that none of the many worlds that exist does so through some essence of its own: none of them are anything more than products of our projections.

त्तर्यात्र्यक्ष्यत्त्र क्ष्यात्त्र व्याप्त्र व्याप्त्र व्याप्त्र व्याप्त्र व्याप्त व्

The 400 Verses says as well:

Without projections, desire and such Are nothing that can even exist; Why then would anyone with a brain Believe in reality and projection?

The commentary to the work states that—

Things that can't even exist in the absence of projections are, beyond any manner of doubt, absolutely things that cannot exist through any essence of their own: they are like a coil of rope you label with "snake."

The expression "reality" here refers to something that could exist through its own essence. "Projection" is the fact that things occur through the process of projection.

When this commentary states that "desire and such" are like a piece of rope labelled "snake," it is only giving a single example; what it means to say is that each and every other existing object is as well like a rope called a snake: they are all established through the process of projection.

Here the colored pattern of the rope and the way it's coiled make it resemble a snake; and if you're in a place where you can't see it very clearly, then you start to think to yourself, "It's a snake!" The fact though is that there is nothing about the rope as a whole, nor anything about its various parts, that you could ever establish as being one kind of a snake; the snake of the rope, then, is nothing but a creation of projections.

यित्रः वह्याक्ष्यः अत्यान्त्रेयः अत्यान्त्रेयः यात्रेयः विद्याः विद्याः विद्याः विद्याः विद्याः विद्याः विद्या विद्याः क्ष्याः विद्याः विद्य

The same thing happens when you get the idea of "me" about the heaps, the various components to yourself. There is nothing about these components as a whole, when you consider them as a continuum in time, nor as a whole considered in a single moment in time, nor as the various parts to a whole, that you could ever establish as being any kind of "me." We'll go into this in more detail further on.

ग्रिवः स्वेरः दरः स्वरः रेविः कः दरः कः उत्रः यशः रेविः श्वः दरः प्रवेशः वित्रः यदितः स्वुः प्यरः उत्रः स्वरः य उतः चरः ग्रादः स्वेरः प्रवेशः कः दरः के हे वाः प्रश्नः स्वरः प्रवेशः प्रवेशः प्रवेशः प्रवेशः प्रवेशः प्रवेशः य श्वे। रुदः वोः रेटें विश्वः स्वुवः यः स्वेरः देविः यश्वः प्रवेशः प्रवेशः प्रवेशः प्रवेशः प्रवेशः प्रवेशः योवः

Because of this fact, and since moreover there is not the slightest thing outside of the parts or whole of the components to yourself that you could ever consider any kind of "me," this "me" is nothing more than a creation of projection, based on the components. There is no "me" which exists through any essence of its own.

What the Buddha Really Meant when He Said that Things were "Mind Only"

Now the Sixty Verses on Reasoning says,

The world is something that ignorance causes; Why? For the Buddhas say it is so. And why then would it be wrong to say That this world is only projections. If one were to end his ignorance, Then how is it that the thing that's ended, Despite our misunderstanding, could never Disappear, even in projections?

त्तः स्यान्तः स्यान्यः तुः तुर्वाः तुर्वान्यः स्यान्यः स्या

The meaning of the lines is as follows. If things existed in their very essence, then they would exist as some independent reality. If this were so, then when you finally stopped your mistaken states of mind, they would never disappear, although they should have.

म्बिस्यान्त्रीयाविद्रः दश्यां या स्रोद्रास्त्रः स्त्राः स्त्र

The mind is the main thing; and to show this, the following explanation appears in the scripture:

The world, in the form of those who live in it, finds its very being through the power of the karma they have collected with their minds, and through the bad thoughts in their minds. All the vast multitude of worlds too, in the form of the places where these beings live, have been put there, have been produced, by the collective karma of these same beings, and no one else—by the karma within their own minds. This refers to everything up to the farthest reaches of the world, from the great disc of wind that underpins our planet up to the highest temporary heaven, the one named "Below No Other."

१२.ज.भ.चे.ज.भ्याकात्तरः विश्वास्तरः चित्। भारतः विश्वास्त्रः विश्वास्तरः विश्वास्तरः चित्। भारतः विश्वास्त्रः विश्वास्तरः विश्वास्तरः विश्वासः भ्रीतः स्वासः विश्वासः विश्वास

On this subject, the intricate patterns on a peacock and other such objects are produced by each one's personal karma. The intricacies of the petals and colors of a lotus flower and other such things are produced by the collective karma of living beings. You can apply these principles to all other cases as well.

हि: अत्रात्ती श्रेश्वरात्त्र विष्याः स्त्र विष्याः स्त्र विषयः स्त्र विष्यः स्त्र विषयः स्त्र स

As the verse goes,

It's through the karma of living beings That the great dark mountains arise in their time. It's like the hells, and the heavens above, And swords, and jewels, and trees in the world.

The great books of the Mind-Only School also discuss whether the two worlds [of beings and the place they live] are produced by karma that is collective or not, and so it's not as though the system of the Mind Only denies the existence of the world where beings live.

And so it is spoken, that all the living beings of the universe are produced by karma. And if somehow you could stop all minds, then karma itself would cease to be, for it is only through mind and what comes along with it that

karma can be collected. Therefore karma itself depends on the mind. So the statement from the *Sutra of the Ten Levels*, where it says that there is no great master of all things, and no great maker of all things, conveys one meaning of the word "only" in the expression "mind-only"; the point is that there is no other creator of things than the mind itself.

यर्च्चित्रात्तः क्षेत्राचाचा विक्षेत्रः त्याचाचा विक्षेत्रः त्याचाचा विक्षेत्रः त्याचाचा विक्षेत्रः त्याचाचा विक्षेत्रः त्याचा विक्षेत्रः विक्

It is stated in scripture as well that each and every one of the twelve links in the chain of interdependence depends on a single thing: the mind. These references convey yet another meaning of the word "only" in the expression "mind-only." Here the point is that mind is the main thing. The former scriptural references are putting their point in a negative way, and the latter references are putting their point in a positive way.

Thus we can see that it's the mind which is the one single principal cause that sets all life into motion. The principal cause is not something other than the mind. Therefore when the sutras speak of "mind only," they are making the point that mind is the main thing, and not matter. Although we do of course admit that physical matter exists, this matter is not the one prime creator of sentient beings in the way that mind is.

Therefore all these scriptural references are denying that the opposite of the mind, something other than the mind, could be the creator. They are not though saying that there are no outside physical objects at all.

The Asian Classics Institute
Course XVI: The Great Ideas of Buddhism, Part One

Reading Ten: How Karma Works, Part Two

27 On the Cause of Our Suffering

The following selections are from the *Overview of the Middle Way,* composed by Master Kedrup Tenpa Dargye (1493-1568).

त्रमामान्त्रम्यम्यम्यम्यम्यम्यम्त्रम्यस्यम्यम्यम्यम्यम्यम्यम्यम्यम्यम्यम्यम्यम

Let us first consider enemy destroyers of the Listener or Self-Made Buddha type. Aren't you saying then that, like the non-Buddhists, they fail to eliminate all the widespread mental afflictions that operate in all three realms? Because isn't it true that they have failed to achieve the path which is directly incompatible, in the way it holds its object, with the root of all these afflictions; that is, the tendency to conceive of things as existing through some nature of their own? And this is true, for they lack that comprehensive knowledge where they realize that things have no nature of their own.

यादः चयाः सदः चित्रे द्वार्थः यादः चयाः व्याः च्याः चय

चल्चेत्र-योन्ध-प्रान्ध-प्र

Consider these same enemy destroyers. It is true that they have not yet realized, entirely, the fact that the person has no self nature. This is because they have yet to perceive directly the fact that the person has no nature. This in itself is true as well, for they are still chained by total misperceptions, in such a way that they will never be able to root out the object that they think they see when they hold the parts to the person, the thing which gets the label of "me," as existing from its own side. And this too is true, for they lack that comprehensive knowledge where they realize that the parts to the person have no nature of their own.

यश्य । त्रश्चान्त्रः विष्यः प्राप्तः विष्यः वि

The first of our logical statements above is always true. For suppose that a person is still unable to root out the object that he thinks he sees when he holds the parts to the person, the thing which gets the label of "me," as existing through some nature of its own. As long as he goes on this way, then he will continue to find himself unable to root out the object that he thinks he sees when he holds the thing which gets the label, the "me," as existing from its own side. And as long as he continues with this, then by the power of this misperception he will continue to collect karma. And as long as he collects karma, then he will continue to spin around in this wheel of suffering life.

28 Lord Maitreya's Six Steps

यश्रित्रायते धुरः यश्रित्रायते धुरः वश्रित्रायते धुरः वश्रित्रायते स्वार्थित्राया स्वार्थित् स्वार्य स्वार्थित् स्वार्थित् स्वार्थित् स्वार्थित् स्वार्थित् स्वार्थित् स्वार्ये स्वार्थित् स्वार्थित् स्वार्थित् स्वार्थित् स्वार्थित् स्वार्थित् स्वार्थित् स्वार्ये स्वार्थित् स्वार्ये स्वार्ये स्वार्थित् स्वार्थित् स्वार्थित् स्वार्थित् स्वार्थित् स्वार्थित् स्वार्ये स्व

This then is the ultimate idea within the root text and the commentary of the *Higher Line*, [written by Maitreya and Asanga]:

Due to the mental seeds for the two kinds of tendencies to grasp to some selfnature, these two tendencies themselves spring up.

Due to the fact that they have sprung up, an impression with a wrong way of looking at things springs up, and some things seem as though they are pleasant from their own side, and other things seem as though they are unpleasant from their own side.

Due to the fact that this impression has sprung up, the emotion of liking springs up, where you focus on a pleasant object and don't want to lose it. And the emotion of disliking springs up, where you focus on an unpleasant object and want to avoid it.

This then forces you to collect karma.

And karma forces you to spin around in the wheel of suffering life.

And this is why the Buddhas have said that this suffering life is something forced on us because we have not been able to see, directly, the essence of the Ones Gone Thus [that is, emptiness].

29 The Glass of Liquid: Source of the Example

Here we will analyze the statement [from *Entering the Middle Way*, by Master Chandrakirti (650 AD)] where it says, "...The mind of a craving spirit as well, which sees a stream of water as pus." One may begin with the following question:

Let's consider the objects of the following states of mind: the visual consciousness of a craving spirit where a river of water looks like pus and blood; the visual consciousness of a person with a kind of cataract where a clean white porcelain basin looks like a hair has fallen into it; and that kind of meditation where you visualize skeletons—where you imagine that the entire surface of the earth is covered with the bones of corpses. Are all these objects completely equivalent, as far as being something that exists or doesn't exist?

विश्वान्त्वन् नेदेः यत्न सुरान्त्री युरान्त्री विश्वान्त्री । नेद्वान्त्री ।

In reply we will first set forth a relevant passage, and then we will explicate the passage. Here is the first. The text called *The Abbreviation of the Greater Way* says,

Insofar as craving spirits, animals, Humans, and pleasure beings, each according To their class, have differing perceptions Of a single thing, we say it has no reality.

Asvabhava, the venered layman with lifetime vows, has explained the passage. His words include the following:

When they look at *a single thing*, a stream of water, each one sees what the ripening of his particular karma forces him to see. A *craving spirit* sees the river full of pus and blood and the like.

रे.क्रेर.ज.रेर.वर्ज्ञ.ज.क्र्याकात्मका.क्येक्ष.क्ष.चारका.तर्रा

An *animal* or such, on the other hand, thinks of this same water as a place to stay, and makes his home there.

तब्दार्ट्स । विकान्तिराद्धा । देरायह्याम् । वश्वयानवे क्रास्त्राक्ष्यान्ते । वश्वयानवे क्रास्त्राक्ष्यान्ते ।

Humans look at the same thing and perceive it as water—sweet, clear, and cool. They drink of it, they wash themselves with it, and they swim in it.

यशिरश्रतपुःसुर। श्रीयर.शब्र्ट.कुं। यांचीयोश.ग्री.पर्टे.वेश.क्श.तर.यवेयो.तपुःसुर.र्रा विश. विश.श्रीयर.शब्य.ताश्री.शक्र्य.ताःश्र्र्शश्रातर.वियोश.तपुःस्ते.क्शश्रात्रायश्र

Those pleasure beings who are wrapped in deep meditation at the level we call the "realm of limitless space" see the water as empty space, for their ability to conceptualize physical matter has dissolved altogether.

30 Arguments on the Glass of Liquid

गुरुरायः सुरायः द्वारायः यात्र व्याप्यायः । स्टास्यायः व्याप्यायः विष्यायः विषयः विष्यायः विष्याय

Here secondly we will explain the meaning of the text we quoted first. We proceed in three steps: disproving the position of others, establishing our own position, and then refuting their rebuttal. Here is the first.

Someone may make the following claim:

Given the statements that have come above, the fact is that we should never again consider anything as being one way or the other.

Well then, you must be suggesting that the system of the Buddha is all the same as the system of every non-Buddhist belief, that there is no difference in their correctness at all. And you must be saying too that we could never state that our Teacher was the highest teacher, and that the teachers of the non-Buddhists are lesser.

यशिरश्रातपुः द्वीरा त्याश्वाती वर्षात्र क्षेत्र प्राचीत् क्षेत्र प्राचालयः श्वेर श्वेत्र प्राचेत्र व्याचीत्र क्षेत्र प्राचित्र क्षेत्र क्षेत्र

And you must be suggesting all this, for you have claimed that we should never again consider anything as being one way or the other.

Now if you should agree that none of the differences mentioned above exist, we must reply that they do, for as the verse says:

All other teachers now I've given up, And go for refuge now to only You; Why? Because it's You alone who has No fault, and perfected every good.

वियान्त्रिया विद्युव्य विद्यानिकः या कुर्धिः या या द्वार्थः या विद्युव्य विद्य विद्युव्य विद्युव्य विद्युव्य विद्युव्य विद्य विद्युव्य विद्य विद्य विद्य विद्युव्य विद्य विद्य

Someone else might make the following claim:

Suppose a pleasure being, a human, and a craving spirit sit down together and look at a glass filled with water: the thing that we define as "wet and flowing." Since to the perceptions of each different type of being it is real, the glass full of wet and flowing water is in reality pus and blood to the eyes of the craving spirit, and in reality water to the eyes of the human, and in reality ambrosia to the eyes of the pleasure being.

वश्वराद्धर्यात्राच्यात्र्याद्धर्यात्राद्धर्याः वश्वराद्धर्यात्राद्धर्याः वश्वराद्धर्याः वश्वराद्धर्यः वश्वराद्धर्यः वश्वराद्धर्यः वश्वराद्धर्याः वश्वराद्धरयः वश्वर्याः वश्वर्यः वश्वर्याः वश्वर्यः वश्वर्याः वश्वर्याः वश्वर्यः वश्वर

We ask you then a question: in the situation you've just described, is it that the visual consciousness of all three beings are a valid perception, or is it that only one or two of them are a valid perception? Suppose you say all three are valid. Well then, the glass of wet and flowing water must be full of something that is all three different things: pus and blood, and each of the others. And then too it must be possible for there to be multiple and yet still valid perceptions which see one thing in two completely incompatible ways. And finally there must be such a thing as a valid perception which correctly perceives that the glass is filled with something which is simultaneously water and yet not water. Why so? Because, according to your view, the three differing cases of visual consciousness possessed by the three different beings would all have to be valid perception.

त्तर् स्वर् स्वर् । कुः त्येषः स्वरं त्या कुषः स्वरं त्यं स्वरं स

And if you try to agree to these absurdities, you are wrong, for the quality of being pus and blood is incompatible with the quality of being either one of the other two substances mentioned. Moreover, the quality of being water and the quality of not being water are directly incompatible in such a way that, if something exists and lacks one of these qualities, it must then possess the other.

31 Which of the Perceptions are Valid?

Someone may answer with the following claim:

In the case mentioned, the visual consciousness of the human is a valid perception, but the visual consciousnesses of the other two types of beings are not valid perception. These latter two see something like the pus and blood, and the ambrosia, only because their karma (which is good in one case, and bad in the other) forces them to. य्राम्नेन्यत्रिम् नेम्प्रम्य मिन्न्यः स्वत्रा मिन्न्यः स्वत्रा मिन्न्यः स्वत्रः स्वत्रः स्वत्रः स्वत्रः स्वत्र स्वर्यः स्वरं स्वरं स्वरं सिन्ना मिन्न्यः स्वरं स्

Well then, according to you, the visual consciousness of the human wouldn't be valid perception either. Because isn't it true that the human sees the water only because his karma (which in this case is halfway between the good and the bad just mentioned) forces him to? Moreover, aren't you implying then that there is no such thing as a valid tactile consciousness, or a valid auditory consciousness, in the mental stream of any being who is not a human? Because aren't you saying that there's no such thing as a valid visual consciousness in the mental stream of any such being? Certainly you are, for you believe your original position to be correct. And suppose now that you do agree that such beings can have no such valid consciousnesses.

यर्चानानेश्वान्तेश्वर्षेत्र। यर्देन्या नेप्त्राध्याप्त्र्याच्या क्षेत्र्याचीश्वर्ष्याचीश्वर्याचिश्वर्ष्याचीश्वर्ष्याचीश्वर्ष्याचीश्वर्ष्याचीश्वर्ष्याचिश्वर्याचिश्वर्याचीश्वर्ष्याचीश्वर्ष्याचीश्वर्ष्याचिश्वर्षयाचिश्वर्षयाचिश्वर्षयाचिश्वर्षयाचिश्वर्षयाचिश्वर्षयाचिश्वर्षयाचिश्वर्याचिश्ययाचिश्वर्याच

Aren't you then implying that these beings never have any case where they are able to reach a definite conclusion about something, or to analyze an object? And if so, aren't you implying that there could never be a case where one of these beings could recognize another? Of course you are, given your position.

32 The Truth of the Glass of Liquid

यार म्. याक्षेत्रात्ता स्टर्श्यात्ता याक्षेत्राची स्वाध्यात्त्र स्वाध्यात् स्वाध्यात्य स्वाध्यात् स्वाध्यात्य स्वाध्यात् स्

याश्वरात्र्रात्रः श्रीः नर्योश्चरः विद्या वद्भवः विद्याविद्यात्रः व्यव्यः व्यश्वरः विद्याः व्यश्वरः व्यश्वरः व्यश्वरः व्यश्वरः व्यश्वरः व्यश्वरः विद्यः व्यश्वरः विद्यरः विद्यरः विद्ययः विद्

Here secondly is the section where we establish our own position. Now suppose three different types of beings—a pleasure being, a human, and a craving spirit, each with their own karma—sit down together and look upon a glass filled with water, the thing we define as "wet and flowing." The glass of water is not at this point one thing which is simultaneously three different objects. Neither is it necessary in this situation for there to be three identical valid perceptions. And when the glass full of wet and flowing water occurs, it occurs with three different, distinct parts to it.

द्राप्ताः विकान्यः विकायः विकान्यः विक

It is not though the case that, from the time it first started, the glass of water came with the three different parts, or that they stay with the glass of water until it eventually ends. What happens is that one of the parts of the glass filled with wet and flowing water provides a material cause, and the karma of the craving spirit provides a contributing factor; and then based on both of these the later continuation of one part of the glass of water starts being blood and pus.

Another part of the glass of water again provides a material cause, and the karma of the human provides a contributing factor; and then based on both of these the later continuation of one part of the glass of water starts being water.

लट देव:क:वश्यावियाः वीश्वः त्रेयः विश्वः त्रेयः त्येयः त्रेयः त्

Yet another part of the glass of water provides a material cause, and the karma of the pleasure being provides a contributing factor; and then based on both of these the later continuation of one part of the glass of water starts being ambrosia, and so on.

देव: क्रें नः व्याः अपितः प्राप्तः विश्वः याः प्राप्तः विश्वः याः विश्व

At this point, the glass full of wet and flowing water is something with three different parts. Nonetheless, it is not the case that all three different beings see all three parts. The craving spirit is forced by the bad karma he has collected to see the glass of water as pus and blood; and he doesn't see the other two things. One should understand that a similar case holds with the latter two types of beings.

र्भेत्राच्या स्वास्त्राच्या स्यास्त्राच्या स्वास्त्राच्या स्वास्त्राच्या स्वास्त्राच्या स्वास्य

What we just described as happening is only with reference to where a glass of something wet and flowing is an object shared by the three different beings, as they look at it together. When the craving spirit himself though picks up the glass in his hand and begins to partake of its contents, the glass of liquid is no longer something that exists with three different parts. Since at this point

it is something that the craving spirit is experiencing exclusively, its continuation starts being pus and blood.

यीः कुः नृत्याः वित्तावर्षायाः न्याः स्वत्याः वित्ताः वित्त

How the glass of liquid exists originally all depends on the particular outer world from where it has been taken, for each of the three different beings has a different outer world, depending on the specific karma he himself has collected. If the glass of liquid were sweet, cool water taken from the world of humans—a world created by the specific karma of the human in the group—then that would be its original condition, and so on.

33 Who Made Hell?

त्रक्षाश्चरका विकासियोत्त्रास्त्रः स्त्रीया च्रम्याविक्षः स्त्रः स्त्राम्यक्ष्यः स्त्रः स्त्राम्यक्ष्यः विकासियाः प्रस्ति स्त्राम्यक्ष्यः स्त्रः स्त्राम्यक्ष्यः स्त्रः स्त्राम्यक्ष्यः स्त्रः स्त्राम्यक्ष्यः स्त्रः स्त्राम्यक्षः स्त्रः स्त्रः स्त्राम्यक्षः स्त्रः स्त्

Someone again may come and claim the following:

Let's consider once more this situation where three different types of beings sit down together and look at a glass full of something wet and flowing. Isn't it true that there is no actual

pus and blood there? Because isn't it true that the burning steel and so on in the hells is only something that appears to a person who is born there, but that there is nothing there which actually is these objects? Because isn't it true that there is no one at all who went and made all these kinds of things? And isn't this a fact, because doesn't the text of *The Bodhisattva's Way of Life* say:

Who made the burning steel that acts As the floor of the world of hell? Where did all the mass of flames You find there all come from?

The Able Ones have spoken that Everything there like this Is nothing at all other than The mind of what's non-virtue.

श्चेंत्र शेट्टी देवे देव स्वाय श्वेंत्र व्याय श्वेंत्र व्याय श्वेंत्र श्वे

Yet there is no such problem. The point of this quotation is to say that the burning steel and so on are not something that was created by some unchanging creator being or something like that; by someone who thought it over first and then created them. The lines are meant to show us that what really made all these things is the non-virtuous states of mind had by the beings who have to take birth there.

प्रतित्वर् प्रति । प्रति प्

If this were not the case, then consider those holy people who lead their lives following the ten virtues, and who are then born into the higher realms, and

then experience the pleasures of these realms. And consider too those miserable people who lead their lives following the ten non-virtues, and who are then born into the lower realms, and then experience the sufferings of these realms. Is the difference between them just that they are having some better or worse kind of misperception, and not whether they are experiencing pleasure or pain? This would have to be the case, if your reasoning were correct.

यर्देर्स्य। अर्थ्वरूषाणुप्तरेप्तर्या द्यार्थर्योस्यापस्यायेर्यायस्याये

Suppose you agree that it is only a matter of better or worse misperceptions. Are you saying then that the pleasures of the higher realms don't even exist, and that the pains of the lower realms don't even exist? You must be, if you agree this way.

34 Concluding Remarks on the Glass of Water

In conclusion now, let us consider again these three kinds of beings, each with their different karma, as they sit down together and look at a glass full of something wet and flowing. It's not necessarily true that they must all have valid perceptions which are identical. If they did, then the three beings looking at the glass of water would have to think of the water as a place to live, in the way that a creature living in water would. The three beings as well would have to see the water in the same way that microscopic organisms

living in the water, little beings imperceptible to normal visual consciousness, see it with their own visual consciousness. Then too the visual consciousness of microscopic organisms living in the depths of the ocean would have to be a valid perception towards the entire extent of the sea. And certain kinds of near-gods too would have to see weapons as glasses of water, and on and on; the problems raised would be many.

निर्वे के त्या कर्ष्य स्थान्य स्थान्य स्थान स्थान क्ष्य स्थान स्य

Again consider this same situation. Even though it is not necessarily true that the valid perceptions are identical, it is possible for there to be three valid perceptions here which happen to be identical. This is because, as we have already established logically, there can be a case where by the force of karma three different objects, each one confirmed by a valid perception, start to exist. And since this is possible, then it is equally possible that, by the force of karma, three equivalent valid perceptions of a vessel could start to exist as well.

स्वाःवाःश्वाशायदेः नद्दंशः द्वां मधुश्वः द्वां स्वः व्यां मानुः नद्वः न्वाः व्याः व

Generally speaking, each of the three objects mentioned—the pus and the other two—are things of the type that block other objects from entering into the space which they themselves occupy. It is no contradiction though to say that,

in this situation where the beings are looking this way, they are not objects such that they block other things from entering into the space they occupy. This is true for the following reason.

A central mountain of the world which is square in shape, and a central mountain of the world which is round in shape, and the like, are objects such that they block other things from entering the space they occupy. Nevertheless, it is possible for both these things to occupy the space taken up by a single central mountain of the world. A red-hot ball of steel is something that's hot, but consider what happens when a person touches it after he has used the mantra of steel on his hand. The sensation that he feels is not a sensation of heat; on the contrary, it is a sensation of something not heat.

35 Three Types of Each Path of Action

क्रियार्थः यात्रीयाः स्वार्थः यात्रीयाः वित्राः स्वार्थः यात्रीयाः स्वार्थः यात्रीयाः यात्राः स्वार्थः यात्रीयाः यात्राः स्वीर्याः यात्राः स्वार्थः यात्राः स्वार्यः यात्राः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः यात्राः स्वार्थः यात्राः स्वार्थः यात्राः स्वार्थः यात्राः स्वार्थः यात्राः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्यः स्वार्थः स्वार्थः स्वार्यः स्वार्थः स्वार्यः स्वर्यः स्वार्यः स्वर्यः स्वार्यः स्वार्यः स्वर्यः स

The undertakings come from the root three. Because they occur just subsequent to them, Coveting and the rest come from these three. The virtues, with undertaking and conclusion, From no desire, dislike, ignorance.

[IV.272-6]

Now sutra states that there are three types of killing: that which comes from desiring something, that which comes from disliking something, and that which comes from being ignorant of things. One may ask then whether the various paths of action are each brought to completion by these three roots of all non-virtue.

The answer is that they are not. The statement from sutra was made only with reference to the fact that **the "undertaking"** stages of deeds such as killing **come from the root three.**

वस्त्रामी म्यान्य स्त्राम्य स्त्रम्य स्त्राम्य स्त्रम्य स्त

One may next ask for a description of the process by which the "undertaking" stages of the ten non-virtues come from the three roots of non-virtue. Let's start with the act of killing. The "undertaking" stage of this type of act comes from desire in a case where, for example, you take the life of another being in order to get its flesh to eat. An instance where this stage comes from dislike would be where you kill your enemy. And a case where the undertaking stage comes from being ignorant of things would be where you kill someone like your father or mother out of some meritorious intent.

यहिःश्रयाःजन्नःश्चेन्यः वे व्ययः वे त्यः वे त्यः वे त्यः व त्यः श्चेन्यः व त्यः व त्य

Next let's consider the act of stealing. An example of the "undertaking" stage for this act coming from desire would be where you steal something of value out of a longing for it. A case where this stage comes from dislike would be, for example, where you steal something of value from your enemy. An

Sexual misconduct that comes from desire would be a case where, for example, one engages in some wrong kind of sexual activity because of lustful feelings. Sexual misconduct born from dislike would be represented by engaging in sexual intercourse in order to harm someone else's reputation. Sexual misconduct that you do from ignorance is typified in the statement that "Sex should be enjoyed by everyone together, like the flowers and the fruits of the earth, like a banquet ready for the feast, like a pool in the river, like a public road."

यिष्ट्रियः श्रेश्वर्थः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्य विद्यः सिष्ट्रियः स्थान्यः स्थानः स्थान्यः स्थानः स्थानः स्थान्यः स्थानः स्थान्यः स्थानः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थानः स्थानः स्थानः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थान्यः स्थानः स्थान्यः स्थानः स्यानः स्थानः स्थानः

Coveting and the rest of the three misdeeds of thought come from these three roots of non-virtue because they occur just subsequent to them--to these three roots. The ten virtues, and here we consider them with all their various stages (undertaking and conclusion, as well as actual commission), come from the states of possessing no desire for something, no dislike for a thing, and no ignorance of things.

|ग्रासुस्राया से'न्वो'नदे'यसायसामुद्विन्या सें'सेंदे'सर्स्त्रम् यसायसाम् मुद्विन्देन

This brings us to our third point, a detailed discussion of non-virtuous paths of action. We present first the way these paths are committed, the their individual definitions, and finally the literal meaning of the expression "a path of action."

36 How Non-Virtues are Completed

Taking life, malice, and harsh speech are Brought to their completion by dislike. Sexual misconduct, coveting, and Stealing are brought to completion by desire. Mistaken views by ignorance of things; The rest accepted as completed by three.

[IV.277-82]

One may ask just what it is that brings each of the different non-virtues to completion. Three of them—taking life, malice, and harsh speech—are brought to their completion by the emotion of dislike.

तःजश्राज्याःकं वर्षेट्राच्यः द्वेट्राच्यः द्वेट्राच्यः व्याप्त्राच्याः व्याप्याः व्याप्याचः व्याप्याचः व्याप्याचः व्याप्याचः व्याप्याचः व्याप्याचः व्याप्याचः व्याप्याचः व्या

Another three—the non-virtues of **sexual misconduct, coveting, and stealing—are brought to completion by desire. Mistaken views** are brought to completion **by** an **ignorance of things,** for mistaken views spring from a deep-seated lack of understanding.

क्यान्यःग्रीन्यःग्रीन्यःन्यःस्यःसःसःसःसःसःदेन्नःक्यान्यःग्रीन्यःस्यान्यःसःसःस्तिन्तः। वर्न्नः स्रोताःसःस्त्रःसःसःसःसःस्यःग्रात्यास्यसःन्यान्यस्यान्यस्यान्यःस्यान्यःसःसःस्तिन्। वर्न्नः

The "rest"—which refers to the three of lying, divisive speech, and meaningless talk—are **accepted as** being **completed by** all **three** poisons of the mind. Such actions motivated by desire, for one example, would be brought to their completion by desire.

37 Some Ethical Questions

विस्तर्भः स्त्रीत्रः स्त्रीत्रः

There is no actual stage for those who die Before or together, for another body's been born. Because their goal's the same in a war or whatever, All possess it as much as the one who commits it. [IV.285-8]

दर्श अन्मानुःवित्यत्यात्यस्य वसूत्रः वाष्ट्रेत्यः वाष्ट्रेतः वित्यः वित्यः वित्यः वित्यः वित्यः वित्यः वित्यः व

"Suppose," one may begin, "that a person takes a weapon and delivers a blow to someone else which is sure to kill him, but then this murderer himself happens to **die**, either **before** his victim **or together** with him--at the same time. Can we say then that the **actual** "commission" **stage** of a full path of action has occurred **for** such a murderer, or not?"

दे.ज.टे.जविर.य.भूर.ट्री याबर.ये.अ.कु.यर.ट्र.श्र.जविर्ता याबर.ये.रा.य.स्त्रीरा

The answer is that **there is no** occurrence of this stage for such a person. In the first place, the stage cannot occur before the victim dies; in the second place, where the murderer dies at the same time as his victim, **another body** of the killer **has been born.** There is no actual commission because the body never went through the stage of undertaking this act towards the victim in question.

One may raise another question: "Suppose a group of people are engaged in a war or similar activity, and one of these people kills someone from the other side. Does a path of action occur only for the one person who actually did the killing?" It does not. **Because** they are engaged **in** the **war** (**or whatever** activity it may be) for **the same** common **goal**, all the people involved come to possess a full path of action, just **as much as the one who commits it.**

यक्षिरायाया सप्तायही बाह्मरायही धरायमार्मायपरायही

Next we present the definition of each individual non-virtue. We start with the "root" non-virtues, continue to the "four expressions," and end with the six "branch" non-virtues.

38
Definitions of the Four "Root" Non-Virtues

विर्मित्र्सेष्ठ्याः वर्षे वर्

Taking life is killing another being Purposely, and without a mistake. Stealing is to take possession of Another's wealth by means of force or stealth. Sexual misconduct, of four types, Engaging in improper kinds of sex. Lying's when the meanings of one's words Are understood, a wrong impression given.

[IV.289-96]

"What," one may ask, "is the basic nature of each of the ten non-virtues?" The **taking** of **life is** defined as **killing another being purposely, and without a mistake.** The word "purposely" is meant to indicate that there is no problem like where the being in question has died but there was no intent.

यविष्यः विषयः विषयः यात्रः श्रीष्यः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः यात्रः याविष्यः यात्रः यात्यः यात्रः यात्र

The words "without a mistake" are meant to indicate that no "actual-commission" stage of an act occurs in a case of mistaken identity; for example, in a case where you undertake to kill John but instead kill Joe because you have mistaken him for John. The word "another," finally, is meant to indicate that no "actual-commission" stage occurs either in an instance where one takes his own life.

वशुरायाम्यायिक्यायायिक्यायाय्यायिक्यायाय्याय्यायाय्या

Stealing is to take possession of another's wealth, purposely and without a mistake, whether it be by means of superior force or by stealth—undetected. Sexual misconduct is engaging in kinds of sex which are improper to perform, purposely and with no mistaken identity.

यश्चीर प्रवृत्ती । प्रश्चीर । प्रश्चीर प्रवृत्ता प्रवृत्त प्रवृत्ता प्रवृत्त प्रवृत्ता प्रवृत्ता प्रवृत्ता प्रवृत्ता प्रवृत्ता प्रवृत्ता प्रवृत्ता प्रवृत्त

This sexual misconduct is **of four** different **types**, as the number of the following list each constitutes one of its forms:

- sex with someone else's wife or with a woman who, although she is not another person's wife, is too closely related to oneself—his mother, or sister, or any female related to one up to seven generations past;
- 2) sex with a woman, even is she is one's wife, using an improper part of her body—her mouth or anus;
- 3) sex in an improper place—out in the open or in the environs of a shrine or temple; and
- 4) sex at an improper time—while a baby is still nursing from the woman, or when she is pregnant, or during the period that she is observing the one-day layman's vow.

Lying is when the meanings of one's spoken words are understood by the other person involved, and a wrong impression has been given himpurposely, and without any mistaken identity.

39 Six "Branch" Non-Virtues

निक्तं स्थान्त्री प्रति स्थान्य स्थान

Divisive speech, the words of a mentally Afflicted state meant to split up others. Harsh speech is that which is unpleasant; Meaningless, really every afflicted. Others, every other afflicted type like Flattery for gain, a song, a show.

Like too wrong commentaries. Coveting Wrong desire for another's wealth. Harmful intent, hating a living being; Mistaken view, the idea that neither virtue Nor non-virtue even exists.

[IV.301-11a]

विश्वायात्री यात्रादेग्यश्यायात्रेत्यादेन्यात्रेत्यादेश्यात्रेत्यात्रेत्यात्रेत्यात्रेत्यात्रेत्यात्रेत्यात्रे विश्वायात्रेत्रात्रेत्यात्रेत्रात्यात्रेत्रात्रेत्यात्रेत्यात्रेत्यात्रेत्यात्रेत्यात्रेत्यात्रेत्यात्रेत्यात्

Divisive speech consists of **words** which are spoken purposely, without any mistake, and in a **mentally afflicted state**; they are **meant to split up others** who are friends, and their meaning should be understood by the other person.

वित्रास्त्रायां के प्रमाणकार प्रमाणकार के प्रम के प्रमाणकार के प्रमाण

Harsh speech consists of unpleasant words which are spoken purposely, and without any mistake; their meaning to should be understood by the other person.

प्रस्तु त्येत्र स्य प्रस्ति । क्षेत्र स्य प्रस्ति । क्षेत्र स्य प्रस्ति । क्षेत्र स्य प्रस्ति । क्षेत्र स्य प्रस्ति । विक्र स

"Meaningless speech" really refers to every case of words spoken in an afflicted state of mind. Other groups say that what "meaningless speech" actually refers to is every afflicted type of the spoken word other than those three already mentioned. They say cases would be like a monk's engaging in the improper livelihood of flattering someone for the purpose of some gain, or else singing a song out of desire.

र्मुन्स्यान्यः स्राप्त्रः र्मुस्याप्तदे वस्त्रः पाद्याप्त्रः स्राप्ताः स्राप्ताः स्राप्ताः स्राप्तः स्रापतः स्राप्तः स्रापतः स्र

Still other cases would be where the monk told stories to entertain others at a **show** put on by some performer, or **too** where he began reciting some **wrong commentary** written by a non-Buddhist.

यार्ष्ट्रप्राचिद्रप्रस्ति । प्रयोग्याद्रप्रस्थान्य विद्रप्राच्याः स्थान्य विद्रप्राच्याः स्थान्य विद्रप्राच्या । प्रयोग्याद्रप्रस्थान्य विद्रप्राच्याः स्थान्य विद्रप्राच्याः स्थान्य विद्रप्रस्थाः स्थान्य स्थान

Coveting consists of a wrong (that is, an improper) desire for another's wealth, which leads to a wish that one make it his own. Harmful intent is the desire to hurt another living being, a desire which comes from the attitude of hating him. And mistaken view is the idea that neither virtue nor non-virtue even exists.

Next we discuss the literal meaning of the expression "a path of action."

40
Explanation of the Expression "Path of Action"

...वर्रे.जा

|गशुस्रायसायत्व के त्यसागुराधीत्।

In them, Three are paths, seven deeds as well.

[IV.311b-12]

One may ask why the expression "path of action" is used **in** reference to **"them"**--to the group of ten just listed. The name derives first of all from the fact that the **three** involved with thought **are paths** by which the "action" or deed of mental movement is expressed. Moreover, the **seven** involved with body and speech are action or **deeds** themselves, **as well** as paths through which mental movement is expressed. Thus they are all "paths of action."

41 The Parts of a Karmic Act

For the next selections, we return to Je Tsongkapa's Great Book on the Steps of the Path.

Here is the first. One may ask, "How do you define the act of killing?" The *Abbreviation* says that five parts are involved: the object, the conception, the thinking, the bad thought, and the conclusion. These five can be shortened into four: the middle three can be included into the thinking, and we can add the stage of undertaking; this makes the presentation easier, and in no way violates the intention of the original text.

देता. ज्रींचा. चार्ड्र : ग्रींचालि. दे। श्रेंचा. प्रच्या स्वरंश श्रेश्या अवसः श्रुचा श्रेंद्र स्वरं स्वरं स्वरं स्वरं क्षेत्र चार्श्वरं : प्रच्ये स्वरं क्षेत्र : श्रुंद्र : प्रवेश्वरं स्वरं स

Now the object for killing is a sentient being: anything with life. The *Levels of Practitioners* does state "another living being," but is only referring to the fact that, when the murderer is murdering himself, there is a wrong deed of undertaking, but not one of completion.

न्यस्य प्रस्ति विश्व स्व त्या विष्य प्रस्ति विश्व स्व त्या विष्य स्व त्या विषय स्व त्या विष्य स्व त्या विषय स्व त्या विष्य स्व त्या विषय स्व त्या विषय स्व त्या विषय स्व त्या विषय स्य त्या विषय स्व त्या विषय स्य त्या विषय स्व त्या विषय स्व त्या विषय

The part of the thinking has three components of its own. Conception can be of four different types: to conceive of the object, say a living being, as being a living being; to conceive of a living being as something other than a living being; to conceive of something other than a living being as being other than a living being, and to conceive of this same thing as a living being. The first and third types of conception here are unmistaken; the second and fourth are mistaken.

द्रीत्यास्तरम् त्यात्यात्रस्ति । स्वार्थितायः स्वार्थितः यात्रस्त्रस्ति । स्वार्थितः यात्रस्ति । स्वार्थितः यात्रस्ति । स्वार्थितः यात्रस्ति । स्वार्थितः यात्रस्ति । स्वार्थितः स्वार्य

This is a particular feature of the motivation. Suppose, for example, that you think to yourself, "I only want to kill John," and undertake the deed. Then you mistake Joe for John, and kill Joe. In this sort of case, there is no "actual-commission" stage; so we can see that, for this stage, the conception you have must be unmistaken. If on the other hand you undertake the deed with some general kind of motivation, if you think to yourself, "I'll kill anyone I happen to meet," then this detail of the conception having to be unmistaken need not be complete. You should understand that this point applies to the other nine as well.

क्रेंबरब्रेटबरपादी नुयायाबुबरयादानुदरदेशी

The second component of the thinking is the bad thought involved. In this case, it can be any of the three poisons.

A third component is the motivation; here, it is the wish to kill.

Here are the different aspects of the undertaking. As far as the one who undertakes the deed, it doesn't matter whether you perform it yourself, or get someone else to do it for you, it's all the same. The essence of the undertaking is when the deed is initiated, either with some kind of weapon, or poison, or spell, or whatever the case may be.

भ्रेशन्तुरार्ग् । विद्यायाश्वरद्यायात्त्रीयात्तित्त्रीयात्त्यात्त्रीयात्त्रीयात्त्रीयात्त्रीयात्त्रीयात्त्रीयात्त्रीयात्त्रीय

The conclusion occurs when, due to this undertaking of the deed, the other person dies, either at the time of the undertaking, or later on. As the *Treasure House of Knowledge* says,

There is no actual stage for those who die Before or together, for another body's been born.

42 The Motivation for Negative Karma

यः ले. कॅट. यो का अवर : क्रिया स्वार्य प्राप्त र यो त्री र अभक्षः के 'त्र्या या श्रुक्षः यो अध्या स्वीतः यो दे १२ त्यः क्रिया यो क्रिया स्वार्य स्वीतः यो देश स्वार्य स्वीतः यो स्वार्य स्वार्य स्वीतः यो स्वार्य स्वीतः यो स

Three of the ten—killing, harsh words, and harmful intent—can be initiated by any of the three poisons, and are brought to a conclusion by disliking.

Three of them—stealing, sexual misconduct, and coveting—can be initiated by any of the three poisons, but are brought to a conclusion only by desire.

Three more—lying, divisive speech, and meaningless speech—can be initiated and brought to a conclusion by all three.

One of the ten—wrong views—can be initiated by any of the three poisons, but is brought to a conclusion only by dark ignorance.

The movements of the mind are an action (karma) but not a path of action. The seven of body and speech are both an action and—because they are the basis in which the movement of the mind engages—are also a path of action. The three of coveting and so on are a path of action but not themselves action (karma).

43 How Most Basic Virtue is Lost

We return now to the commentary of His Holiness the First Dalai Lama:

१श्चित्रः स्वायश्चार्यात्र्ये।
१श्चित्रः स्वायश्चार्यात्र्यः स्वायश्चार्यः स्वायश्चारः स्वायः स्वायश्चारः स्वायः स्वयः स्वायः स्वायः स्वयः स्वयः स्वयः स्वयः स्वयः स

Most basic lost by the view they don't exist; Taken in the desire, had from birth. Through the one denying cause and effect, And through all. In stages, among humans, Lost by those who are male or female, by the Intellectual. This is not to have it.

[IV.313-8]

|पर्ले'स'र्से| से'न्यो'प'यार'योश'नयो'र्स'यार्डेन्'रे'र्स सेन्यर'स्न्र'पर्यानये'र्स

One may ask just what kind of non-virtue can make one lose his most basic virtue. The **most basic** virtue that a person possesses is **lost by the view** that certain important objects **don't** even **exist**.

ण्डित्यास्य वित्रा वर्रेन्यम्य वित्रम्य वि

One may next ask how the process occurs. Most basic virtue which is **taken** in by **the** realm of **desire** can be lost, but not that which is taken in by the form or formless realms. This is because the types of views required can never appear in the mental streams of the beings of these realms.

त्र्राक्षिक्ष्यः स्ट्रियः स्ट्रियः याद्रश्यः स्ट्रियः याद्र्यः स्ट्रियः याद्रियः याद्रियः स्ट्रियः याद्रियः याद्

Even among the most basic virtues included in the realm of desire, only those which one **had from birth** can be lost--never those which have been acquired by applying some efforts in practice. This is because these latter types of virtue are gone by the time the mistaken views involved have even reached a minor stage of minor intensity. They have been lost because the hold retaining them was lost.

भ्रीं र.च.यर्रेचश्रातश्चार्श्वर.ता.श्रुथ.स्। ज्या.क्र.तारम्बिः रट.यर्चश्चर.चे.जा.भ्रीं र.च.यर्रेचश्वराचश्चर.चीह्र्य.ची। यस्योश्वराजः

As for the type of mistaken view involved, a person loses his most basic virtue through the one denying the principles of cause and effect. It is not however

the view that realized beings do not exist which causes one to lose his most basic virtues.

Now some make the claim that views involving unstained phenomena or levels which are not comparable cannot cause a person to lose his most basic virtues. The fact though is that this virtue can be lost **through all** the forms of this view: through those that focus on levels that are comparable or those which are not; through those that focus on unstained phenomena or on those with stain.

How exactly does the loss occur? Some claim that a person loses his most basic virtue all at once, the same way he loses all the undesirable objects that the path of seeing eliminates, once he gains this path. What actually happens though is that the virtue is lost **in stages**, the same way one loses the undesirable objects eliminated by the path of habituation.

One may next ask what kind of being can lose his basic virtue. Such a loss can occur **among humans** of the three continents, but not among other types of beings. The afflicted mental capacity of hell beings lacks the necessary stability, and the same lack of stability characterizes the non-virtuous thoughts of humans on the continent of Terrible Sound. Pleasure beings in the realms of desire and form are beings who see the three conditions directly; the principles of cause and effect are evident to them therefore, just after their birth.

श्रेणपरक्षेशयान्द्रपुन्भेन्ग्रीशयार्डन्ग्री। असन्दर्भविष्मे श्रेणपदि स्वीयायदे प्रस्थाय स्वीयायदे प्रस्थाय स्वीया स्वीया

Even among humans, basic virtue is **lost by those who are male or female-**-not by those who have lost their sexual organ, or who never had one. This is because non-virtuous thoughts in the minds of such beings are never very stable.

Humans in general can be divided into two types: **the** more **intellectual**, and the more sensual. It is the former of the two that can lose this virtue, for they are capable of sustained intellectual activity marred by mental afflictions.

<u> नवो सः कन्पाने वे दे चे वे नवो सः न्या क्षाप्य पर्वो</u>

The basic nature of **this** loss or what we call "cut-off" of a person's most basic virtue **is** simply **not to have it.**

44 How Most Basic Virtue is Regained

|અૡ્ચન્નાચે.કુ.કુ.સૂ.સૂ.તન્ન! |અષ્ટ્રનનાચુટ.કુટ.તત્ર.ત્યુ.તન્ન!

Regained by suspecting, view there are; Not in this, when immediate's done.

[IV.319-20]

र्विन न्योः संक्रन्यः ने याद्रः य र्थिनः न्याः स्कृतः याद्रे विक्रिं स्वाद्रः याद्रः याद्रः

"What," one may ask, "can help a person regain his most basic virtue after he has lost it?" This virtue can first be **regained** simply **by suspecting** that the principles regarding deeds and their results may actually exist. It can also be regained by gaining the correct **view**, whereby one actually perceives that **there** really **are** such principles.

न्योः सः कन्यः ने के वने व्याध्यक्षयः ह्येन वनः ने या व्याध्यक्षयः वित्राः वित्रः वित

One may ask whether it is always certain that a person will be able to regain his most basic virtue in the same life that he lost it. The answer is that he does **not** regain the virtue **in this** same life **when** he has **done** any of the **"immediate"** type of wrong deeds.

"When then," one may ask, "does such a person regain his basic virtue?" If he originally lost this virtue because of some main cause, then the person regains it once he dies and migrates out of his hell birth. If on the other hand it was only some secondary factor that made him lose the virtue, then he regains it when he takes his hell birth.

45 The Projecting Energy of Deeds

|माठमामीबाक्षीयामाठमायबेदार्

A single one projects a single birth.

[IV.377]

याद्याः योद्याः योद्याः योद्याः व्यवेदः योः श्रीः याद्याः योद्याः योद

यया-श्चाप्तरे त्याम्याक्षां यकानु स्वर्था श्ची प्राची स्वर्थन प्रत्य स्वर्थन प्रत्य स्वर्थन स्वर्यन स्वर्यन स्वर्थन स्वर्यन स

Does a single deed project but a single birth, or many different births? And do a number of deeds project a number of births, or just a single birth? The answer is that **a single** deed **projects a single birth**; it cannot project a number of births. And since they would function to project a whole group of similar births, a number of deeds on the other hand is never something that projects but a single birth. This by the way is all the Detailist system.

विंत्रः क्रुवार्ये दिराधार द्याप्यर खूत्रायवे सर्दे वार्षा

Now someone may object that this description contradicts the following quotation from the *Sutra of Sovereignty*—

यश्र्राश्र्म्भ्रम् सुयान्त्रा हुँ। यश्र्म्याः स्थान्त्रा हुँ। यश्र्म्याः स्थान्त्रा हुँ। यश्र्म्याः स्थान्त्रा हुँ। यश्र्म्याः स्थान्त्रा स्थान्त्रा स्थान्त्रा स्थान्त्रा स्थान्त्रा स्थान्याः स्थान्त्रा स्थान्या स्थान्त्रा स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्रा स्थान्त्र स्थान्य स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्य स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्यान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्य स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्यान्त्य स्थान्त्र स्थान्त्र स्थान्य स्थान्त्र स्थान्य स्थान्य स्य

The elder, Aniruddha, spoke to the monks as follows:

"Venerable monks, I once took a birth in Varanasi, as a poor man whose job it was to collect straw for use as fuel. The poor man made the traditional offerings of food to a Self-Made Buddha by the name of Tengnesam [?], who was also known as `the one with the top center part of his head protruding like a *takar* flower.'

"My one act of giving away these offerings ripened into a birth as a pleasure being in the Land of the Thirty-Three. I was born there a total of seven times, and then took another seven births as a Wheel Emperor. And still it continues now, with my present birth into the wealthier class of the Shakyas."

योशः धुवाः संराम् विकान स्ति । वर्षेत् वर्षेत् वर्षेत् वर्षेत् । वर्षेत् वर्य वर्षेत् वर्षेत् वर्षेत् वर्षेत् वर्षेत् वर्षेत् वर्षेत् वर्षेत् वर्येत् वर्येत् वर्येत् वर्येत् वर्षेत् वर्येत् वर्येत्

Yet there is no contradiction: the process was as follows. His offerings brought the poor man the good fortunes of a happier birth; later, he recalled what had brought him this state. These recollections themselves brought him still further merit. Thus although we can say that the one act of merit brought him such and such different births, what we really mean is that he achieved these births through a process that began with the one act. It's like saying "I got rich on a single *dong-tse* [an amount of money]" when what you really did was start with a single *dong-tse* and turn it over in a great many business deals until eventually you became wealthy.

१८८८ में प्रमान के वास्ता के वास्ता करें के स्वाप्त के स्वाप्त के स्वाप्त के स्वाप्त के स्वाप्त के स्वाप्त के स

You could also say that the poor man started with the one instance of offering food and that it caused numerous instances of gladness and rejoicing over the act; these are themselves deeds consisting of a movement of the mind, and the many births can be said to have resulted from them.

46 The Finishing Energy of Deeds

।ल्रिस्सः स्वायान्तेरायानुः साधिता

Those that act to finish them off are many.

[IV.378]

त्र-चिर्-त-किर। श्री ह्यान्न-प्राचीन-प्राचीन-प्राचनन्त्र। याव्य-क्ष्मन्त्रःश्रीन्तःश्रीन्त्रःश्रीन्तिःश्रीःश्रीन्तिःश्रीःश्रीन्तिःश्रीतिःश्रीतिःश्यःश्रीतिःश्रीतिःश्रीःश्रीतिःश्रीःश्रीतिःश्रीतिःश्रीःश्रीतिःश्रीतिःश्रीःश्रीतिःश्रीःश्रीतिःश्रीःश्रीःश्रीतिःश्रीःश्रीतिःश्रितिःश्यःश्रीतिःश्रितिःश्रीतिःश्रीतिःश्रितिःश्रितिःश्रीःश्रितिःश्रितिःश्

It is but a single energy of deeds that projects a birth having a nature consistent with the deed; **those** deeds though **that act to finish off** the finer details of this future life **are many**. A master painter for example can sketch out the canvas with a single piece of chalk, and then a number of other people can come and fill it in with various different colors.

श्रेर शर्यं विषय्त्र श्रित्र श्रित्

Any given group of people is similar in being human, but some of them who've had the details of their lives finished by virtuous deeds will have more attractive bodies, all their senses complete, greater material wealth, freedom from illness, positions of greater authority, and so on. Others in the same group who've had the details of their lives finished by non-virtuous deeds will have bodies with a repulsive appearance and so on.

Thus we can say that all four combinations between the two are possible: projection of a life by virtue but finishing by non-virtue, the reverse, a case where both are virtue, and a case where both are non-virtue. An example of the first would be persons born as pleasure beings or humans but who possessed certain sufferings.

An illustration of the second would be either the "Lord of All Things"—the Lord of Death—or the kings of the serpent-like *nagas*, those like the "Prince of Opulence." An example of the third combination would be "Hundred Offerings"—lord of the great pleasure beings. And a case of the final combination would be the beings in the lowest hell, known as "No Respite."

पश्चिमाय्यस्य प्राप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त

The Sutrists and others assert though that there are many explanations, in a number of different sutras, that a single deed can project multiple rebirths. Therefore, they say, a single deed can project many births and a number of deeds can as well project a single birth.

47 Introduction to the Five Immediate Misdeeds

। न्योः वर्त्त न्यों वर्षे न्याः वर्यः वर्षे न्याः वर्षे न

Split community, a thing without a Link, its nature to be unreconciled.

Not afflicted, neither specified,

Something the community possesses.

The disapproved that leads to it's a lie;

This the one who made the schism has.

[IV.389-394]

श्रम् अर्थस्य स्थितः स्थान्ते स्थान्य स्थान्य

The first three of the five "immediate" misdeeds mentioned above are different types of killing, and the fifth is a preliminary to killing. These are, therefore, deeds of the body. The fourth of the immediate misdeeds is a kind of lie, and therefore a deed of speech.

चयाः स्वाप्त्राचित्रः स्वाप्तः स्वापतः स

Now a **split** in the **community** of monks, at least according to the Detailist system, is said to "exist as a distinct entity—it is **a thing** (one of the factors) **without** involvement in **a** mental **link; its** basic **nature** is for the two factions of the community of monks **to be** still **unreconciled**.

तीर्त्रेयः श्रेष्ट्रेयः श्रेष्ट्रेयः श्रेष्ट्रेयः या प्रत्यात्रेयः या प्रत्यात्यः या प्रत्यात्रेयः या प्

Such a split can also belong to both those who have eliminated their mental afflictions and those who have lost even their most basic virtue; the nature of the split is thus such that it is **not afflicted**, but **neither** was it **specified** as being virtue. We can therefore say that it is ethically neutral, without acting as an obstacle.

त्रभाष्ठी । त्रिः त्रिक्षेत्रप्राचिक्षः त्रेष्ट्रप्रम्थः विक्षेत्रप्राचिक्षः त्रिक्षः त्रिक्

The kind of schism described here is **something the community** of monks on both the opposing sides **possesses**. It is not though the "immediate" misdeed itself. **The disapproved deed that leads to** the community's division—its cause—**is a lie** that functions to split the community up.

नवीत्यर वीत्यर वीत्यर वीत्यर सुन्न विन्यर स्वाप्य स्य

It is the lie which constitutes the immediate misdeed, and **this the one who made the schism** in the community **has**—whether it be Devadatta or someone else.

48
The Consequences of Immediate Misdeeds

। जैया. तथा योर्ट्र ता. जैया. तर वर्षीर। । यञ्चेता. तर अपर अपर अपर तर श्रीर वर्षीर।

It ripens to that Without Respite for an eon; Extra torment comes from extra ones. [IV.395-6]

र्। यर.म्री.यश्रेतातर.श्रयर.श्रर.तद्य.यश्रेता.यर.श्रेया.यर्श्या.श्रेय.तर.श्रेय.तर.श्रेय.तर.श्रेय.तर.श्रेय.तर.श्रेय.तर.श्रेय.तर्यापुर. १८मी.पर्येय.म्री.रम्बेय.म्री.शक्षश्रात्तर.तय्य.तश्रात्य.द्य.स्था.श्रेय.य्ये. म्री.स.स्.र्येत.

"Into what kind of consequence," one may ask, "does the immediate misdeed of dividing the community ripen?" **It ripens** into suffering, for the person who committed it, within the hell known as **"Without Respite."** He must endure this suffering **for** the length of **an** intermediate **eon.**

१वॅ.य.अक्ष्रश्चान्यः स्थ्राच्याः स्थ्राचः स्थ्राचः स्थ्राचः स्थ्राच्याः स्थ्राच्याः स्थ्राच्याः स्थ्राच्याः स्थ्याः स्थ्राचः स्थाः स्थ्राचः स्थाः स्थ्राचः स्थाः स्थाः स्थ्राचः स्थाः स्थ्राचः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थ्राचः स्थाः स्थ्राचः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थाः स्थ

"And what happens," one might continue, "when a person commits any of the remaining immediate misdeeds?" Committing any of these other immediate misdeeds is certain to lead one to a birth in the hells, but in a more specific sense it is not a definite thing that they will always bring a birth in the hell Without Respite.

One might next pose the following question:

Suppose a person commits two, or even more, of the "immediate" misdeeds. If he takes only one birth in the hells, then you would have to say that committing several of these deeds is no more serious than committing only one. If on the other hand he takes two or however many births in the hells, you can no longer say that these deeds give "immediate" results, and that their results are invariably experienced in the very next life.

The Detailists respond with the following claim:

A person takes no more than a single birth in the hells as a result of committing "extra ones"—that is two, three, or even more immediate misdeeds. His body there in the hell of "Without Respite" though is twice the normal size (or more, according to the number of such deeds committed), and much more sensitive. He therefore feels an extra amount of pain: his torment increases in multiples the same way as his size. This frees us of both the problems you raised; incidentally, the earlier of the deeds is the one that projects the birth and the later one (or ones) finishes the details.

च्यायास्त्रीत्रा स्त्रास्त्री स्ट्रिस्य स्त्रास्त्रीय स्त्रास्त्रास्त्रा स्त्रास्त्रा स्त्रास्त्रा स्त्रास्त्र स्त्रास्त्रा स्त्रास्त्रीय स्त्रास्त्रीय स्त्रास्त्रा स्त्रास्त्रा स्त्रास्त्रा स्त्रा स्त्र स्त्र स्त्रा स्त्रा स्त्रा स्त्रा स्त्रा स्त्रा स्त्रा स्त्रा स्त्र स्त्रा स्त्रा स्त्रा स्त्रा स्त्रा स्त्र स्त्र

The Sutrists and others though explain the point as follows:

If a person commits a number of immediate misdeeds, he is born into the hell of torment Without Respite again and again. There is though no other type of birth taken between the body in which the deed was done and the body of the hellbeing, so the result is still "immediate." The idea that the result must be experienced in the very next life cannot be substantiated.

49 The Details of a Schism

|दग्नेर्स्र, संस्थित स्था संस्था

The schism's made by an intellectual, Full monk with his morals, elsewhere, children. [IV.397-8]

What kind of person causes the split? The schism is made by someone who is a full monk and an intellectual type with all his morals. The person in question cannot be a layman, or the type more inclined to sensual pleasures, or someone who has lost his morals. This is because, first of all, he is vying with the Buddha. Secondly, he must have a very sharp mind. Finally, the community of monks would lend no credence to such types.

र्यात्र्यः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्तः स्वर्त्तः स्वर्तः स्वर

Where does the split occur? It must take place "elsewhere"—that is, in some location other than where the Buddha himself is residing. It could never occur in the direct presence of the Buddha, since his overwhelming glory would never permit it. And who is it that gets split off? It is only "children"—that is to say, common beings [which refers to those who have yet to see selflessness directly]—among the community of monks who are estranged. Realized beings cannot be led into a schism, for they possess a faith in the Buddha born from knowledge: they have perceived Reality directly.

[यःरुवाःयर्चेन्:यःर्वेवःयवेःश्चेःवें:इस्रशःगुदःन्त्रेःवरःसेःत्रशःसें:बेर्।

Some people have claimed that it is also impossible to split up persons who have achieved the "mastery" stage of the path of preparation.

50 The Details of a Schism, Continued

Split at the acceptance of another Teacher, path. It does not remain. Accepted as a breaking of the wheel.

[IV.399-401]

त्रीयः तुः क्ष्म्यान्त्र्यः व्यान्त्रयः त्रान्त्रयः त्रान्त्रयः व्यान्त्रयः व्यान्त्यः व्यान्त्रयः व्यान्त्यः व्यान्त्रयः व्यान्त्रयः व्यान्त्रयः व्यान्त्रयः व्यान्त्रयः व्यान्त्रयः व्यान्त्रयः व्यान्त्यः व्यान्यः व्यान्त्यः व्यान्त्यः व्यान्त्यः व्यान्त्यः व्यान्त्यः व्यान्य

One may ask at what point a schism is considered to have occurred. The community of monks is considered **split at** that point when, first of all, there is an **acceptance of** some **Teacher** (namely, Devadatta) **other** than the Buddha himself. Secondly, this is the point where there is an acceptance and attempt to practice some **path other** than that enunciated by the Buddha. This opposing path consists of the "Five Rules" set forth by Devadatta for attaining freedom from the world:

- 1) giving up the use of curds;
- 2) giving up meat;
- 3) giving up salt;
- 4) giving up the traditional patchwork robes; and
- 5) staying in temples inside of towns.

ग्रुष:हे:श्रेन:नु:म्युष्य:बे:ब्रा ही:य:ने:बे:केंब:केन:ग्रीय:ब्या:म्युव्या:यश:नेन:नु:श्रे: याद्य:स्रो

And how long does the schism last? This split in the community has its own peculiar nature: **it does not remain** for more than one 24-hour period.

वित्रायित्वर्ग्याः निवेद्याः विद्याः विद्य

A division of the community of monks is **accepted as a breaking of the wheel** of the teachings, for no new paths start up in the minds of anyone at all until the estranged monks are reconciled. What we've described here is the immediate misdeed of a schism in the community; other types of divisions are possible, but do not constitute the "immediate" type of deed.

51 Further Details of a Schism

বিষ্ঠান্ত্রীন্ত্র বিশ্বন্ধ বি

On the Dzambu Continent, nine or such. Split activities, on three continents; This one with involvement of eight or more.

[IV.402-4]

रिव्हर्म् स्वृह्ण स्वाप्त स्वापत स्वाप्त स्य स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त स्वाप्त

नवीः श्रॅन्टिश्रायमः नवेश्विषायदेः स्त्रीम्। यनै वि वि त्याया स्वराय स्

The break in the wheel described above occurs **on Dzambu Continent** (as this is where the Buddha resides), but not on the others. As for the individuals involved, the deed can only be accomplished with **nine "or such"** (meaning "or more") full monks. This is because it takes at least four monks to make what we call a "community" of monks; there have to be two such groups created, along with one person who incites the schism—and he too must definitely be a full monk. This of course represents the bare minimum—there is no certainty that a great many more individuals might not be involved in such a schism.

नियमाणी: निवेदात्रेत्रात्म्य पार्थिन पार्श्वे क्षेत्र क्षेत

Now what we call a "split in the activities" of the community can occur on three different continents--that is, on any one where the teachings exist, which would eliminate only the northern continent of Terrible Sound. This type of schism occurs only within the confines of a single physical monastic institution, and where the required rites of the monastic confession and so on have been performed with unity up to that point.

How many individuals are required for this type of schism? A split in the activities of the community requires no separate person to incite the division, so the deed can be accomplished **with** the **involvement of eight or more** full monks.

52
Details of a Schism, Concluded

৻৴ৼয়ৣয়য়য়য়ৠৣয়৻য়ৢৼ৻য়ৢয়ঢ়ঢ় ৻য়ৣয়৻য়য়য়য়ৠৣয়৻য়ৢৼয়৻য়৻ঢ়ৼ৻৻

विष्ट्र-सुर्युद्ध-मुक्त-मुक्त-भूक्ष-भूक्ष-भूक्ष-भूक्ष-भूक्ष-भूक्ष-भूक्ष-भूक्ष-भूक्ष-भूक्ष-भूक्ष-भूक्ष-भूक्ष-भू

A breaking of the wheel never occurs At the beginning, the end, before the faults Or one of The Pair, after The Able passes, Until the residences set apart.

[IV.405-8]

Now a breaking of the wheel of the teachings as described above never occurs at "the beginning"—that is, during the period just after the Buddha has first set this wheel in motion. This is because at this point everyone shares a peculiar sense of unity, a perfect harmony born of communal joy.

त्राक्तिः स्त्रीत्राक्तिः स्त्रीत्रा स्त्रीत्रा स्त्राक्तिः स्त्र

Neither does the break ever occur at the end of the Buddha's precious life—when he passes into his final nirvana. This is because his followers at this point share exactly the same thoughts: a special awareness of how rare the Buddha is, and strong feelings of resignation with life once its impermanence has been drawn to their attention then.

वित्यायः स्वाधित्यः यात्र्यः यात्र्यः यात्रः या । स्वेतः याद्यः यास्त्रः यात्रः यात्यः यात्रः यात्य

किंत्रसेंदरार्श्वेद पर ग्रीन या धीता

Verses on Vowed Morality contains the following lines:

Instructions of the Teacher remain pure, Free of any breach for twelve years' time, Free from taint, like waters of the autumn, Working to remove the mental afflictions.

निश्चायन्त्रीत्त्रम् । यस्त्रम् सार्स्स्त्रम् स्वायन्त्रम् स्वायन्त्रम् । विश्वायन्त्रम् । यस्त्रम् सार्स्स्त्रम् स्वायन्त्रम् स्वायन्त्रम् । वस्त्रम् सार्स्स्त्रम् स्वायन्त्रम् स्वायन्त्रम् स्वायन्त्रम् । वस्त्रम् सार्म्स्त्रम् सार्वायम् सार्वायन्त्रम् स्वायन्त्रम् स्वायन्त्रम्

This means that a schism in the community will furthermore never happen **before** certain **faults** occur—faults in the way that followers view the teachings and maintain their morality. For until such time, the teachings themselves remain without defect.

Furthermore, no division can occur **before** the appearance of **one** or another **of The** Great **Pair.** This is because the division is of very brief duration and could not otherwise be brought to an end, since the reconciliation is always performed by one of these two.

No schism can occur **after The Able** One himself **passes** on (that is, subsequent to his final nirvana), since there is then no Buddha present for the leader of the schism to compete with.

अर्थश्रश्चितः स्त्रीत् । त्रिश्च विद्वान्त्रीत् विद्वान्त्रीत् । त्रिश्च विद्वान्त्रीत् विद्वान्त्रीत् विद्वान्त्रीत् विद्वान्त्रीत् । त्रिश्च विद्वान्त्रीत् विद्वान्ति विद्वानि विद्वान्ति विद्वानि विद्व

Finally, no division of the community can occur **until** such time as different monastic **residences**, both large and small, are **set apart** from each other. This is because divisions between the community of monks that occur within a single monastic institution do not qualify as a breaking of the wheel, although they are a type of schism. In summary then we can say that there are six periods during which it is impossible for a break in the wheel of the teachings to occur.

म्यायमायमायमायम् क्रियायम् स्थायमायम् स्थायम् स्थायमायम् स्थायमायम् स्थायमायम् स्थायमायम् स्थायमायम् स्थायम् स्थायमायम् स्थायमायम् स्थायम् स्थायम्

Now this schism is something that depends upon the past deeds of the disciples involved, so does not occur with every single Buddha. The explanation goes that, in a former birth as a bodhisattva, our own Teacher (the Leader of the Shakyas) created a schism among the followers of a certain great adept who possessed the five types of supernormal powers: the present schism is just the eventual ripening of this misdeed. According to the teachings for those of higher capacity though this description is not to be taken literally.

53 What Makes Deeds Immediate

।শ্বন্থ:এইবাশ্ব:ম:२८:ॲ४:५४:बे८:। ।শ্বন্থ:এইবাশ:ম:२८:ॲ४:५४:बे८:।

As objects of assistance, qualities, Since you reject and also eliminate them.

[IV.409-10]

चित्रः स्वेर्षः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वरं स्व

One may ask the following: "Why is it considered an `immediate' misdeed only when a person performs one of the actions such as killing his father or mother? Why isn't it the same kind of deed when a person commits an act, such as the killing, towards someone else?" The answer is that killing one's father or mother is an "immediate" misdeed **as** they are very special **objects**, due to the great **assistance** they have rendered one: they have given you a body, a body with which you can attain freedom. And by thinking to kill them **you reject them;** by actually undertaking the deed, you **also eliminate them.**

दे.चिव्रवः दे.च्याः चर्त्रस्यः स्टरः द्योः वर्त्त्वः दरः स्टर्शः क्ष्र्यः स्टरः स्वर्धः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वर सरः उदः स्वरः स्वरः

The case with enemy destroyers, the community of monks, and Buddhas is similar. They are objects possessed of exceptional qualities; by thinking to do the particular deed towards them you reject them, and by actually undertaking the various deeds involved you create conditions which are not at all conducive to their continued life.

दे.चबुर्यात्यात्राहार्योद्यात्राहेश्यायाः क्षेत्राण्यात्राह्येत्र। सक्स्रम्यास्य हित्रः स्रोत्यण्याः वित्रायाः स्रोत्याः स्

Here we should mention that, although it is impossible for anyone to actually kill a Buddha, the thought to do so is a rejection of the Buddha. Kinds of actions other than those described above are in no way as serious, so are not counted among the "immediate" misdeeds.

54 Clarification of Certain Immediate Misdeeds

।याट.यी.ची.मक्ष्य.जन्न.वीट.न्ना ।मक्ष्य.बु.यावय.टी.वीट.जीट.जीटा

It is, even should the organ switch. Mother, the one whose menses he came from.

[IV.411-12]

One might ask the following question: "Suppose a person kills a father or mother whose sexual organ has changed. Is it still an `immediate' misdeed?" **Even should the** sexual **organ** of one's father or mother **switch** (and they thus become a female or a male, respectively), **it is** still the "immediate" deed of patricide or matricide if he kills them. This is because one has still killed the person who performed the function of a father or mother: the one who endowed him with his very special body.

यथा निर्मेर्भा विराधिर मिल्र मिल्र

One may then pose another question: "Suppose the embryo in one woman's body is removed and placed in the womb of another, and the child takes birth from this woman's womb. Killing which of these two women would constitute

the `immediate' misdeed?" The **mother** of the person in question is the former of the two women: **the one whose menses he came from.** Therefore killing this first woman would be the immediate misdeed; she played the principal role in providing the person a body fit for gaining freedom. We could not consider the second woman, the woman who kept the child in her womb, the child's mother—this act alone would not make hers the principal role.

याक्षेश्वरास्त्रास्त्राद्ध्यर्थः याद्वर्ग्यत्वर्भः विश्वर्षः विश्वर

Now it is not an "immediate" misdeed if a person undertakes to kill his father or mother and ends up killing someone else; nor is it if one undertakes to kill someone else and ends up killing one of his parents. This is because, with an "immediate" misdeed, the actual commission of the act must be concluded with the same person towards whom the act was undertaken. And this is true of neither of the cases mentioned. Similar examples would be where the person killed his mother by accident as she hid under his bed, or where the son of the washerman threw a rock to kill a fly and smashed his father's skull instead.

के. चर्च. मुन्ना विष्या मार्च प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्राप्त प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त प्र प्राप्त

Suppose that a person, in the single blow of some weapon, kills his mother and some other living being. The non-communicating form here consists of both deeds: the "immediate" misdeed and a simple act of killing. The communicating form though is subsumed only by the immediate deed, since an immediate deed possesses such tremendous force.

यायानिः साय्यान्येताः या न्याः पर्वेत्राः स्वरः स्वेतः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स्वरः स सः स्वरः स्वरः

Next let's take a case where a person kills his father, a father who happens to be an enemy destroyer as well. Or suppose he kills a person who is both his mother and an enemy destroyer too. Here he commits a single "immediate" misdeed, that of killing an enemy destroyer—for only the single physical base of a person was involved.

स्त्री अर.क्ष्या ह्रिं स्त्राय हर्षे स्त्राय हर्षे स्त्री हर्षे स्त्री विक्रा स्त्री स्त्राय स्त्राय स्त्री स

One may ask how then we reconcile this position with the following message, quoted in *Divisions of the Word:*

In days gone by there was a king of Rauruka City by the name of Udrayana. He was murdered by his son Shikhandi, who thus killed a person who was both his father and an enemy destroyer. The King's last words to the assassins sent by his son were "Return and tell Shikhandi for me, 'You have now committed two immediate misdeeds—that of killing your father, and that of killing an enemy destroyer."

यित्रं में क्षेत्रं स्वाधितः में क्षेत्रं में क्षेत्रं में क्षेत्रं स्वाधितः स

The point of the king's words was to tell his son that he had on two accounts committed an immediate misdeed, or that he had committed the deed in two different ways. There was though no more than one immediate misdeed done.

55 Misdeeds and the Holy

विद्नाक्षाय्य विष्य क्षेत्र क्ष विद्नुद्दे क्षेत्र क

Not with a mind to strike the Buddha, not with An enemy destroyer after attack. Freed from desire, results, impossible For one who's undertaken immediate.

[IV.413-6]

द्रश्चीश्चायश्चेद्रताताःद्रेशात्त्रवेद्वेद्वा श्चेत्वायाद्वेद्वायाः स्त्रेद्वायाः स्त्रेद्वायः स्त्रेद्वायः

Let's next consider the immediate misdeed of striking and drawing blood, with evil intent, from the One Thus Gone. It's considered the immediate misdeed when a person uses his weapon with the intent to kill the Buddha, but it is **not** considered this type of misdeed when a person uses his weapon simply **with a mind to strike the Buddha.** This is because such a person lacks the "intent" stage for an act of taking life.

Suppose for a similar example that someone uses a weapon against a person who has yet to reach the stage of "enemy destroyer," and then at some point after the attack the victim does attain this level. Suppose further that our new enemy destroyer then dies as a result of wounds incurred in the original attack. It is **not** considered the immediate misdeed with such a person, for his attacker did not undertake the action against someone who was an enemy destroyer.

दर्गात्त्र प्रमा वर्षुक्रमा म्यून्य प्रमानिक्षण प्रमानिक्षण । प्रमानिक्षण प्रमानिक्षण प्रमानिक्षण । प्रमानिक्षण प्रमानिक्षण । प्रमानिक्षण प्रमानिक्षण । प्रमानिक्षण प्रमानिक्षण । प्रमा

हुत्वायः प्रश्ना देशःहेतः देशःश्चिरः प्रश्ना स्वायः प्रश्नी प्रमायः स्वेतः प्रश्नी प्रमायः प्रश्नी स्वयः स्

One may pose the following question: "Suppose a person undertakes to commit an immediate misdeed. Is it possible for such a person—without abandoning this course of action—to achieve the state where he is free of desire, or to gain one of the results?" The answer is that it is **impossible for one who has undertaken** an **immediate** misdeed to gain either the level where he is **freed from desire** or one of the **results**. The two states of mind are completely contradictory.

56 Severity of Immediate Misdeeds

।र्याः तर्वः र्याः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः याः ।र्याः तर्वः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः स्वाः याः

Lying to divide the community Accepted as most heinous of misdeeds.

[IV.417-18]

यः दशकाः त्यां यो वाका स्वीत् व्या स्वीतः विद्रा व

One may ask, "Which of all these immediate misdeeds is the most serious?" Lying in order to divide the community of monks into two parts is accepted as the most heinous of misdeeds among all the immediate. This is because a person has thereby struck a blow to what is known as the "reality body" of the One Thus Gone. And as long as the community remains unreconciled, there is a general stop in the world to certain great virtuous deeds: no one finds the true certainty, no one achieves the results, no one gains freedom from desire, and no one brings an end to all stains.

Moreover, such a division prevents persons from engaging in meditative concentration, and from reading scripture—from daily recitations and from contemplations. This then interrupts progress in gaining both higher births and the states of nirvana and Buddhahood. All the inhabitants of the world, on up to the great pleasure beings, are thrown into turmoil—they lose their happiness, they lose their freedom, they lose their ability to think. And the perpetrator must take his birth in the lowest hell, Without Respite, for an eon. These are what make this deed the worst.

|देव:ह्रश्रायाःश्रुःपश् व्याधेत्रेश्यःयात्र्युस्यःयात्रेदःयःयःपदःद्री
देव:ह्रश्रायाःश्रुःपश्यः व्याधेत्रेश्यःयःप्यःयार्थेदःयःयःपदःद्री

The next most grave of the immediate misdeeds is the fifth; then come the third, the first, and second—in that order. Thus the murder of one's father is explained as the least serious of the five.

बरःबन्नःस्यात्वात्वे क्षायायात्वे साचीः वर्षायात्वे विष्ठा स्वायात्वे स्वायात्वे स्वायात्वे स्वायात्वे स्वायाय वरःबन्नःस्यायात्वे स्वयायात्वे साचीः वर्षायात्वे विष्ठाः स्वयायात्वे स्वयायात्वे स्वयायात्वे स्वयायात्वे स्वया

One may object that this description contradicts the statement in sutra that, of all the three types of wrong, the three deeds of thought are most serious and that—within these three—holding mistaken views is most grave. There is though no inconsistency here. The misdeed we've described leads one to the hell "Without Respite" for a full intermediate eon; from the viewpoint of the magnitude of the result that ripens from the deed, we can say that dividing the community is the most serious of all the immediate misdeeds.

इटः श्रॅट् को प्येट विंश्वायश्चर्त्त प्राणित द्वीत्र प्राण्य श्रेष्ट्र विश्व प्राण्य श्रेष्ट्र विश्व प्राण्य विश्व विश्व प्राण्य विश्व प्राण्य विश्व प्राण्य विश्व प्राण्य विश्व प्राण्य विश्व विश्

One the other hand there is the case where the raw emotion of fury in the mind of the great adept brought death to the many individuals of Dantaka Monastery and other places; we can say then that, with respect to the general result of death among the populace, actions of the thought are the most powerful among three groups of deeds that relate to the three passageways.

And with respect to the "creative" result of losing one's most basic virtue, mistaken views would be the most serious of the deeds of the thought, for the others in this group lack the power to make one lose this virtue. To express it in a different way, we can say that each was stated to be the most serious: dividing the community, deeds of the thought, and holding mistaken views—but only with the respective assumptions that one is limiting himself to the five immediate deeds, deeds of the three passageways, or the five views.

57 The Meritorious Act of Giving

|यादःयोशःश्चेतःग्वेदःदेःश्चेतःय।
|अर्केदःद्दःयद्याःयशःश्चेदःदेदःयःधेश|
|युशःद्दःद्याःयशःश्चेदःद्दःयदश।
|देव्यशःर्थदशःश्चेदःकेदःर्यःद्व।

Giving is when anyone acts to give, Out of a wish to honor or to aid. Deeds of body and speech with motive, linked; Its result, possession of great wealth.

[IV.449-52]

विश्वान्त्र्यात्त्रः भ्रीत्रा विश्वान्त्रः विश्वान्तः विश्वान्तः विश्वान्त्रः विश्वान्तः विश्व

Now among these three, **giving** is described as follows. It **is when any** person, with thoughts of virtue, **acts to give** any thing he owns to someone else. As we read in *A Sutra Taught at the Request of Vyasa, a Great Adept:* "Oh great adept, all acts of giving even the smallest thing from faith are Giving."

गुनःर्सूरः वे प्युत्याच वरः संत्या अर्के राया प्राप्ता प्रवासाया प्रवासाया प्रवासाया प्रवेश वर्षे राया प्रवासाया प्रवासाय प्रवास प्रवास

As for the motivation involved, it is only the meritorious act of giving when one gives away the thing either **out of a wish to honor** (some very high object) **or** out of a wish **to aid** (some very miserable object). It is not real giving when one does so only out of fear, or out of hopes of getting something in return, and so on.

लिबारी । श्रुवारारेवे व्यवसायु ने नावका स्रायका खुर्या सर्द्व का स्वर प्रायक्षाया । विकारी । श्रुवारारेवे विकारी विकारी विकारी विकारी विकारी विकारी विकारी ।

Giving moreover consists of **deeds of body and speech** along **with** their **motivation** and what is **linked** with it mentally. The **result** of the giving is the **possession of great wealth**, at least for the time being.

58
Giving that Benefits the Other, and the Rest

। यद्याः याव्यः द्वः स्वीरः याद्येशः द्वः स्वीरः। । याद्येशः यादः द्वः द्वः स्वीरः स्वीरः स्वीरः।

Giving is that which benefits oneself, The other, both, and neither one of them.

[IV.453-4]

निन्ने प्रत्या विष्या के स्वा के स्व के स्व

As for the different divisions of **giving**, the first **is that** giving **which benefits oneself**. This would be for a person who had not yet freed himself from desire for desire-realm objects, or for a common person who had done so but through the "path of the world," to make offerings to a shrine.

तत्। यहेर-क्यान्न-दर्जिन्द्रम् श्रीकाराक्ष-तहेर-क्यान्न-दर्भ-ताःश्रीद्र-ताःम्यान्निन्न-ताःश्रीद्र-विव्यान्न-त्रिः स्त्री-स्त्रिक्यान्य-त्रिक्यान्य-त्रिक्यान्य-त्र-स्त्रीक्ष-ताःश्रीद्र-विव्यान्ति-त्र-त्री-स्त्र-स्त्रीक्ष-ताःक्षेत्र-त्र-क्ष्यान्य-त्र-स्त्र-स्त्र-त्र-स्त्र-त्र-स्त्र-त्र-स्त्र-त्र-स्त्र-

Giving that benefits **the other** would be any act of giving performed by a realized person free of desire towards another living being not so freed. This assumes by the way that we do not consider any results that the former individual will experience in this same life.

याल्य-यान्त्रेश-याद्यां स्थित-स्थित-याद्यां प्रत्ति-क्रयाश-दर्भ स्थान्य-प्रत्ये श्री स्थान्य-प्रत्ये स्थान्य-प्रत्य-प्रत्य-प्रत्य-प्रत्य-प्रत्य-प्रत्य-प्रत्य-प्रत्य-प्रत्य-प्रत्य-प्रत्य-प्य-प्रत्य-प्रत्य-प्रत्य-प्य-प्रत्य-प्रत्य-प्रत्य-प्रत्य-प्रत्य-प्य

Giving that benefits **both** would be for a realized being who was not yet free of desire, or for a common being who was not thus free, to present something to another living being who was not yet free from desire either.

Giving that benefits **neither** would be for a realized being who was free of desire for the desire realm to make offerings to a shrine. This is because the only point of the offering is for this being to express his deep respect and gratitude. Here again incidentally we are not counting any results of the offering that he will achieve in the same life.

59 Exceptional Types of Givers

Exceptional types of it from exceptional Givers, given thing, whom given; of these the Giver's exceptional through faith and the rest, Performs his giving with respect and the like. As a result one gains the honor, a wealthy, The timely and a freedom from hindrances.

[IV.455-60]

हुँ त्याने देव विद्यान स्वास्त्र त्या का स्वास्त्र का

Very **exceptional types of "it"**—of this giving, come **from** exceptional kinds of **givers**, exceptional kinds of **things** which are **given**, and exceptional kinds of objects to **whom** the things are **given**. **Of these**, **the giver is** made **exceptional through** a motivation of **faith and "the rest"**—which refers first of all to the rest of the "seven riches of realized beings": morality, generosity, learning, a sense of shame, a conscience, and wisdom. The phrase also refers to having little desire for things.

As for how he undertakes the act, the exceptional giver **performs his giving** (1) **with** an attitude of **respect and "the like."** These last words refer to handing the object to the other person with one's own hands; (2) giving something when it is really needed; and (3) performing the actual deed in a way that does no harm to anyone else. Examples would be where one had stolen the object from someone else in the first place, or where one presented a sheep to a butcher. Included here too are cases where the object given hurt the recipient—examples would be giving someone poison or unhealthy food.

पर्य।

प्राय।

पर्य।

प्राय।

पर्य।

प्राय।

प्राय

Concerning the consequences of such giving, the person has performed his charity with an attitude of respect and so on, as listed above. As a result he gains the following (and here the list follows the three numbers above). In his future life he wins (1) the honor and respect of those who follow him, as well as a wealth of material things (which because of his former faith he enjoys at his total discretion). In this next life he also gains (2) the timely fulfillment of his own needs, as well as (3) complete freedom from any hindrances to his wealth: enemies, loss of his things in a fire, and so on.

60 Exceptional Things to Give

|र्नुष्वःशुःरेवाः वः चरेः खुषः वः ब्युरः । |र्नाः वः रदः वेवः पुः वार्ववः वः प्रदः । |र्नाः वः रदः वेवः पुः वार्ववः वः प्रदः । |र्नाः वः वः वेवः वः वः व्यवाशः व्यवः । |र्नुषः शुःरेवाः वः चरेः खुषः वः व्युरः ।

Things given, excellent color and such. From it an excellent form and reputation, Happiness and a very youthful complexion, A body which in each time's pleasant to touch.

[IV.461-4]

र्साचिरःसरः र्रे. यसम्बरःसर्थ। भूषाद्वाःसरः र्रे. यसम्बरःसर्थे।

An **excellent color "and such"**—which refers to an excellent smell, or taste, or feel—are what make **things** that are **given** exceptional.

From "it" (that is, from giving things with an excellent color), one gains an excellent bodily form—at least for the time being. Temporarily too he gains other results (following the order of the qualities just listed): a good and widespread reputation; great happiness; and a body with a very youthful complexion. The body that one possesses is moreover like that which belongs to the "jewel of the queen": it is pleasant to touch in each of the times—whether the temperature is just normal, or whether it is cold (when the queen's body gives you warmth), or hot (at which time the queen feels to you cool).

61 Exceptional Objects to Give a Gift

| वर् प्राप्त प्रते के के क्ष्य प्रत्य प्रा | क्षेत्र के मालवा प्रते के प्राप्त प्राप्त का क्ष्य के प्राप्त क

Exceptional—those you give to—by the being, Suffering, aid, and by good qualities. The highest someone freed by someone freed, By a bodhisattva, or the eighth. Gifts made to a father or a mother, To the sick, a spiritual teacher, or A bodhisattva in his final life Cannot be measured, even not realized.

[IV.465-72]

Those to whom **you give** a gift can be **exceptional** by virtue of four different reasons, first **by the** type of **being** involved. As *Gautami's Sutra* states,

Ananda, you can look forward to a hundredfold result ripening back to you, if you give something to an individual who has reached the animal's state of birth. But you can look forward to a thousandfold result if you give something even to a human who's immoral.

यशिरश्राताक्षेत्रीक्षेत्रीयक्षेत्राच्यात्राचयात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यायायात्राच्यात्राच्यात्राच्यात्य

The object towards whom you perform your giving may also be distinguished by his **suffering.** Suppose for example that you take all the things that a

person can give in one of those types of acts where the merit derives from a substantial thing. It is stated that if you give these things to a sick person, or to someone nursing a sick person, or to someone when it's cold outside or whatever, the merit is immeasurable.

यतः श्रीश्रास्त्र तर्द्वाश्रायात्वत्र तर्द्वाश्रायात्तरः । यतः श्रीश्रास्त्र तर्द्वाश्रायात्वत्र तर्द्वाश्रायात्तरः ।

The recipient may furthermore be distinguished by the **aid** he has given one in the past. Here we include one's father and mother, or anyone else who has been of special help to one. Examples may be found among stories of the Buddha's former lives, such as the one about the bear and the *ru-ru* deer.

वस्त्राक्षः भ्रो विकासास्य विकासिक्ष्यः प्रत्याक्षः विकासास्य विकास स्वास विकास स्वास विकास स्वास स्वास

The person to whom one gives his gift may, lastly, be exceptional **by** virtue of his **good qualities**. *Gautami's Sutra* provides some examples:

If you give to someone who has kept his morality, you can expect it to ripen into a result a hundred thousand times as great. If you give to someone who has entered that stage known as the "result of entering the stream," it ripens into something which is immeasurable. And if you give even more to someone who has entered the stream, the result is even more immeasurable.

क्षेत्रात्यस्य प्रम्थस्य प्रम्थस्य प्रम्य विषय प्रम्य प्रम्य प्रम्थस्य प्रम्य प्रम्य प्रम्य प्रम्य प्रम्य प्रम् प्रम्य प्रम्य

यार्थेट्य.सूर्। क्यार्थ.यंज्ञ.क्यार्थ.यंज्ञ.यंज्ञा विष्य.वंच्चट.बुट.झुरे.तदुःसकू्यो विश्व.

Now **the highest** kind of giving is for **someone** who has **freed** himself of the three realms to give something to **someone** else who has **freed** himself as well. This is because both are the highest kind of individual. Again we see, in *Gautami's Sutra*,

The highest form of giving a physical thing Is by one free to another free of desire: But one with his body and speech restrained, Reaching out his hand to offer food.

व्यम् १८८ मी स्त्रीत्र प्रत्याम् प्रत्याम् प्रत्याम् प्रत्याम् स्त्र प्रत्याम स्त्र प्रत्य स्त्र स्त्र

We can also though take a giver who is a **bodhisattva** and who gives any object at all, for the sake of helping every being alive. Although this is an act of giving by a person who is not yet freed and is directed to another person not yet freed, it is still the highest kind of giving. This is because the act has been performed for the sake of total enlightenment and every living being. And this is because one has given something in order to become the savior of every single being.

र्स. राष्ट्रीय प्राचीयाष्ट्रीय प्राची क्षेत्र प्रा

मत्। मत्। स्यायम्भाग्रीर्म्यायाग्रीर्म्याम्। म्यायाम्यायाम्यायाम्यायाम्यायाम्यायाम्यायाम्यायाम्यायाम्यायाम्यायाम्याया

Now a certain sutra gives the following list of eight types of giving:

- 1) Giving to close ones;
- 2) Giving out of fear;
- 3) Giving because they gave to you;
- 4) Giving because they will give to you;
- 5) Giving because one's parents and ancestors used to give;
- 6) Giving with the hope of attaining one of the higher births;
- 7) Giving to gain fame;
- 8) Giving to gain the jewel of the mind, to gain the riches of the mind, to win what great practitioners collect together, to achieve the ultimate goal.

हिरः श्रेवःतः मक्र्याः म् विशःश्रेवः तः मक्र्याः विशः स्वाधः विशः विशः स्वाधः त्यः स्वाधः त्यः स्वाधः त्यः स्व

We can alternately describe the highest type of giving as **the eighth** in this list: giving to gain the jewel of the mind and so on.

त्रेयाक्षः प्रत्यात्मः श्रीकः वर्षः श्रीकः प्रत्याकः स्वीकः स्वत्याकः स्वीकः स्वत्याकः स्वीकः स्वत्याकः स्वीकः स्वत्याकः स्वत्या

As for the meaning of the expression "giving to close ones," certain masters of the past have claimed that it refers to giving to someone when they are standing close by, or to someone when they approach close by. "Giving out of fear" means that a person decides he will give the best he has, but only because he perceives some great imminent danger to himself. And "giving because they gave to you" refers to giving something to a person with the thought that "I'm doing this because he gave me something before."

र्स्थायक्षिटाट्ट्। न्यिन्युःअक्र्यान्त्रे-ट्र्। विश्वास्था शिट्यःजशाय्त्रेशःसास्त्रेयःस्था विश्वास्थाः यत्रात्त्रयाय्याः त्यस्याः विश्वास्यस्य विश्वास्य वि

The remaining members of the list are easily understood. "Jewel of the mind" refers to the ability to perform miracles, while "riches of the mind" refers to the eight parts of the path of realized beings. "What great practitioners collect together" refers to perfectly tranquil concentration and special realization. The "ultimate goal" can be described as achieving the state of an enemy destroyer, or the state of nirvana. This is how the Master Jinaputra explains the various types of giving.

Master Purna explains them as follows:

Giving to gain the "jewel of the mind" and the rest of the four refers respectively to (1) that which brings one the riches of faith and the rest; (2) that which is totally inconsistent with the stink of stinginess; (3) that which makes the happiness of balanced meditation grow; and (4) that which brings on the state of nirvana.

स्वाश्वास्त्र प्रमास्त्र प्रमास्य विद्या क्षेत्र प्रमास्य विद्या स्वास्त्र स्वास्त्र

These four have also been accepted as relating respectively to the four "results of the way of virtue," or to (1) the paths of collection and preparation, (2) the path of seeing, (3) the path of habituation, and (4) nirvana. An alternate way is to correlate them with (1) the paths of collection and preparation, (2) the seven impure levels, (3) the three pure levels, and (4) the level of a Buddha.

त्यायद्यत्यक्षर्यक्षम् भ्रत्युमाय्युम् त्याक्ष्यामायम् क्ष्र्यामायम् क्ष्र्यायम् स्थायम् । द्वितायद्यायम् क्ष्राभ्यायम् । क्ष्रायायम् । क्ष्रायम् । क्ष्रायायम् । क्ष्रायायम् । क्ष्रायम् । क्ष्रायायम् । क्ष्रायम् । क्ष्रायायम् । क्ष्रायायम् । क्ष्रायायम् । क्ष्रायम् । क्ष्रायायम् । क्ष्रायम् । क्ष्रायम्

Beyond the above, we can say that there are other acts of giving where, **even** though the recipient is **not** a **realized** being, the resulting merit still **cannot be measured** in units such as a "hundred thousand times greater" or such. These would involve **gifts made to** one's **father or mother** (recipients who had given one great aid), **to the sick** (recipients who are in a state of suffering), to **a spiritual teacher**, **or** to a bodhisattva in his final life.

यश्रीर विश्व स्थान्य स्थान्य

Support for this description can be found in the *Sutra on Causes and Effect of Right and Wrong*, which equates the merit of giving to these objects with the amount of merit you collect from giving something to the Buddha himself:

Moreover, the act of giving performed towards any one of the three different kinds of individuals ripens into a result which never reaches an end at all. These objects are the One Thus Gone, a person's parents, and the sick.

62
The Severity of Deeds according to Six Factors

| NET | TE N

Conclusion, one who's acted toward, commission; Undertaking, thinking, and intention: The power of the deed itself's exactly As little or great as these happen to be.

[IV.473-6]

याः मुन्दान्त्रः याः विद्याः प्रस्ति। सहयाः प्रस्ति। सहयाः प्रस्ति। स्ति स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर्थः स्वर् विद्यः स्वरं स्वर्थः स्वर्थः सहयाः प्रस्ति। सहयाः स्वरं स्वरं स्वरं स्वरं स्वरं स्वरं स्वरं स्वरं स्वरं स्वरं

Here we might touch by the way on what determines how serious a given deed will be. The first factor that can make a deed serious is what we call "performance in **conclusion**," which means to continue a particular act well after the original course of action.

दट्क् त्राचित्रकात्रकत्रायाचर्च्यायाच्या । विकाद्यस्यक्षेत्राचित्रक्षायाक्ष्यः विकाद्यस्य विकाद्यस्य विकाद्यस्य क्षेत्राचित्रक्षाय्यक्षेत्राच्यस्य । विद्योद्देश्च त्यायक्ष्यस्य विकाद्यस्य । विकाद्यस्य विकाद्यस्य । विद्योद्देश्च विकाद्यस्य । विकाद्यस्

The **one who's acted toward** in any particular deed—someone who may have lent one great aid in the past—is also a factor in making the deed a serious one. Deeds which are more serious because of the basic type involved in the actual **commission** of the act would include cases like killing (among the different deeds of the body), lying (among the deeds of speech), and mistaken

views (among the deeds of thought). Even among the different types of killing there are those which are more serious—killing an enemy destroyer, for example—because as *Close Recollection* states,

...it leads one to the lowest hell, "Without Respite." A less serious type of killing would be to take the life of a person who had reached any of the paths. And the least serious type would be to kill an animal, or a very immoral person.

के.य.की इंग्रश्नायम् मुद्देन्यदे स्रोध्यायम् के.य.द्द्र्या यस्रायस्य के.य.द्वेन्यीयस्यायः के.य.की

Deeds made serious by the stage of their preliminary **undertaking** would be those which involved actually applying oneself physically or verbally. Deeds made serious by the **thinking** involved would be those where one's thoughts in carrying out the act were particularly strong. And deeds which turn more serious because of the **intention** involved would be those where one undertakes an act with particularly strong thoughts of motivation.

र्मा याद्याके प्रस्ति । इस्राया तुमा महित्य प्रस्ति । विद्याया तुमा महित्य प्रसासी विद्या । विद्या विद्य । विद्या । व

We can summarize by saying that the power of the deed itself is exactly as little or great as these six factors of conclusion and the rest happen to be in their own force. One should understand that deeds where all six factors are present in force are extremely serious.

63
Whether Deeds are Collected or Not

| यश्यश्चात्रक्षेत्रः यः न्दः ह्रियाश्चाः न्दः । | यश्यश्चात्रः याष्ट्रेत्रः यः न्दः ।

A deed is called "collected" from its being Done intentionally, to its completion, Without regret, without a counteraction, With attendants, ripening as well.

[IV.477-80]

स्यानायान्यस्य । दे.रया.ह.कं.ये.ब्र.या तिराभर्त्ताया जनायेनातायमयोगायात्ता जनायेनातायमयोगायास्य

Now sutra also mentions a number of concepts including "deeds which are done and also collected" as well as "deeds which are done but which are not collected." One may ask just what these are.

यश्याश्चरतुः त्यश्चात्रः त्यश्चर्याः व्यश्चरत्याः व्यश्चर्याः व्यश्चर्याः व्यश्चर्याः व्यश्चर्याः व्यश्चरः व्यश्च

A deed is called "done and also *collected*" from its being done with six different conditions, described as follows:

- 1) The deed must be done **intentionally**; that is, it cannot have been performed without premeditation, or simply on the spur of the moment.
- 2) It must have been done "to its completion"—meaning with all the various elements of a complete deed present.
- 3) The person who committed the deed must feel **no regret** later on.
- 4) There must be **no counteraction** to work against the force of the deed.
- 5) The deed must come along with the necessary attendants.

6) The deed must **as well** be one of those where one is certain to experience the **ripening** of a result in the future.

ताश्चाल्याद्वरात्ताच्यावायायात्रात्रीयायदात्वेषायद्वेष

Deeds other than the type described are what we call "done but not collected." From this one can understand what kinds of deeds are meant by the expressions "collected but not done" and "neither done nor collected."

१२.ज.म्.च्यां त्राचा वि.क्ष्यां वे.क्ष्यां वि.क्ष्यां वि.क्ष्यां वि.ज.च्यां वि.ज.च्यां वि.ज.च्यां वि.ज.च्यां वि.ज्यां व

As for the phrase "to its completion," in some cases a single act of right or wrong leads one to a birth in the states of misery or to a birth in the happier states. In other cases, all ten deeds of all three doors lead a person to the appropriate one of these two births. In either case the deeds have been done to their completion.

|याक्षेत्र:संक्रोद:सद्धे:संत्याः क्षेत्र:सद्धें सः त्यः क्षेत्र| यत्यः क्षेत्र| यत्यः क्षेत्र| यत्यः क्षेत्र|

The phrase "without a counteraction" refers to deeds done (1) with mistaken ideas, misgivings, or the like; (2) without confession, future restraint, or such.

A deed "along with its necessary attendants" means a deed of virtue or non-virtue along with attendants of further virtue or non-virtue. Admittedly, the *Commentary* does explains these as "Any deed which you rejoice about having done." Nonetheless the attendants here are the preliminary undertaking and final conclusion stages of the deed.